How English Works

A grammar practice book
How English Works
A grammar practice book

Michael Swan & Catherine Walter

With answers

Oxford University Press
Contents

Introduction 1
Test yourself 3
Test yourself: answers 11
Explanations and exercises: list of sections 12
Phonetic alphabet 15
Explanations and exercises 17
Answers to exercises 303
Index 351

Authors' acknowledgements

We could not have produced this book without several kinds of help. In particular, we would like to express our gratitude to:

- Keith Brown, Brian Graver and Diann Gruber, for their care in reading the original typescript: their comments and suggestions have resulted in many important improvements

- Inge Bullock and Barbara Hately-Broad, for organising our personal and professional lives while we were doing the writing

- our children Mark and Helen, for putting up with us while it was going on

- Stewart Melluish of Oxford University Press and Richard Morris, our editor and designer, for the expertise, creativity, patience and good humour with which they handled us and the typescript.
Publisher's acknowledgements

The Publisher thanks the following for their kind permission to reproduce cartoons:


The Publisher thanks the following for their kind permission to use extracts and adaptations from copyright material:


Every effort has been made to trace the owners of copyright material used in this book, but we should be pleased to hear from any copyright holder whom we have been unable to contact.
Introduction

The purpose of the book

*How English Works* is for learners of English who want to speak and write more correctly. It contains:

- short clear explanations of the rules of English grammar
- examples of correct use
- exercises.

How to use the book

If you are studying with a teacher, he or she will help you to use the book effectively. If you are studying at home, the following suggestions may be useful:

- Don’t go through the whole book from beginning to end. *How English Works* contains explanations of basic rules (e.g. how to make questions), intermediate points (e.g. the use of passives) and more advanced problems (e.g. difficult structures with *who, whom* and *which*). Different learners will need to study different parts of the book.

- Start by trying the tests on pages 4–9. These will help you to decide what you need to learn – what are the most important problems in English grammar for you.

- Use the list of sections (at the beginning) and the Index (at the end) to help you find the sections that you want. Read the explanations and do the exercises. If you still have problems with a point, work through the section again.

- You will sometimes need to know some of the words that we use when we talk about grammar in English (e.g. *verb, preposition, tense, plural, countable*). These words are explained on pages 298–302.

The explanations

We have tried to make these as clear and simple as possible. You can find more complete explanations of some points in Michael Swan’s book *Practical English Usage* (Oxford University Press).

Sometimes we ask you to try to work out a rule for yourself. When you have tried these ‘Do It Yourself’ activities, you can look at the blue pages (303–305) at the back of the book to see if you were right.
The exercises
Most of the exercises are simple in structure. More difficult exercises are marked with the sign ▲
A few exercises are designed for group work in class.

What kind of English does the book teach?
We teach the grammar of everyday spoken and written British English. We have used the British National Corpus – a collection of 100 million words of modern spoken and written English – to help us make sure that our rules and examples give a true picture of the present-day language.
For information about differences between British and American English, see Practical English Usage.

How important is grammar?
Grammar is not the most important thing in the world, but if you make a lot of mistakes you may be more difficult to understand, and some kinds of people may look down on you or not take you seriously. Hardly anybody speaks or writes a foreign language perfectly, but you will communicate more successfully if you can make your English reasonably correct. We hope this book will help.
Test yourself

These tests will help you to decide what you need to learn. First of all, try the 'basic points' test on pages 4–5 and check your answers on page 11. If you have problems with any of the points, go to the sections where these are explained and do the exercises; then try the test again. The tests on pages 6–9 are suitable for intermediate and advanced students, and can be done in the same way.
Test yourself: basic points

Here are some of the basic grammar points from How English Works. Do you know them all? Check your answers on page 11.

Choose the correct answer(s). One or more answers may be correct.

1  She’s ... university teacher.
   A a  B an  C the  D one

2  I like ... small animals.
   A the  B — (= nothing)  C every  D all

3  Is this coat ...?
   A yours  B your  C the yours

4  Is Diana ...?
   A a friend of yours  B a your friend  C your friend

5  Who are ... people over there?
   A that  B the  C these  D those

6  ... is your phone number?
   A Which  B What  C How

7  Could I have ... drink?
   A other  B an other  C another

8  There aren’t ... for everybody.
   A chairs enough  B enough chairs  C enough of chairs

9  They’re ... young to get married.
   A too much  B too  C very too

10 Most ... like travelling.
    A of people  B of the people  C people

11 Ann and Peter phone ... every day.
    A them  B themself  C themselves  D each other

12 It’s ... weather.
    A terrible  B a terrible  C the terrible

13 The plural of car is cars. Which of these are correct plurals?
    A journeys  B ladys  C minuts  D sandwichs  E babies

14 Which of these is/are correct?
    A happier  B more happier  C unhappier  D beautifuller

15 This is ... winter for 20 years.
    A the more bad  B worse  C the worse  D worst
    E the worst
16 She’s much taller ... me.
   A than   B as   C that

17 He lives in the same street ... me.
   A that   B like   C as   D than

18 Her eyes ... a very light blue.
   A are   B have   C has

19 ... help me?
   A Can you to   B Do you can   C Can you

20 You ... worry about it.
   A not must   B don’t must   C must not   D mustn’t

21 It ... again. It ... all the time here in the winter.
   A 's raining, 's raining   B rains, rains
   C rains, 's raining   D 's raining, rains

22 I ... she ... you.
   A think, likes   B am thinking, is liking
   C think, is liking   D am thinking, likes

23 Who ... the window?
   A open   B opened   C did opened

24 Why ... ?
   A those men are laughing
   B are laughing those men
   C are those men laughing

25 What ... ?
   A does she want   B does she wants   C she wants

26 I didn’t ... he was at home.
   A to think   B think   C thinking   D thought

27 ... a hole in my sock.
   A There’s   B There is   C It’s   D It is   E Is

28 I’ll see you ... Tuesday afternoon.
   A at   B on   C in

29 What time did you arrive ... the station?
   A at   B to   C —

30 We’re going ... the opera tomorrow night.
   A at   B —   C in   D to
Test yourself: intermediate points

Here are some of the intermediate grammar points from *How English Works*. Do you know them all? Check your answers on page 11.

*Choose the correct answer(s). One or more answers may be correct.*

31. I went out without ... money.
   A some  B any

32. He's got ... money.
   A much  B many  C a lot of  D lots of

33. 'Who's there?' '...'
   A It's me  B It is I  C Me  D I

34. Although he fell very ..., he smiled ....
   A angrily, friendly  B angry, friendly  C angry, in a friendly way

35. I ... to America.
   A have often been  B often have been  C have been often

36. My mother ... my birthday.
   A always forgets  B always is forgetting  C forgets always

37. You look ... a teacher.
   A like  B as  C the same like

38. How many brothers and sisters ...?
   A have you got  B do you have  C are you having

39. Good! I ... work tomorrow.
   A mustn't  B don't have to  C haven't got to

40. I ... smoke.
   A — (= nothing)  B use to  C used to

41. Andrew ... to see us this evening.
   A will come  B comes  C is coming

42. Alice ... have a baby.
   A will  B shall  C is going to

43. I knew that he ... waiting for somebody.
   A is  B was  C would

44. ... Gloria last week?
   A Have you seen  B Did you see  C Were you seeing

45. She's an old friend — I ... her ... years.
   A I've known, for  B know, for  C I've known, since  D know, since
46 We met when we ... in France.
   A studied B were studying C had studied

47 As soon as she came in I knew I ... her before.
   A have seen B saw C had seen

48 This picture ... by a friend of my mother's.
   A is painting B is painted C was painting D was painted

49 Can you ... ?
   A make me some tea B make some tea for me
   C make for me some tea

50 Try ... be late.
   A not to B to not

51 I went to London ... clothes.
   A for buy B for to buy C for buying D to buy

52 You can't live very long without ... .
   A to eat B eat C eating D you eat

53 I enjoy ... , but I wouldn't like ... it all my life.
   A to teach, to do B teaching, doing C to teach, doing
   D teaching, to do

54 Her parents don't want ... married.
   A her to get B her get C that she get D that she gets

55 I'm not sure what ...
   A do they want? B do they want. C they want.

56 The policeman ... me not to park there.
   A asked B said C told D advised

57 I ... you if you ... that again.
   A hit, say B 'll hit, 'll say C hit, 'll say D 'll hit, say

58 It would be nice if we ... a bit more room.
   A would have B had C have

59 If you ... me, I ... in real trouble last year.
   A didn't help, would have been
   B hadn't helped, would have been
   C hadn't helped, would be
   D didn't help, would be

60 There's the man ... took your coat.
   A which B who C that D —
Test yourself: advanced points

Here are some of the more advanced grammar points from How English Works. Do you know them all? Check your answers on page 11.

Choose the correct answer(s). One or more answers may be correct.

61 My family ... thinking of moving to Birmingham.
   A is      B are

62 We watched a ... on TV last night.
   A war film    B war's film    C film of war

63 He was wearing ... riding boots.
   A red old Spanish leather    B old leather red Spanish
   C old red Spanish leather    D Spanish red old leather

64 ... he gets, ....
   A The richer, the more friends he has
   B Richer, more he has friends
   C Richer, more friends he has
   D The richer, the more he has friends

65 It's ... if you take the train.
   A quicker      B the quicker    C quickest    D the quickest

66 He ... very annoying.
   A 's      B 's being

67 That ... be Roger at the door – it's too early.
   A can't    B mustn't    C couldn't

68 At last, after three days, they ... get to the top of the mountain.
   A could    B managed to    C succeeded to    D were able to

69 It was crazy to drive like that. You ... killed somebody.
   A may have    B might have    C could have    D can have

70 I wonder if John ... this evening.
   A will phone    B phones

71 Who ... you that ring?
   A 's given    B gave

72 He ... quite different since he ... married.
   A is, has got    B has been, has got    C is, got    D has been, got

73 This is the first time I ... a sports car.
   A 've driven    B 'm driving    C drive

74 On her birthday ....
   A she was given a new car    B a new car was given to her

75 We can't use the sports hall yet because it ....
   A is still built    B is still building    C is still being built
76 I look forward ... you soon.
    A seeing      B to seeing      C to see

77 If you have trouble going to sleep, try ... a glass of milk before bedtime.
    A drinking     B to drink      C drink

78 This is my friend Joe. I ... met, have you?
    A don't think you've      B think you haven't

79 How ... !
    A he works hard      B hard he works

80 Which of these sentences are correct in spoken English?
    A Car's running badly.  B Seen Peter?
    C Can't come in here, sorry.  D Careful what you say.
    E Lost my glasses.      F Have heard of her.

81 Nobody phoned, did ... ?
    A he      B she      C they      D it      E he or she    F anybody

82 If you were ever in trouble. I would give you all the help you ... .
    A will need    B would need     C need      D needed

83 My wife will be upset ... .
    A if I don't get back tomorrow     B unless I get back tomorrow

84 Tell me at once ... Margaret arrives.
    A if      B when      C in case

85 It's time you ... home, but I'd rather you ... here.
    A go, stay    B went, stayed    C go, stayed      D went, stay

86 I wish I ... more time.
    A had      B have     C would have      D will have

87 John Hastings, ..., has just come to live in our street.
    A that I was at school with      B I was at school with
    C with who I was at school      D with whom I was at school

88 She keeps tapping her fingers, ... gets on my nerves.
    A which      B what      C that which

89 Can you finish the job ... Friday?
    A till      B until     C by    D for

90 There's a supermarket ... our house.
    A in front of      B opposite     C facing
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>basic points</th>
<th>intermediate points</th>
<th>advanced points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>see page</td>
<td>see page</td>
<td>see page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 A</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>61 A,B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 B, D</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>62 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 A</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>63 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 A, C</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>64 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 B, D</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>65 A, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 B</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>66 A, B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 C</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>67 A, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 B</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>68 B, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 B</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>69 B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 C</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>70 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 D</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>71 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 A</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>72 C, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 A, E</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>73 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 A, C</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>74 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 B</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>75 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 A</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>76 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 C</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>77 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 A</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>78 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 C</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>79 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 C, D</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>80 A, B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 D</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>81 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 A</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>82 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 B</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>83 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 C</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>84 A, B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 A</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>85 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 B</td>
<td>213</td>
<td>86 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 A, B</td>
<td>222</td>
<td>87 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 B</td>
<td>284</td>
<td>88 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 A</td>
<td>284</td>
<td>89 C, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 D</td>
<td>285</td>
<td>90 B, C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Explanations and exercises: list of sections

(Note: for explanations of the words that we use for talking about grammar, see pages 298–302.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Determiners: articles, possessives and demonstratives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17 a and an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 a/an and one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 a/an: main uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 a/an in descriptions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 the = ‘you know which one(s)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 generalisations without the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 the and no article: special cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 articles: revision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 possessives (my and mine etc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 this and that</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Uncountable nouns: special cases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>57 plurals of nouns: spelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59 plurals of nouns: special cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 mixed singular and plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62 possessive 's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63 noun + noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64 noun + noun or preposition structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 noun + noun and possessive 's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66 possessive 's or the of structure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Other determiners</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31 which? and what?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 some and any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34 some/any and no article</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 no = ‘not a/any’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36 any = ‘it doesn’t matter which’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37 some, any and no: revision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38 all, everybody and everything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39 whole and all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 much, many, a lot (of), little, few</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42 less and least, fewer and fewest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43 other(s) and another</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44 enough, too and too much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46 of with determiners</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives and adverbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>68 adjectives and adverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 confusing adjectives and adverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71 and with adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72 adjectives without nouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73 adjectives: order before nouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74 word order: adverbs with the verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76 focusing adverbs: even and only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77 adverbs at the end of a sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78 still, yet and already</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comparison, degree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>79 comparatives and superlatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 irregular comparison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81 comparative and superlative adverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82 much etc with comparatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83 comparative or superlative?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84 comparatives: other points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86 superlatives: other points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87 than, as and that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88 as ... as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 like and as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91 so and such</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92 very and too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93 very (much) with past participles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
be, do and have

94  be: progressive forms: do be
95  be: age, colour etc
96  do: emphatic auxiliary
98  do and make
100  have: actions
102  have (got): possession etc
104  have: habitual and repeated actions
105  have + object + verb form

modal auxiliary verbs

106  modal auxiliary verbs: basic rules
108  must, can, may, might: how certain?
110  must, should etc: obligation
112  must and have (got) to: obligation
113  must not, do not have to etc
114  can (ability): special problems
116  can, could, may: permission etc
118  will: willingness etc
120  will and would: typical behaviour
121  shall in questions
122  should have, could have etc
124  revision of modal verbs
126  need
127  had better
128  used to...
129  supposed to

tenses: future

130  future: will (and shall)
132  future: going to
134  future: present progressive
135  future: comparison of structures
136  future: simple present
137  future: tenses after if and when
138  future progressive
139  future perfect
140  future: I am to ...
141  future in the past

tenses: present

142  the two present tenses
144  present tense stories etc
146  present progressive for changes
147  simple present: spelling
148  non-progressive verbs
149  he's always borrowing money etc
150  revision of present tenses

tenses: perfect and past

151  simple present perfect: introduction
152  present perfect and past: news
154  present perfect and past: time words
156  present perfect: situations 'up to now'
158  present perfect progressive
160  present perfect progressive or simple?
161  since and for
162  tenses with since and for
163  present perfect and past: revision
164  past progressive
166  past perfect
168  past perfect progressive
170  perfect tenses with this is the first etc
171  past and progressive in requests etc
172  revision of past and perfect tenses

passives

176  passive structures
178  reasons for using passives
180  passives: verbs with two objects
181  passives: progressive, perfect etc
182  passives: complex structures

structures after verbs, adjectives and nouns

183  verbs with two objects
184  verbs with prepositions and particles
186  structures with get
188  infinitives
189  perfect infinitives (to have gone etc)
190  infinitive with and without to
191  I don't want to etc
192  infinitive of purpose
193  interested and interesting etc
194  -ing forms as subjects, objects etc
196  preposition + -ing
197  preposition + -ing: special cases
198  to...ing
199  verb + infinitive or -ing form
200  go...ing
need ...ing
verb + object + infinitive
-ing form and infinitive both possible
adjective + infinitive or -ing form
noun + infinitive or -ing form
for ... to ... after adjective/noun

basic sentence-structures
questions
what ... like, what time, what sort etc
negative structures
negative questions
not and no
negatives: I don’t think etc
imperatives
let’s
exclamations
there is
dropping sentence-beginnings
dropping words after auxiliaries
question tags: basic rules
question tags: advanced points
short answers and attention signals
I (don’t) think so etc
so am I etc
it: preparatory subject and object
emphasis with it, what etc

conjunctions
conjunctions
conjunctions and clauses: position
using conjunctions
conjunctions with -ing forms
-ing clauses without conjunctions
both ... and; neither ... nor
leaving out that
tenses after conjunctions

indirect speech
indirect speech: why things change
indirect speech: ‘here’ and ‘now’
indirect speech: tenses
indirect speech: present situations
indirect speech: questions
indirect speech: infinitives
tell and say
indirect speech: special cases
revision of indirect speech

structures with if, unless, in case etc
if: ordinary tense-use
if: special tense-use
if I go and if I went: the difference
if I were
if: unreal past situations
unless
in case
it’s time, would rather: structures
wish, if only: structures

relative clauses
relative who, which and that
leaving out relative pronouns
what = ‘the thing that’ etc
relative whose
non-identifying relative clauses
reduced relative clauses
relatives: revision
reading relative clauses
whoever, no matter who etc

prepositions
prepositions with verbs, nouns etc
at/in and to
by and until
for and during
opposite and in front of
between and among
prepositions at the end of questions
prepositions in relative clauses
prepositions in passive clauses
preposition after adjective + infinitive

miscellaneous
numbers
contractions
grammar: useful words
Phonetic alphabet

It is necessary to use a special alphabet to show the pronunciation of English words, because the ordinary English alphabet does not have enough letters to represent all the sounds of the language. The following list contains all the letters of the phonetic alphabet used in this book, with examples of the words in which the sounds that they refer to are found.

Vowels and diphthongs (double vowels)

\[
\begin{align*}
&i: \text{ seat } /\text{sæt}/, \text{ feel } /\text{fɛl}/ \\
&t: \text{ sit } /\text{sɪt}/, \text{ in } /\text{ɪn}/ \\
&e: \text{ set } /\text{sɛt}/, \text{ any } /\text{ɛnɪ}/ \\
&æ: \text{ sat } /\text{sæt}/, \text{ match } /\text{mæt}/ \\
&o: \text{ march } /\text{mɑrʃ}/, \text{ after } /\text{əftə(r)}/ \\
&u: \text{ pot } /\text{pɒt}/, \text{ gone } /\text{ɡən}/ \\
&ə: \text{ port } /\text{pɔrt}/, \text{ law } /\text{lɔr}/ \\
&u: \text{ good } /\text{ɡʊd}/, \text{ could } /\text{kʊd}/ \\
&ɔ: \text{ much } /\text{mʌtʃ}/, \text{ front } /\text{frʌnt}/ \\
&ə: \text{ turn } /\text{tɜrn}/, \text{ word } /\text{wɜrd}/ \\
&æ: \text{ away } /\text{əˈweɪ}/, \text{ collect } /\text{kəˈlekt}/, \text{ until } /\text{əntɪl}/ \\
\end{align*}
\]

Consonants

\[
\begin{align*}
p: \text{ pull } /\text{pʊl}/, \text{ cup } /\text{kʌp}/ \\
b: \text{ bull } /\text{bɔl}/, \text{ rob } /\text{rɒb}/ \\
f: \text{ ferry } /\text{ˈfɛri}/, \text{ life } /\text{laɪf}/ \\
v: \text{ very } /\text{ˈvɜri}/, \text{ live } /\text{lɪv}/ \\
θ: \text{ think } /\text{θɪŋk}/, \text{ bath } /\text{bɑθ}/ \\
ð: \text{ then } /\text{ðɛn}/, \text{ with } /\text{wɪð}/ \\
t: \text{ take } /\text{teɪk}/, \text{ set } /\text{set}/ \\
d: \text{ day } /\text{deɪ}/, \text{ red } /\text{reð}/ \\
s: \text{ sing } /\text{sɪŋ}/, \text{ rice } /\text{rʌs}/ \\
z: \text{ zoo } /\text{zʊʊ}/, \text{ days } /\text{deɪz}/ \\
f: \text{ show } /\text{ʃəʊ}/, \text{ wish } /\text{wɪʃ}/ \\
ʒ: \text{ pleasure } /\text{ˈpleʒə(r)}/, \text{ occasion } /\text{əˈkeɪʃn}/ \\
\end{align*}
\]

The sign (') shows stress.

tʃ: \text{ cheap } /\text{tʃi:p}/, \text{ catch } /\text{kætʃ}/ \\
dʒ: \text{ jail } /\text{dʒeɪl}/, \text{ bridge } /\text{brɪdʒ}/ \\
k: \text{ case } /\text{kɛs}/, \text{ take } /\text{teɪk}/ \\
g: \text{ go } /\text{ɡoʊ}/, \text{ rug } /\text{rʌɡ}/ \\
m: \text{ my } /\text{maɪ}/, \text{ come } /\text{kəm}/ \\
n: \text{ no } /\text{nəʊ}/, \text{ on } /\text{ɒn}/ \\
r: \text{ sing } /\text{sɪŋ}/, \text{ finger } /\text{ˈfɪŋɡə(r)}/ \\
l: \text{ love } /\text{lʌv}/, \text{ hole } /\text{hɔl}/ \\
r: \text{ round } /\text{rɔʊnd}/, \text{ carry } /\text{ˈkærɪ}/ \\
w: \text{ well } /\text{wel}/ \\
j: \text{ young } /\text{ˈjʌŋ}/ \\
h: \text{ house } /\text{hɔʊs}/
a and an

We use a before a consonant and an before a vowel. But it depends on the pronunciation of the following word, not the spelling.

- a dog
- a hat
- a one-pound coin (ə wʌn...)
- a union (əˌjuːnɪˈʌn)
- an orange
- an uncle
- an hour (ən ˈaʊər)
- an MP (ən ˈemˈpiː)

1 A or an?

1 ___ elephant
2 ___ university
3 ___ umbrella
4 ___ ticket
5 ___ VIP
6 ___ honest man
7 ___ half-hour lesson
8 ___ one-hour lesson
9 ___ useful book
10 ___ SOS
11 ___ X-ray
12 ___ European
13 ___ hand
14 ___ underpass
15 ___ unit
16 ___ CD
17 ___ exam
18 ___ school

a/an and one

We use one, not a/an:
- in contrast with another or other(s)
- in the expression one day
- with hundred and thousand when we want to sound precise (see page 294)
- in expressions like only one and just one.

One girl wanted to go out, but the others wanted to stay at home.
One day I'll take you to meet my family.

'How many are there? About a hundred?' 'Exactly one hundred and three.'
We've got plenty of sausages, but only one egg.

1 A or one?

___ day last year - it was ___ very hot afternoon in June - I was hurrying to get home. I was about ___ hour late - well, to be precise, exactly ___ hour and ten minutes: I had taken the train that arrived at the station at 6.15. Anyway, there was ___ woman standing under the trees, and there were several children with her. I saw ___ child clearly - she was ___ lovely dark-haired girl - but I only heard the others. Suddenly ___ strange thing happened. The girl took some stones and leaves out of her pocket, and threw ___ stone after another into the air.
a/an: main uses

We use *a/an* to say what kind of thing somebody or something is, what job a person does, or what something is used as. A/an has no plural.

She's a farmer.
He worked as a taxi-driver.
Don't use the plate as an ashtray.

They're farmers.
They worked as taxi-drivers.
Don't use the plates as ashtrays.

1 Say what these people's jobs are, using the words in the box.
Example:

* A is a conductor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>builder</th>
<th>butcher</th>
<th>conductor</th>
<th>cook</th>
<th>doctor</th>
<th>electrician</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gardener</td>
<td>hairdresser</td>
<td>lorry driver</td>
<td>mechanic</td>
<td>musician</td>
<td>painter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>photographer</td>
<td>scientist</td>
<td>secretary</td>
<td>teacher</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Alan can mean ‘any example of something’. In the plural, we use no article or some (see page 34 for the difference).

A spider has eight legs. Spiders have eight legs.
A CD costs more than a cassette. CDs cost more than cassettes.
I’d like a cup of coffee. I’d like some chips.

2 Say what these people and things are. Then make some similar sentences of your own. Examples:

A doctor is a person who helps people who are ill.
A pen is a thing used for writing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>curtain</th>
<th>dictionary</th>
<th>person</th>
<th>thing</th>
<th>that water comes out of</th>
<th>who helps people to learn things</th>
<th>who services and repairs cars</th>
<th>used for finding the meanings of words</th>
<th>who helps people to keep their teeth healthy</th>
<th>that you put across a window</th>
<th>who helps people with legal problems</th>
<th>used for talking to people who are far away</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

A/an can mean ‘a particular one’, if you don’t say exactly who or which. In the plural, we use some or no article.

A man called while you were out. Some men called.
James married a doctor. They both married doctors.

3 Complete these sentences in any way you like.

1 There’s a/an _____ in my pocket/handbag.
2 In my town, there’s a big _____.
3 If you see a/an _____ you’ll have good/bad luck.
4 I recently bought a/an _____.
5 I’ve got a beautiful _____.

We don’t use a/an with uncountable nouns. (NOT a rain)
We don’t use a/an with possessives. (NOT a friend)
After kind of or sort of, a/an is usually dropped. A kind of tree (NOT a kind of a tree)
In exclamations with what, a/an is not dropped. What a pity! (NOT What pity!)
A/an usually comes after quite, rather and such. Quite/rather/such a nice day
a/an in descriptions

**Descriptions:** He's got a long nose. (NOT ... the long nose.)
She's got an interesting face. (NOT ... the interesting face.)

1. Make sentences like those above to describe the people in the pictures, using some of the words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>long/small nose</th>
<th>long neck</th>
<th>round/square/oval face</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>big/small mouth</td>
<td>big/small moustache</td>
<td>long/short beard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice smile/laugh</td>
<td>quiet/loud voice</td>
<td>bad temper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good sense of humour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Describe people you know, using a/an + singular as much as possible. If you can work with a partner, describe another person without giving their name. Your partner must try to guess who it is.

**Note that hair is singular, and has no article.**

*She's got dark hair.* (NOT ... a-dark-hair or ... dark-hairs.)
The means ‘you know which (one/ones) I mean’.

1. I bought a radio and a CD player, but the CD player didn’t work.
   (= the CD player I just told you about – you know which one.)

2. The women over there work with my sister.
   (= the women I’m pointing out to you – you know which ones.)

3. Please close the door. (You can see which one.)

4. He’s been to the North Pole. (It’s obvious which – there’s only one.)

We often use the with only and with superlatives.

5. She’s the only woman for me. It’s the best restaurant in town.

1. Put in the if the speaker and hearer probably know exactly which
   (one/ones). Put in a/an or – ( = no article) if not.

   1. Who opened ____ window?
   2. She lives in ____ centre of Glasgow.
   3. I’d like ____ glass of water.
   4. My sister is married to ____ farmer.
   5. ____ man in ____ next flat is French.
   6. He’s ____ oldest child in ____ school.
   7. Who’s ____ girl by ____ piano?
   8. They’ve got ____ boy and ____ girl.
      ____ boy’s two years older than ____ girl.
   9. Today is ____ only day that I’m free.
   10. ‘Which coat is yours?’ ‘____ red one.’

2. Put in the, a/an or – ( = no article).

   2.1 Do you see ____ man standing near ____ door? He works as ____ assistant
       in ____ same shop as I do. Well, I saw him the other day and he was driving
       ____ big red Porsche. And do you see ____ expensive clothes he’s wearing?
       Where does he get ____ money to pay for it all? ____ month ago he hadn’t got
       ____ penny. I told you about ____ burglary that we had at ____ shop,
       didn’t I? Do you think I should go to ____ police?’

3. Work with another student if you can. If you say the following
   expressions, will he/she know which one(s) you probably mean?
   If not, add some words so that he/she will know which one(s).
   Examples:

   the teacher (OK) the window → the window on the right

   the teacher    the window    the light    the lights
   the ceiling    the door      the light switch the school
   the lesson     the dictionary the place    the car    the bus
   the house      the post office the station  the President
   the government the restaurant
generalisations without the

The does not mean ‘all’.
We do not use the in generalisations with plural and uncountable nouns. Compare:

I like music. (NOT ... the music.) Can you turn off the music?
She’s very interested in nature. What is the nature of his illness?
People have to live in society. I’ve joined the Poetry Society.
Books are expensive. Put the books on the table.

1 Put the or – (= no article) in each blank.

There must be something wrong with me. 1. people usually think that 2. babies are sweet and 3. teenagers are annoying. Not me. I think 4. babies are boring. For me, 5. children are only interesting from about 6. age of two, when you can understand 7. things that they say. But 8. time between ages thirteen and twenty are 9. years that I like best. Oh, it’s difficult at times, but I still prefer talking about 10. money with a teenager to cleaning a baby’s bottom.

We do not normally use the in generalisations with plural and uncountable nouns, even if there is an adjective before the noun.

She’s studying Chinese history. He collects antique clocks.

But we use the when a description with of follows the noun.
She’s studying the history of China.

2 Use some adjectives from the box, or other adjectives, to write true (or false!) sentences about yourself. Don’t use the. If you are in a group, pass the sentences round; see if everyone can guess who wrote what.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>casual</th>
<th>classical</th>
<th>detective</th>
<th>foggy</th>
<th>formal</th>
<th>historical</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>really hot</td>
<td>pop</td>
<td>romantic</td>
<td>spicy</td>
<td>stormy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I like eating _____ food.
2 I can’t stand listening to _____ music.
3 I (don’t) like reading _____ novels.
4 I hate _____ weather.
5 I love _____ weather.
6 I like wearing _____ clothes.
We can use **the** in generalisations with **singular countable nouns**, to talk about a whole class of things. This is common in scientific and technical language.

- **Who invented the telescope?**  **The tiger** is in danger of dying out.
- **I can't play the piano.**  **I hate the telephone.**

Note also:
- **I love the sea.**  **Do you like living in the country?**
- **I never go to the cinema or the theatre.**

3 Complete the sentences with some of the expressions from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the aeroplane</th>
<th>the ballpoint pen</th>
<th>the Bible</th>
<th>the camera</th>
<th>the computer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the dog</td>
<td>the fax machine</td>
<td>the novel</td>
<td>the personal stereo</td>
<td>the typewriter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the violin</td>
<td>the whale</td>
<td>the wheel</td>
<td>the X-ray machine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Before people invented ____ , they couldn’t transport heavy loads easily.
2. In its early years, ____ wasn’t thought to be good reading for young ladies.
3. Scientific calculations were much slower before the invention of ____ .
4. ____ is one of the hardest instruments to play.
5. What did people write with before ____ ?
6. ____ is a much faster way of sending letters than the post.
7. What can we do to save ____ from dying out?
8. ____ is a valuable tool for doctors, but it has its dangers as well.

Never lend books, for no one ever returns them; the only books I have in my library are the books that other people have lent me.

*Anatole France*

Without music, life would be a mistake.

*Nietzsche*

I would give anything to hear and to love music, but do the best I can, it is just noise and nothing more.

*Catherine the Great of Russia*

I don’t know anything about music — in my line you don’t have to.

*Elvis Presley*

Classical music is the kind we keep thinking will turn into a tune.

*Kin Hubbard*

Give me books, fruit, French wine and fine weather and a little music out of doors, played by somebody I do not know.

*John Keats*

This, books can do — nor this alone: they give New views to life, and teach us how to live.

*George Crabbe*

I quite admit that modern novels have many good points. All that I insist on is that, as a class, they are quite unreadable.

*Oscar Wilde*

Nature is usually wrong.

*The painter James McNeill Whistler*

For expressions like **the blind, the old**, see page 72.
the and no article: special cases

Some common expressions with no article after a preposition:
- to/at/from school, university, college, church, work at/from home
- to/in(to) / out of hospital, prison, bed to/in(to)/from town on holiday
- by car/bus/plane etc (but on foot) to/at/after breakfast, lunch etc
- at night (but in the morning/afternoon/evening) on Monday etc
- in spring, summer etc (or in the spring etc) at Easter, Christmas etc

Compare:
- She’s in prison. (= She’s a prisoner.)
- She works as a cook in the prison.
- You should be in bed. (= resting)
- I found chewing gum in the bed again.

1 Choose a word or expression for each blank, and add a preposition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bed</th>
<th>bus</th>
<th>car</th>
<th>Christmas</th>
<th>Easter</th>
<th>the evening</th>
<th>foot</th>
<th>home</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hospital</td>
<td>night</td>
<td>school</td>
<td>summer</td>
<td>town</td>
<td>university</td>
<td>work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 ‘How do you usually get _____ to do your shopping?’ ‘Oh, I usually go there _____, but sometimes if I have a lot to carry I go _____.’

2 After a hard day _____ my mother used to come home and go _____ to rest for half an hour before making supper.

3 Children go _____ to learn to read and write.

4 Does your family usually go away _____ or do you stay _____?

5 Don’t drink coffee _____ if you have trouble sleeping _____.

6 When Juliet was studying _____, she broke her leg and had to stay _____ for two weeks.

2 Which version of the cartoon caption do you think is correct?

‘He’s from Texas / the Texas.’

Drawing by Dana Fradon © 1994
The New Yorker Magazine, Inc.
Place names with no article:
- continents, most countries
- states, counties etc.
- towns
- most streets
- lakes, most mountains
- town + buildings

Place names with the:
- name includes common noun
- seas, rivers, deserts
- mountain and island groups
- most geographical regions
- hotels, cinemas, theatres

3 Make sentences using words and expressions from the box.
Example:

A 1/10/16: Anna goes to work on foot. OR Anna often goes to work on foot if the weather's fine. OR Everybody in the office except Anna comes to work on foot.

If you are in a group, write some 'number sentences' for other students.

4 Write the English names of ten places you have been to, and ten places you would like to go to.

Other expressions with no article:
- He was elected President.
- She became Queen.
- They made her Manager.
- What's on TV? Let's watch television.
- (But on the radio, listen to the radio)
- This is Alice's house. (NOT ... the Alice's house, – see page 62)
articles: revision

1 *A, an, the or – (nothing)?*

1 ___ diplomat is ___ person who can tell you to go to hell in such a way that you actually look forward to ___ trip.  *Caskie Stinnett*

2 ___ dog is ___ only thing on earth that loves you more than you love yourself.  *Josh Billings*

3 ___ Americans like ___ fat books and ___ thin women.  *Russell Baker*

4 ___ accountant is ___ man who is hired to explain that you didn’t make ___ money you did.  *Anonymous*

5 ___ actor’s ___ guy who, if you ain’t talking about him, ain’t listening.  *Attributed to Marlon Brando*

6 ___ optimist is someone who thinks ___ future is uncertain.  *Anonymous*

7 ___ death is ___ nature’s way of telling you to slow down.  *Anonymous*

8 ___ diplomacy is the art of saying ‘nice doggie!’ until you can find ___ stone.  *Wynn Catlin*

9 ___ equality is ___ lie — ___ women are better.  *Anonymous*

10 ___ birds do it; ___ bees do it; even ___ educated fleas do it. Let’s do it. Let’s fall in ___ love.  *Cole Porter*

11 I always pass on ___ good advice. It is ___ only thing to do with it. It is never any use to oneself.  *Oscar Wilde*

12 I love acting. It is so much more real than ___ life.  *Oscar Wilde*

13 Never put anything on ___ paper, my boy, and never trust ___ man with ___ small black moustache.  *P G Wodehouse*

14 Nothing’s illegal if ___ hundred businessmen decide to do it, and that’s true anywhere in ___ world.  *Andrew Young*

15 Remember that as ___ teenager you are at ___ last stage in your life when you will be happy to hear that ___ phone is for you.  *Fran Lebowitz*

16 Save ___ water, shower with ___ friend.  *Anonymous*

17 ___ happiest time of anyone’s life is just after ___ first divorce.  *John Kenneth Galbraith*

18 Treat ___ work of art like ___ prince: let it speak to you first.  *Attributed to Arthur Schopenhauer*

19 When I was ___ boy of fourteen, my father was so ignorant I could hardly stand to have ___ old man around. But when I got to be twenty-one, I was astonished at how much he had learned in seven years.  *Mark Twain*

20 When I was born, I was so surprised that I couldn’t talk for ___ year and ___ half.  *Gracie Allen*

21 A banker is ___ man who lends you ___ umbrella when ___ weather is fair, and takes it away from you when it rains.  *Anonymous*

22 California is ___ great place — if you happen to be ___ orange.  *F Allen*

23 Writing about ___ art is like dancing about ___ architecture.  *Anonymous*
2 Complete the captions with *a, an, the* or *-, and say which cartoons they go with.

1 'One night you’ll get me out of ____ bed and it really will be ____ burglar.'
2 'I don’t think much of ____ wedding photographer.'
3 'For heaven’s sake, Harry! Can’t you just relax and enjoy ____ art, ____ music, ____ religion, ____ literature, ____ drama and ____ history, without trying to tie it all together?'
4 'Good morning, Mr Dolby! It’s 5.15 a.m., and this is radio station WJRM. If you name ____ next tune you will win ____ ride on ____ elephant and ____ two tickets to ____ rock concert!'
possessives (my and mine etc)

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Complete the table and then check your answers in the key.

This belongs to me. This is my coat. This is mine.
This belongs to you. This is ___ money. This is ___.
This belongs to ___. This is his car. This is ___.
This belongs to her. This is ___ office. This is ___.
This belongs to ___. This is our house. This is ___.
This belongs to them. This is ___ dog. This is ___.
Who does this belong to? ___ bike is this? ___ is this bike?

Note also: its name (NOT it’s-name); its value; its history.

2 Put in the right possessives.

1 ‘Is this Alice’s book or (your/yours), do you know? ’It’s (her/hers).’
2 ‘(Who/Whose) car is that in the drive?’ ‘I don’t know — not (our/ours).’
3 Take (your/yours) feet off the table. (It/Its) legs aren’t very strong.
4 John’s bringing ___ guitar and Catherine’s bringing ___ drums.
5 Chris and Pat never cut the grass in ___ garden.
6 The Whartons are spending August in (our/ours) flat, and we’re borrowing (their/their).
7 That’s (my/mine) coat, and the scarf is ___ too.

You can’t put possessives immediately after articles or after this/that etc.

She’s a friend of mine. (NOT She’s a my friend.)
How’s that brother of yours? (NOT How’s that your brother?)

3 Join up the ideas to make expressions.

1 that + your smelly dog
   that smelly dog of yours
2 that + her unemployed brother
3 another + my good friend
4 a + my brilliant idea
5 these + his stupid plans
6 those + your old books
7 some + his distant relations
8 a + her beautiful cousin
9 this + your wonderful news
10 that + our lazy son
11 those + their impossible children
12 these + our silly cats

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
We normally use possessives with parts of the body and clothes.

Anne broke her arm skiing. (NOT ... broke the arm ...)  
He stood there, his eyes closed and his hands in his pockets.

4 Put in one of the words from the box with a suitable possessive.

| coats | foot | jacket | mouth | tail | raincoat |

1. Martin stood up and put ____ on.
2. Helen hurt ____ very badly yesterday.
3. That dog’s hurt ____.
4. They took off ____ and sat down.
5. Look at the weather – and I’ve forgotten ____ again.
6. I’ll tell you everything if you promise to keep ____ shut.

5 Complete the cartoon caption with a suitable possessive.

"No, he's not ____! We thought you'd brought him."

We often use the instead of a possessive in expressions with prepositions, especially when we talk about common kinds of pain, illness and physical contact, and when the possessor has already been mentioned.

He's got a pain in the chest.  Ann's got a cold in the head.  
She hit me on the head.  I looked him in the eye.

We use possessives with own.

my own room / a room of my own (NOT an-own-room)
this and that

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Study the examples, and think about the difference between this/these and that/those.

Come and look at this picture.  What’s that on the roof?
This isn’t a very good party.  He’s ill. That’s why he’s away.
Do you like this music?  Stop that noise!
Listen – this will make you laugh.  Thanks – that was a great meal.
(on the phone) This is Ann.  (on the phone) Who’s that?
This is my friend Paula.  I didn’t like those stories he told.
These shoes are hurting my feet.  Do you remember those people
These grapes are really sweet.  we met in Edinburgh?

DO IT YOURSELF

2 Look at the examples again. Which words and expressions in the box go with this/these, and which go with that/those? Check your answers in the key.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>finished</th>
<th>happening now</th>
<th>said before</th>
<th>just about to start</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>here</td>
<td>near</td>
<td>over</td>
<td>distant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>there</td>
<td></td>
<td>unwanted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Put in this/that/these/those.

1 Why am I living in ___ country?
2 Get me ___ box from the table.
3 Ugh – ___ potatoes taste burnt!
4 What was ___ noise?
5 Who are ___ people over there?
6 Come ___ way, please.
7 Isn’t ___ weather great?
8 Did you hear ___ rain in the night?
9 Tell her to stop ___ shouting.
10 ___ was a nice meal – thanks.
11 Who said ___?
12 Why did she marry ___ idiot?
13 Do it ___ way, not like ___.

4 This or that?

‘My wife told me to carry this/that.’
which? and what?

We ask **which?** when there is a limited choice.

We ask **what?** when there is a wide choice.

Which size do you want - small, medium or large?

What is your shoe size?

Sometimes both are possible.

**Which/What** day next week can you come and see us?

Before of and one, we can use **which** but not **what**.

**Which of** the countries in Europe have you visited? (NOT **What of** ...?)

Look at all those stars. **Which one** is the nearest? (NOT **What one** ...?)

1 **Which or what?**

1. We’ve got red wine and white - ____ will you have?
2. ____ books did you read for last year’s English class?
3. ____ of the books on the list have you already read?
4. ____ French queen said. ‘Let them eat cake’?
5. ____’s your name?
6. ____ band do you write with?
7. ____ kind of car have you got?
8. ____ one is yours?
9. ____ party do you think will win the election?
10. ____ subject do you prefer, chemistry or physics?
11. ____ was your favourite subject at primary school?

When there is no noun, we use **who** for people, not **which**. Compare:

**Which boxer** won?  **Who** won? (NOT **Which** won?)
some and any

Some means ‘a certain (not large) number or amount of’. Some is used mostly in affirmative sentences. We also use some in questions when we expect people to say ‘Yes’ (for example, in requests and offers).

She’s got some interesting ideas. There’s some mud on the carpet. ‘Could I have some coffee?’ ‘Sure. And would you like some biscuits?’

We use any instead of some in negative sentences, in most questions, with if, and with words like never, hardly, without, refuse, doubt (which have a negative kind of meaning).

Do you know any good jokes? He hasn’t got any money.
If you find any mistakes, please tell me. She never has any fun.
We got there without any difficulty. I refuse to give him any help.

The difference between somebody/anybody, someone/anyone, something/anything etc is the same as the difference between some and any.

There’s somebody outside. Would you like something to drink?
Does anybody understand this? She didn’t say anything.

1 Here are some sentences with any. Which word in each sentence gives the ‘negative kind of meaning’? Examples:

He never listens to anyone. We’ve hardly got any cat food.

1 The baby refuses to eat anything.
2 I doubt that you’ll find any bread now.
3 There was hardly anybody in town.
4 You never get any sense out of her.
5 You seldom hear any birds here.
6 I left the house without any money.

2 Affirmative/negative: choose the right word.

1 I can’t find (some/any) butter, but we’ve got (some/any) margarine.
2 Emma has got (some/any) old pictures of the house to show us.
3 I haven’t got (something/anything) to wear to the party.
4 There aren’t (some/any) buses on Sunday.
5 Helen brought me (some/any) beautiful roses from her garden.
6 There’s (somebody/anybody) waiting for you at reception.
3 Questions: Choose some/any/ somebody/anybody/ something/anything.
1 Did you meet ___ interesting at the party?  5 Is there ___ I can do?
2 Can I offer you ___ wine?  6 Would you like ___ to help you?
3 Shall we listen to ___ music?  7 Do you know ___ German?
4 Have you got ___ children?

4 Choose the right word.
1 Have you got (some/any) time free on Wednesday afternoon?
2 There’s (something/anything) strange about the way Pete’s acting today.
3 Nobody can find out (something/anything) about when the exams will be.
4 Is there (something/anything) we should bring to the meeting?
5 (Some/Any) of Laura’s friends were at the party last night.
6 Shall I bring you (something/anything) to read while you wait?
7 I had three sets of house keys, and I can’t find (some/any) of them now.
8 Hardly (some/any) of the smaller cars have enough leg room for Jill.
9 Do you know if (some/any) of the Morries are coming on Sunday?
10 Can I get you (some/any) coffee? I’ve just made (some/any).
11 She refuses to have (something/anything) to do with her family now.
12 I haven’t done (some/any) revision for the exam – I know I’ll fail.
13 If there’s (some/any) soup left, could you put it in the fridge, please?
14 I doubt that there’s (something/anything) we can do now.
15 Never trust (someone/anyone) who has a perfectly tidy desk.
16 Helen can ride a bike without (some/any) help now.
17 Has Eve got (some/any) brothers or sisters, do you know?
18 Harriet has got (some/any) beautiful jewellery, but she never wears it.

5 Complete the cartoon caption.

'Oh, he’s right here beside me making his "I don’t want to go ___ where with ___ body at ___ time" face.'

For any meaning 'it doesn’t matter which'. see page 36.
some/any and no article

We use some/any to talk about indefinite, not very large numbers or amounts – when we don’t know, care or say exactly how much/many. We use no article when we are thinking about unlimited numbers or amounts, or not thinking about numbers/amounts at all. Compare:

I’ve planted some roses. (A limited number; it isn’t clear how many.)
I like roses. (No idea of number.)
We got talking to some students. (A limited number.)
Our new neighbours are students. (The idea is classification, not number.)
Is there any water in the fridge? (The speaker wants a limited amount.)
Is there water on the moon? (No idea of amount.)

1 Put some, any, or no article.

1 This car hardly uses ___ petrol.
2 This car doesn’t use ___ petrol: it’s battery-powered.
3 Would you like ___ beer?
4 In Belgium they make a stew with ___ beef and ___ beer.
5 Do you ever read ___ novels?
6 I read ___ wonderful novels by O’Brien when I was on holiday.
7 Are your sisters ___ doctors too?
8 We met ___ doctors at the party.
9 Could you lend me ___ money?
10 Is ___ money something you worry about?
11 Do you like ___ mushrooms?
12 Are there ___ mushrooms left?
13 We need ___ more milk.
14 Cheese is made from ___ milk.

2 Choose the correct version of the cartoon caption.

‘Did we have children / some children that grew up and went away?’

We do not use some/any when it is clear exactly how much/many.
Compare:

You’ve got some great books.
You’ve got pretty toes. (You’ve got some pretty toes would suggest that the speaker is not making it clear how many – perhaps six or seven.)
no = ‘not a/any’

No is a more emphatic way of saying ‘not a’ or ‘not any’. At the beginning of a sentence, no is almost always used.

Sorry, I’ve got no time.
There were no letters for you this morning.
No cigarette is completely harmless. (NOT Not any cigarette ...)
No tourists ever come to our village.

Nobody, nothing etc are used in the same way.

Nobody loves me. I’ve got absolutely nothing to say.

Before of, we use none, not no (often with a singular verb).

None of his friends likes his wife.

1 Put in no none nobody.
1 ‘Why can’t I have toast for breakfast?’ ‘Because there’s ____ bread.’
2 ‘My students expect me to know everything,’ ‘____ knows everything.’
3 ____ newspaper tells the whole truth.
4 ‘What were your photos like?’ ‘I’m afraid ____ of them came out.’
5 ‘Do you think he’s honest?’ ‘____ politician is completely honest.’
6 ____ of the people there remembered seeing anything unusual.
7 I’ve got ____ patience with people like her.
8 There’s ____ I can talk to in this place.
9 ____ of you care what I think.
10 He had ____ money. ____ job and ____ place to live.

▲ 2 Write answers. Use no none nothing and nobody.
1 ‘Why can’t you take me to school in the car today?’
Because I’ve got no time.
2 ‘Can you ask someone in your family to help you with your French?’
3 ‘Jeremy says his father speaks seventy-six languages.’
4 ‘Do we have to go out tonight? Can’t we eat at home?’
5 ‘Do you think I could ask you for a cup of coffee?’
6 ‘Why don’t you phone home to find out if your letter’s arrived?’
7 ‘If you’re bored, why don’t you go to the cinema?’
8 ‘Why didn’t you buy any flowers?’
9 ‘Why didn’t you join in the conversation last night?’
10 ‘How many of your brothers are married?’
any = ‘it doesn’t matter which’

Any can mean ‘it doesn’t matter which’. With this meaning, any is common in affirmative sentences. In negative sentences, we can use just any to make this meaning clear.

Any doctor will tell you that smoking is bad for you.
He gets angry with any man who looks at his wife.
Come any time you like.
I don’t do just any work; I choose jobs that interest me.

Anybody, anything etc can be used in the same way.

Anybody can sing if they really want to.
‘Can I have something to eat?’ ‘Of course, take anything you like.’

Any is not negative – it is the opposite of no or not any. Compare:

That’s easy: anybody can do it.
That’s too hard: nobody can do it.

I’m really hungry – I’ll eat anything.
I’m not hungry – I don’t want anything.

1 Choose the best word or expression for each sentence.

1 (Any/No) doctor can tell you if you’ve got flu.
2 (Any/No) doctor can tell you exactly how long you’re going to live.
3 Just say (anything/nothing), so we can see if the microphone works.
4 If the police arrest you, say (anything/nothing) until your lawyer gets there.
5 What do you mean, music? I (can’t hear / can hear) any music.
6 You can hear (any/no) kind of music you like at the Reading Festival.
7 Anna’s very secretive; she talks to (anybody/nobody) about her problems.
8 Jim tells his problems to (anybody/nobody) who will listen.

2 Answer the questions using any.

1 Where can you get: a plane ticket? any travel agent’s
lead-free petrol? dog food? stamps? running shoes? a dictionary?
2 Who can give you advice on: English pronunciation? getting a divorce?
paying your taxes? problems with your camera? milking cows?
3 Write advertisements for toothpaste, shampoo, a computer, an airline etc, using ’Don’t buy/use/etc just any ..., buy/etc ...
Example: Don’t buy just any car, buy a Jaguar.
some, any and no: revision

1 Fill in the blanks and put together the four sentences. Which goes with which cartoon?

Cook ___ you want for supper  he’s not seeing ___ today
I suppose you’ve brought me here  I’m sorry
in the church  There’s ___ place for women
to tell me you haven’t got ___ money  It’s your birthday?

A

B

C

D
all, everybody and everything

All (of) can be used with a noun or pronoun. All is not used without a noun or pronoun to mean ‘everybody’. Compare:

All the people were tired.
Everybody was tired. (NOT All were tired.)

All can be used to mean ‘everything’ or ‘the only thing’, but only with a relative clause (all that ...). Compare:

She gave me all/everything (that) she had.
All (that) I want is a place of my own.
The thieves took everything. (NOT The thieves took all.)

1 Put in all if possible; if not, put in everything.

1 _____ I need to make a comedy is a park, a policeman and a pretty girl.
   Charlie Chaplin
2 I hurry to laugh at _____ for fear of having to cry. Beaumarchais
3 I can resist _____ except temptation. Oscar Wilde
4 You can only have power over people so long as you don’t take _____ away from them. Solzhenitsyn
5 ‘Beauty is truth, truth beauty,’ – that is _____
   Ye know on earth, and all ye need to know. John Keats
6 They say _____ in the world is good for something. John Dryden
7 [A cynic] knows the price of _____ and the value of nothing. Oscar Wilde
8 Life is like nothing, because it is _____ William Golding
9 [We don’t know] whether Laws be right,
   Or whether Laws be wrong;
   _____ that we know who lie in gaol
   Is that the wall is strong. Oscar Wilde

2 Put in all or everybody.

1 _____ women become like their mothers. That is their tragedy. No man does. That’s his. Oscar Wilde
2 In the future, _____ will be famous for fifteen minutes. Andy Warhol
3 _____ human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights. Universal Declaration of Human Rights
4 I am free of _____ prejudices – I hate _____ equally. W C Fields
5 He who praises _____ praises nobody. Samuel Johnson
6 Justice is open to _____ people in the same way as the Ritz Hotel.
   Judge Sturgess
whole and all

We use **whole** most often with **singular countable nouns**. We use **all** most often with **uncountable** and **plural nouns**.

Compare:

- a whole plate — all the food
- a whole concert — all the music
- the whole sweater — all the wool
- the whole orchestra — all the musicians

Note the word order with the: **the whole** ... / **all the** ...

Before place names, we most often use the **whole** of.

**the whole of Europe**

1 Write an expression with **whole** or **all** for each item. Examples:

- a football team → a whole football team
- the flowers → all the flowers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a family</th>
<th>the islands</th>
<th>the road system</th>
<th>South Africa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the children</td>
<td>the country</td>
<td>the traffic</td>
<td>Asia a week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the vegetables</td>
<td>the political party</td>
<td>the students</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the luggage</td>
<td>the meat</td>
<td>MPs</td>
<td>a class</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: In some common time expressions, both whole and all are possible.

- the whole afternoon/night/week — all (the) afternoon/night/week
- the whole day — all day: the whole time — all the time: my whole life — all my life
much, many, a lot (of), little, few

We use **much** with **singular** (uncountable) nouns and **many** with **plurals**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How much time have we got?</th>
<th>How many tickets do we need?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Much** and **many** are most common in **questions** and **negatives**, and after **so, as, too** and **very**.

In other informal **affirmative** sentences, we generally prefer **a lot (of)**, **lots (of)** or **plenty (of)**. All three of these can be used with both uncountables and plurals.

'Do you have **much** trouble with English?' 'I don't have much trouble speaking, but I have lots of difficulty writing.' (NOT ... much difficulty ...)

'Are there **many** opera houses in London?' 'Not many, but a lot of theatres and plenty of cinemas.' (NOT ... many theatres and many cinemas.)

I love you **so much**. **Take as much** as you like.

There are **too many** people here.

1 **Write at least eight sentences about yourself. Have you got not much, not many, a lot / lots of, or plenty of...? Examples:**

I haven't got much ambition. I've got lots of cousins.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ambition</th>
<th>cousins</th>
<th>problems</th>
<th>nice clothes</th>
<th>energy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>books</td>
<td>confidence</td>
<td>work to do</td>
<td>old friends</td>
<td>free time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 **Write much/many with so, as, too or very for each blank.**

1 Thank you ____ for your help.  
2 Are there ____ chairs as people?  
3 You can never have ____ love.  
4 I like your hair ____.

5 Bob feels ____ better today.  
6 I don't know ____ poems as you.  
7 She's got ____ relatives!  
8 Get ____ tickets as you can.

In a formal style, **many** and **much** are more common in affirmative sentences.

*The researches of many commentators have already thrown much darkness on this subject, and it is probable that if this continues we shall soon know nothing at all about it.*  — Mark Twain

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 299–302.
A little is used with singular (uncountable) nouns and a few with plurals.
Little and few are rather negative: they mean 'not much/many'.
A little and a few are more positive: their meaning is more like 'some'.

Cactuses need little water.
Give the roses a little water every day.
His ideas are very difficult, and few people understand them.
His ideas are very difficult, but a few people understand them.

Little and few (without a) are rather formal; in a conversational style we more often say only a little/few or not much/many.
Cactuses only need a little water. Not many people understand his ideas.

3 Write little or few.

1 There is ___ friendship in the world, and least of all between equals. Francis Bacon
2 A ___ learning is a dangerous thing. Alexander Pope
3 Men of ___ words are the best men. William Shakespeare (Henry V)
4 Never in the field of human conflict was so much owed by so many to so ___.
   Winston Churchill
5 Never before have we had so ___ time in which to do so much. Franklin Roosevelt
6 A country having a ___ inflation is like a woman being a little pregnant.
   Leon Henderson
7 We ___, we happy ___, we band of brothers;
   For he today that sheds his blood with me
   Shall be my brother. William Shakespeare (Henry V)
8 Death is one of the ___ things that can be done as easily lying down. Woody Allen

4 Little or a little? Few or a few?

1 It is ___ use trying to change her mind.
2 Could you possibly give me ___ help?
3 ___ teenagers in the village could read.
4 Slowly, ___ children began coming to school.
5 I only need ___ minutes to get ready.
6 She only wanted ___ love, ___ kindness.
7 Nadia drank ___ coffee and no alcohol.
8 Unfortunately, he had ___ friends.

Now write sentences 1, 3, 7 and 8 in a more conversational style.

Few people can be happy unless they hate
some other person, nation or creed.
Bertrand Russell
less and least, fewer and fewest

Less and fewer are comparative (see page 79): they are the opposite of more.
Least and fewest are superlative (see page 79): they are the opposite of most.
Less and least are used with singular (uncountable) nouns.
Fewer and fewest are used with plural nouns.

I've got less money than I thought.
of all my friends, jake does the least work.
There were fewer problems than we expected.
Ann was the person who made the fewest mistakes in the translation exam.

In modern English, many people use less with plurals (e.g. There were less problems than we expected). Some people feel this is incorrect.

1 Write less / the least / fewer / the fewest.
1 of all british cars, this one uses ____ petrol. it also needs ____ repairs.
2 ____ girls than boys do mathematics at university. this may be because girls get ____ encouragement to study maths at school.
3 as the years went by, they had ____ things to say, and ____ interest in talking to each other.
4 do you want more time and ____ money, or more money and ____ time?
5 liz is very clever, but she has got ____ self-confidence of anyone i know.
6 i've had ____ days off work of anybody in the office.

Less and least can also be used with adjectives and adverbs.

Ann's less shy than pat.
It was the least successful party we'd given.
He drives less carefully than i expected.

2 Put less / the least in each blank, with one of the words in the list (or another word, if you prefer). If you are in a group, compare answers.

shy shyly easily prosperous selfish fluently
pessimistic politely worried optimistic confident
confidently quickly dangerous religious

1 i feel ____ about the future than i did a year ago.
2 my mother is/was ____ person you can imagine.
3 i spoke english ____ a year ago than i do today.
4 i think this country is ____ than it was a year ago.
5 people from the north of my country speak ____ than people from the south.
6 my home town is ____ place i know.
other(s) and another

When other is used **before a plural noun**, it does **not** have -s.  
When other is used **without a noun**, it has -s **in** the plural. Compare:

Tell the other people. *(NOT ... the others people.)*
Tell the others.
Can you show me some other shoes?
Can you show me some others?

1 Write other or others.

1 I could see Karima and Nedjma at their desks – but where were the ____?
2 Long after all the ____ cars had left, Dawson’s BMW was still there.
3 I’ll phone all the ____ if you’ll phone Ted and Lucy, OK?
4 I can play the Sonata in C, but not any of the ____.
5 Do you know any ____ people who might have a reason to do this?
6 This doesn’t suit me. Have you got any ____ colours?
7 Some metals are magnetic and ____ aren’t.
8 The police arrested Jane, Fred and two ____.
9 I wish that girl would play more with ____ children.
10 Gerald Durrell wrote a book called 'My Family and ____ Animals'.

We can use another (one word) to mean ‘one more’. But with uncountables and plurals, we do not generally use other to mean ‘more’. Compare:

Have another potato. *(NOT ... another potato.)*
Have some more meat. *(NOT ... other meat.)*
We need more cups.

We can use another + few or another + a number with a plural noun.

Let’s wait another few minutes. *(= ... a few more minutes.)*
The job will take another ten days. *(= ... ten more days.)*

2 Write expressions with another or with more. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>more English</th>
<th>book</th>
<th>another book</th>
<th>eggs</th>
<th>more eggs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clothes</td>
<td>friends</td>
<td>child</td>
<td>three pages</td>
<td>hour</td>
<td>mile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>job possibilities</td>
<td>few days</td>
<td>hundred</td>
<td>pounds</td>
<td>money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>freedom</td>
<td>holidays</td>
<td>problem</td>
<td>twenty</td>
<td>miles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
enough, too and too much

**DO IT YOURSELF**

1 Look at the examples and choose the correct forms of the rules. Check your answer in the key.

*This isn’t hot enough.* (NOT ... enough hot.)

*Am I going fast enough?*

*There is never enough time.*

**Rules**

_Enough_ normally comes (before/after) an adjective or adverb.

_Enough_ normally comes (before/after) a noun.

2 **Put in words from the box together with enough.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>big</th>
<th>champagne</th>
<th>clever</th>
<th>confidence</th>
<th>good</th>
<th>hard</th>
<th>money</th>
<th>time</th>
<th>friends</th>
<th>old</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 In art the best is _good enough._  _Goethe_
2 I never had ____ when I was young; now I never have ____.
3 This town isn’t ____ for both of us.
4 Susie hasn’t got ____ to play with.
5 Bob’s not ____ to travel by himself.
6 There was ____ to give everybody a glass.
7 If you work ____, you don’t have to be very intelligent.
8 She was ____ to do anything she wanted, but she didn’t have ____ to try.

We use **too** before an adjective without a noun, or an adverb.

We use **too much/many** before a noun (with or without an adjective).

*He’s too old.* (NOT ... too much old.)  *She’s driving too fast.*

*My problem is: too much work and too many late nights.*

3 **Invent answers to the questions, using too, too much or too many.**

1 Why did Jack leave his car at the pub and take a taxi home? *(beer)*
   *He’d drunk too much beer.*
2 Why did they drive to the cinema in two cars? *(people)*
3 Why didn’t Joanna stop for lunch yesterday? *(busy)*
4 Why don’t we go to the Caribbean for our holiday? *(expensive)*
5 Why don’t you let the children cycle to school? *(traffic)*
6 What went wrong in your exam? *(slowly)*
7 Why did you have the phone installed in the other room? *(noise)*
8 Can you understand what he’s saying? *(quickly)*
4 Write descriptions for the pictures using not enough or too much/many.

Note the structures ... enough (for ...) to ... and too ... (for ...) to ...

She's old enough to vote. It's not warm enough for me to swim.
The box was too heavy to lift. He spoke too fast for us to follow.

5 Complete the sentences with too/enough and words from the list.

1 The food was too spicy for the children to eat.
2 Sally's not ___ the dog for a walk.
3 They were speaking ___ what they were saying.
4 Near some beaches the sea's not ___ in.
5 There's someone out there, but I can't see ___ if it's Emma.
6 The water was ___ anything.
7 I'll work on this tomorrow - I'm ___ it tonight.
8 I don't understand Arabic ___ to Egyptian radio.
9 He drove ___ him.

We can drop a noun after enough or too much/many if the meaning is clear.

I've eaten too much. ‘How many people live here?’ ‘Too many.’

We can use too much as an adverb: He talks too much.
We don't normally use too before adjective + noun.

She doesn't like men who are too tall. (NOT ... too tall men.)

Compare: We haven't got enough big nails. = We need more of them.
We haven't got big enough nails. = We need bigger ones.
of with determiners

The following determiners have **of** before articles (**the/a/an**), possessives (**my/your etc**), demonstratives (**this/that etc**) and pronouns (**it/us/you/them**): some, any, much, many, more, most, too much etc; enough, little, less, least; few, all, both, each, every one, none, and numbers one, two etc.

| some, any, | of | the, a/an | (adjective +) | some, any, | of | it, us, |
| much, more, etc | of | my, your, etc | NOUN | this, that, etc | of | you, them |

- some of the older people
- most of my friends
- a few of those grapes
- too many of his books
- none of it
- every one of us
- all of you
- enough of them

In other cases, we use these determiners without **of**.

| some, any, etc | (adjective) | NOUN |
| some strange ideas | a little water | most people | few changes |

Every and no are used instead of every one and none.

- every two minutes
- no time

1 Put in **of** or nothing (−).

Dear Phil,

Well, some **1** our luggage has arrived, so things could be worse. I’ve got the books and papers, but I’ve lost most **2** my clothes. I haven’t got any **3** socks at all, and I’ll have to buy some more **4** jeans, but at least I’ve got enough **5** underwear for the week. (They don’t sell it here. I don’t think they wear it.) I’m going to buy a few **6** those woollen shirts that you like, and one **7** the big coats that we looked at. They’ve got no **8** shoes in my size, unfortunately, and none **9** the jackets suit me. Anyway, I’m not alone. Every one **10** us has lost something – in fact, three **11** people have got no **12** luggage at all. Well, as they say, into each **13** life a little **14** rain must fall.

See you on the 17th.

Andy
Note the difference between **most people** (talking about people in general) and **most of the people** (talking about particular people).

*Most people* want to have children.

*Most of the people* I know live in the country.

2 **Put in most people or most of the people.**

1 ____ enjoy talking about themselves.
2 ____ who wanted to see the match were disappointed.
3 I know ____ in our street.
4 ____ like music.
5 I think fishing for sport is wrong, but ____ would disagree.
6 ____ on the train had no tickets.
7 He gets on with ____.
8 ____ at the party were friends of Jan's.

3 **Choose the correct versions of the cartoon captions.**

'Straighten your tie, Stephen. The world is already filled with (enough disorder / enough of disorder).'  
'Girls, girls! — (A little less noise / A little less of noise), please.'

**After all and both, we often drop of before determiners.**

*all (of) my friends*  
*both (of) his eyes*
personal pronouns: I and me etc

I, you, he, she, it, we, they are used as subjects before verbs.
Me, you, him, her, it, us, them are normally used in other cases.

Subjects before verbs: I like Mary. We can't go on like this.
Objects after verbs: Mary hates me. Tell us what to do.
After prepositions: Look at her. Why is she with him?
Everybody except me was late.
After be: Who's that? It's me. (NOT normally It is I.)

In short answers we can use me, him etc (informal) or I, he etc with a verb (more formal). The same thing happens after as and than.

Informal
I'm thirsty. 'Me too.' (NOT 'I-too!')
'Who's paying?' Her.
I've got the same number as him.
She gets paid more than me.

More formal
'I'm thirsty. 'I am too.' / 'So am I.'
'Who's paying?' She is. (NOT 'She-')
I've got the same number as he has.
She gets paid more than I do.

1 Put an appropriate pronoun in each blank (the sentences are informal).

1 Nobody except ____ knows where the key is kept, and I'm not telling you.
2 'Who bought these flowers?' 'It was _____. I thought you'd like them.'
3 'I haven't met Mark yet - is ____ here?' 'That's ____ over there.'
4 'I've had enough of this party.' ‘____ too.’
5 He's faster than _____. but I'm stronger than _____.

6 John's two years younger than Alice, but ____'s nearly as tall as ____.
7 'Who said that?' 'It was ____ - the man in glasses.'
8 You've got almost the same colour eyes as _____.
9 You may be older than _____, but I don't have to do what you say.
10 'Which is John's wife?' 'That must be ____ just getting out of the car.'

2 Change these to make them more formal or less formal. Example:
I live in the same street as him. → I live in the same street as he does.

1 Anne's got the same car as me.
2 They've been here longer than us.
3 I'm much taller than him.
4 'He's going to Mexico.' 'Me too.'
5 'Who said that?' 'Her.'

6 We are not as old as they are.
7 He had a bigger meal than I did.
8 I am not as quick as she is.
9 'We are from York.' 'So am I.'
10 'Who wants a drink?' 'I do.'
We generally use who as both subject and object. Whom is unusual, especially in questions, except in a formal style. (For whom in relative clauses, see page 270.)

Who do you want to see? (More natural than Whom do you want to see?)

We use it to refer to nothing, everything, something and anything. We also use it when identifying people.

Nothing is ever the way you expect it to be.
‘Who’s the woman in red?’ It’s Chris Lewis.’ (NOT ‘She’s Chris Lewis.’)

People generally use he and she for their cats, dogs, horses etc; some people use she for their cars, motorbikes and boats. Countries are usually it.

Don’t ride him on the main road – he’s a bit nervous.
‘How’s the car?’ ‘She’s running beautifully.’
Britain imports more than it exports.

3 Put in a suitable pronoun.

1 'What’s your cat’s name?' 'Annie. ____ understands everything we say.'
2 Thailand is quite unusual: ____ has never been ruled by another country.
3 'Do you know who the managing director is?' '____ Rose Berczuk.'
4 My bike’s been giving trouble, so I’m taking ____ into the garage.'
5 Nothing happened while I was away, did ____?
6 _____ did you have lunch with?
7 'Who’s that on the phone?' '____’s your father.'
8 Australia doesn’t accept as many immigrants as ____ used to.
9 I don’t know ____ she’s going out with now.
10 Everything always happens when you don’t want ____ to.

'I don’t know anybody who says “It is I.”'
reflexive pronouns (myself etc)

myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, oneself
ourselves, yourselves, themselves

We use reflexives when the object is the same person/thing as the subject.

*I cut myself shaving this morning. (NOT I cut me ...)*

*He tried to kill himself. (Different from He tried to kill him.)*

*The lights switch themselves on at night.*

Sometimes a reflexive pronoun refers to something that is not the subject.

*His letters are all about himself. I told her the truth about herself.*

1 Put in *myself, yourself etc or me, you etc.*

1 Mary bought a book and taught ____ to play the guitar.
2 John fell and hurt ____ yesterday.
3 The computer will turn ____ off if you don’t use it.
4 We looked at ____ in the mirror to check our makeup.
5 Don’t pay any attention to ____ – he always complains.
6 How much time do you give ____ to drive to work?
7 June can’t afford to buy ____ a new car, so her dad’s going to buy one for ____.
8 Who gave ____ those lovely flowers?
9 It hurt ____ when I realised Kim wasn’t going to phone me.

Reflexive pronouns can also be used to emphasise the subject or object – to say ‘that person/thing and nobody/nothing else’.

*It’s best if you do it yourself.*

*I’ll see the President himself if necessary.*

*The house itself is nice, but the garden’s small.*

2 Put in suitable reflexive pronouns.

1 No one is going to help us, so we’ll have to do it ____.
2 Veronica always cuts her hair ____ and it always looks great.
3 Robert ____ is quite friendly, but the rest of his family is very cold.
4 Did you know that the Morrises built their house ____?
5 I don’t trust anyone else to do my accounts; I always do them ____.
6 I got to see the gardens, but the palace ____ was closed.
Note the difference between *-selves* and *each other*.

They are looking at *themselves*. They are looking at *each other*.

3  **Each other or -selves?**

1. Hilary and June write to ____ every week.
2. Agnes and Pat have bought ____ a flat in Rome.
3. Do you and your wife tell ____ everything?
4. You will all need photos of ____ for your membership cards.
5. We've promised ____ to telephone if one of us is going to be late home.
6. We've decided to give ____ a really nice holiday this year.

4  **Put in myself etc, each other or me, you etc.**

1. We decided to keep most of the fruit for ____.
2. Before leaving Eric's office the robbers tied ____ up and pulled out all the phone wires.
3. Christine and I always take ____ to lunch on our birthdays.
4. Mum, please don't help me — I'd rather do it ____.
5. Did you ask Alice whether her brother had phoned ____ yet?
6. Don't just stand there shouting at ____ — do something!
7. I've just got up — can I phone you back when I've made ____ a cup of tea?
8. I've never met John, but we've been writing to ____ for over a year now.
9. The necklace ____ wouldn't normally be valuable, but it belonged to Queen Elizabeth I, so it will certainly bring a very high price.
10. When babies first start to feed ____ they usually make a big mess.
11. You can't be sure that she got the message unless you told her ____.
12. Your teenage children want to be independent — but they expect ____ to be ready to help ____ whenever they ask you to.

**Common expressions with reflexives:** behave yourself, enjoy yourself, help yourself, make yourself at home, by oneself ( = 'alone', 'without help').

**Verbs normally used without reflexives:** wash, shave, dress, feel, hurry.

*One another* can be used instead of *each other*.

*Own* replaces possessive reflexives: my own room (NOT my self's room).
you, one and they

One and you can mean 'people in general' (including the speaker and hearer). One is more formal than you.

One/You can't learn French in a month.
One dials / You dial 999 in an emergency.
One's/Your own problems always seem important.

To talk about people not including the speaker/hearer, we use they or a passive.

They speak English in this shop. / English is spoken in this shop.
(NOT One speaks English in this shop.)

They (informal) can mean 'the people around' or 'the authorities', 'the government'.

They don't like strangers around here. They say she's pregnant again.
They're always digging up the roads. They don't care about old people.

1 Write some sentences with you and one. Examples:

a card / this phone: One needs / You need a card to use this phone.
see her / appointment: One / You can't see her without an appointment.

1 get into the US / a passport 5 grow oranges / a warm climate
2 a ticket / a train 6 get a driving licence / seventeen
3 fly directly / Gdansk / Prague? 7 eat soup / a fork
4 good at maths / a physicist 8 see animals in the forest / get up early

2 Write you, your, they or them.

'1. I've put the price of stamps up again.'

'2. Oh, 2 haven't, have 3? 4 seem to do it more and more often. 5 can't buy more than a few stamps at a time, or else 6 have to buy extra 1p stamps to add to all 7 letters.'

'I know. And it's got so expensive! Nowadays 8 think twice before 9 write a letter. Of course 10 I've got special rates for businesses - it's only ordinary people that pay the extra.'

'It makes 11 wonder why we keep electing 12.'

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
We can also use *they, them* and *their(s)* to refer to a singular indefinite person – for example, after *somebody, anybody, nobody, who, a person.*

_Somebody phoned and said they wanted to see you._

_If anybody calls, tell them I’m out._

_Who’s forgotten their umbrella?_

3 They/them/their/theirs or another pronoun?

1 Someone’s left me a note, but ____ haven’t signed it.
2 The person who phoned wouldn’t give ____ name.
3 Nobody in the club has paid ____ annual subscription yet.
4 I can’t help anybody unless ____ bring all the right documents with ____.
5 If I find out who’s made this mess in the kitchen, I’ll kill ____.
6 Judy says somebody’s stolen ____ lecture notes.
7 Some idiot has taken my bag and left me ____!
8 If anybody can fill in this form, ____’re brighter than me.
9 Nobody will believe me unless I show ____ the picture.
10 That woman I was talking to had ____ car stolen yesterday.

---

_Diplomacy – the patriotic art of lying for one’s country._
_Ambrose Bierce_

_Knowing what you can not do is more important than knowing what you can do._
_Lucille Ball_

_Most people don’t use their eyes except to keep from running into things._
_Nancy Hale_

_I was [judged] in my absence and sentenced to death in my absence, so I said they could shoot me in my absence._
_Brendan Behan_

_Diplomacy – the patriotic art of lying for one’s country._

They cannot scare me with their empty spaces
Between stars – on stars where no human race is.
I have it in me so much nearer home
To scare myself with my own desert places.
_Robert Frost_

_You can get much further with a kind word and a gun than you can with a kind word alone._
_Al Capone_

_You cannot feed the hungry on statistics._
_David, Earl Lloyd George_

_Britain would be a great country if only you could roof it over._
_Anonymous_

_No one can make you feel inferior without your consent._
_Eleanor Roosevelt_

_They cannot scare me with their empty spaces_

_They cannot scare me with their empty spaces_

_Watermelon – it’s a good fruit. You eat, you drink, you wash your face._
_Enrico Caruso_

_If the child possesses the nationality or citizenship of another country, they may lose this when they get a British passport._
_Passport application form_

_I hate to spread rumours, but what else can one do with them?_
one(s)

We use one(s) to avoid repeating a countable noun.

‘What sort of cake would you like?’ ‘A big one with cream.’
I’d like some shoes like the ones in the window.
‘Could you lend me a pen?’ ‘Sorry, I haven’t got one.’

We don’t use one for an uncountable noun.
We haven’t got fresh cream. Would you like tinned?
(NOT ... tinned one.)

1 Put in words and expressions from the box with or without one(s).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>big grey leather</th>
<th>blue</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>long sunny</th>
<th>new</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>red woollen</td>
<td>sharp</td>
<td>solid</td>
<td>practical</td>
<td>tall unsweetened</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 ‘What colour cardigans would you like to see?’ ‘Blue ones, please.’
2 I’ve lost my jacket. It’s a ____.
3 ‘What kind of juice is that?’ ‘____.’
4 ‘Which glasses do I use?’ ‘The ____.’
5 She doesn’t sell used cars, only ____.
6 ‘What sort of holiday are you having this year?’ ‘A ____.’
7 This isn’t That food, it’s ____.
8 I don’t want pretty shoes, but ____.
9 Hand me a knife, will you – a ____.
10 There’s my suitcase, the ____!

If there is no adjective: we do not use a with one.

‘What sort of cake would you like?’ ‘One with cream.’ (NOT ‘A one ... ‘)

We use some/any without ones. We use mine etc instead of my one etc.
‘Could you lend me some stamps?’ ‘I haven’t got any.’
(NOT ‘... any ones.’)
‘Which car shall we take?’ ‘Mine.’ (NOT ‘My one.’)

2 Put in one, some, any or mine/yours/etc.

1 ‘What sort of job would you like to do?’ ‘____ where I travel a lot.’
2 I haven’t got a train timetable, but ask Adrian – he may have ____.
3 ‘Is that your car or Anna’s?’ ‘____ – Anna hasn’t got a car.’
4 There aren’t any matches here, but there may be ____ in the kitchen.
5 I need a watch – ____ with an alarm.
6 ‘Where are the forks?’ ‘Oh, no! We didn’t bring ____!’
7 Barry has put his name on this book, but Liz says it’s ____.
8 If you haven’t got enough plates, I’ll be happy to bring ____.

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
pronouns and possessives: revision

1 Choose the best words to complete the cartoon captions.

'It's just natural, that's all! _____ love _____ because you're _____, like the car.'
(we/you/they/ours/yours)

'_____ sold _____ what to _____?'
(you/she/my/his/what/who)

'Could _____ tell _____ if _____ glasses are ready yet?'
(you/he/me/us/myself/my/your)

'Have _____ seen a lady without _____?'
(I/you/her/me/myself)

'Yes, of course it's important enough to disturb _____.' (me/him/himself)

'Have _____ any "Do It _____" books?'
(you/he/herself/themselves)
### Countable and Uncountable Nouns

**Countable** nouns have **plurals**, and **can** be used with *a/an*.

- a chair – chairs  
- a house – houses  
- an idea – ideas

**Uncountable** nouns have **no plurals**, and **cannot** normally be used with *a/an*. Examples: air, water, sand, intelligence, English, weather.

- *She speaks good English.* (NOT ... a good English.)
- *It’s terrible weather.* (NOT ... a terrible weather.)

1. **Can you divide these into uncountable and countable?**

   book, cup, dust, flour, flower, happiness, knowledge, love, milk, meat, mountain, music, oil, piano, rain, river, snow, song, table, wall

2. **Some nouns can be used both uncountably and countably.**

   - Wood is made from paper.
   - Did you remember to buy coffee?
   - My mother never drinks wine.
   - I’m going out to buy a paper.
   - I’ll have a (cup of) coffee, please.
   - Spain produces some wonderful wines. (= kinds of wine)

2. **Uncountable, singular countable (with a/an) or plural?**

   **Complete the sentences.**

   1. Could you pass me ____? *(glass)*
   2. This table is made of ____.* *(glass)*
   3. I need a piece of ____.* *(wood)*
   4. The house was near ____.* *(wood)*
   5. She looked at him with ____.* *(pity)*
   6. It’s ____ Anne isn’t here.* *(pity)*
   7. ____ goes so quickly.* *(time)*
   8. She phoned six ____ yesterday.* *(time)*
   9. Three ____.* *(beer)*
   10. ____ makes you fat.* *(beer)*
   11. He hasn’t got much ____.* *(experience)*
   12. It was ____ I won’t forget.* *(experience)*
   13. There’s ____ in the garden.* *(chicken)*
   14. Do you want ____ or beef?* *(chicken)*

With a few uncountable nouns referring to emotional and mental activity, we use *a/an* when there is an adjective or other description.

- an excellent knowledge of German  
- a good education  
- a love of music

---

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
uncountable nouns: special cases

Sometimes uncountable and countable nouns have similar meanings.

1 Test yourself. Can you put these words in pairs (one uncountable, one countable) expressing similar ideas? Example:

- furniture - table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accommodation</th>
<th>advertisement</th>
<th>baggage</th>
<th>banknote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bread</td>
<td>cars</td>
<td>fact</td>
<td>flat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job</td>
<td>journey</td>
<td>loaf</td>
<td>money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furniture</td>
<td>information</td>
<td>publicity</td>
<td>suitcase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table</td>
<td>job</td>
<td>travel</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 These nouns are normally uncountable. Most can be made countable by adding piece (e.g. a piece of advice). Do you know which three can be made countable by adding a flash of, a stroke of and a clap of?

- advice
- knowledge
- lightning
- luck
- news
- research
- rubbish
- spaghetti
- thunder

3 Choose the correct form of the caption for each cartoon.

'An advice. / A word of advice. / Some advices, Arthur: no-one ever solved his problems by running away.'

'Doesn’t it make you sick? Our baggage has / baggages have been sent to Jupiter.'
plurals of nouns: spelling

1 Look at the examples and answer the questions. Check your answers in the key.

babies books boys buses buzzes cars chairs
cities dishes echoes Eskimos foxes gases heroes
holidays kilos ladies lorries matches monkeys
photos pianos potatoes quizzes radios
shops tables taxes times tomatoes watches
ways wishes zoos

1 What is the most common way of making the plurals of nouns?
2 How do we make the plurals of words ending in consonant + -y?
3 How do we make the plurals of words ending in vowel + -y?
4 After which letters and groups of letters do we add -es to the singular?
5 Four common words ending in -o have plurals in -es. Can you close your eyes and remember which they are?

2 Write the plurals of these nouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>address</th>
<th>box</th>
<th>brush</th>
<th>computer</th>
<th>desk</th>
<th>face</th>
<th>guy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>list</td>
<td>loss</td>
<td>mess</td>
<td>patch</td>
<td>peach</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>poppy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reply</td>
<td>toy</td>
<td>tree</td>
<td>video</td>
<td>witch</td>
<td>worry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Write a sentence using at least two plurals from 1 above.
Example:

Foxes don’t like tomatoes.

If you can work with another student, give him/her two plurals to make a sentence with.

One potato, two potatoes

IN JUNE 1992, US Vice-President Dan Quayle visited a school class in New Jersey while the children were having a spelling competition. When 12-year-old William Figueroa wrote the word potato correctly on the blackboard, Quayle told him he should add an e. William became a schoolchildren’s national hero (without an e) and appeared on television; the Vice-President became an international laughing-stock as echoes (with an e) of his mistake went round the world.
plurals of nouns: special cases

Here are seven groups of nouns. Look in the box and find two more nouns to add to each group.

- aircraft  crisis  dozen  mathematics  means  mouse
- news  police  scissors  sheep  shelf  thousand
- tooth  wolf

1. Countable Nouns with Singular (and plural) in -s
   - series  crossroads  analysis – analyses

2. Other Nouns with Singular and Plural the Same
   - trout  deer  fish  salmon

3. Nouns that have a plural without -s after a number
   - hundred (e.g. two hundred)  million

4. Nouns with Singular in -fe, Plural in -ves
   - calf  calves  half  knife  leaf  life  loaf  self
   - thief  wife

5. Other Nouns with Irregular Plurals
   - child  children  foot  feet  fungus  fungi  goose  geese
   - man  men  medium  media  ox  oxen  penny  pence
   - phenomenon  phenomena  woman  women

6. Uncountable Singular Nouns ending in -s (normally no plural)
   - athletics  billiards  economics  gymnastics  measles
   - physics  politics

7. Plural Nouns with No Singular
   - arms  belongings  cattle  clothes  congratulations
   - contents  earnings  goods  outskirts  people
   - remains  surroundings  thanks  troops  trousers
mixed singular and plural

Singular nouns for groups of people often have plural verbs and pronouns in British English, especially when we are talking about personal kinds of action. Compare:

My family are very angry with me: they think I should go to university.
The average family has 3.5 members: it is much smaller than in 1900.

The team are going to lose again. They're useless.
A cricket team is made up of eleven players, including its captain.

1 Choose the best combination for each blank.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>class</th>
<th>club</th>
<th>orchestra</th>
<th>school</th>
<th>staff</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>club</td>
<td>orchestra</td>
<td>school</td>
<td>staff</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1a In England, a state _____ to give time to religious education.
1b My daughter's _____ decided to hold their sports day next Saturday.
2a The ____ given £5,000 to charity this year.
2b The ____ fifty per cent more members than a year ago.
3a The ____ not like the new manager.
3b The ____ not need to be increased.
4a Jane's ____ in Room 6.
4b Our ____ planning a party.
5a The ____ just tuning up – let's hurry in.
5b An ____ composed of string, wind, and percussion instruments.

2 Choose the correct form of the cartoon caption.

'It's the office. Shall I tell it/them/him you're sick?'
The following singular expressions also usually have plural verbs:

- A number of...
- The majority of...
- A couple of...
- A group of...
- A lot of + plural noun/pronoun
- The rest of + plural noun/pronoun.

There are a couple of children outside.
A lot of them were late.
The rest of the members are ill.

Some plural expressions have singular verbs:

- Ten pounds is too much to pay.
- Three weeks wasn’t enough holiday.
- The United States is smaller than Canada.
- Fish and chips costs £3.
- More than one person disagrees.

We also use a singular verb after one of + plural noun.

One of your children has lost a shoe.

3 Choose the right verb.

1. A group of teenagers in the town (has/have) organised a scheme to help old people with their shopping.
2. A number of people (has/have) complained about the noise.
3. Do you think three pounds (is/are) a big enough tip?
4. Hamburger and chips (is/are) not a very healthy lunch.
5. In the latest rail union vote, the majority (has/have) voted to go on strike; the rest of the members (is/are) expected to support the strike fairly solidly.
6. Two kilos (is/are) pretty small for a newborn baby.
7. Our teenage son thinks there (is/are) a number of good reasons for staying up late and having a good time.
8. More than one house in our street (has/have) been broken into recently.
9. A couple of dangerous-looking men (is/are) waiting for you outside.
10. One of my friends (has/have) just won two free plane tickets to New York.
11. Six weeks (is/are) a long time to wait for news of your family.
12. The majority of the children’s parents (is/are) unemployed.
13. A lot of shops (is/are) opening on Sundays now.
14. The Philippines (has/have) signed the new human rights agreement.
15. The police think that more than one person (was/were) in the stolen car.
16. Tom and Rosie were late, but the rest of us (was/were) on time.
17. (Is/Are) bacon and eggs what you usually eat for breakfast?
18. We’ve just learnt that a couple of our club members (has/have) been chosen for the national team.
possessive 's

SINGULAR NOUN(s) + 's:  my mother's car, Sarah and Henry's house
PLURAL NOUN + 's:  my parents' home
IRREGULAR plural + 's:  the children's names

1 Make possessive forms from the items in List 1 to combine with items from List 2. Make fifteen combinations. Examples:
your sister's address  my teachers' clothes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LIST 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>your sister  Jonathan  Ann and Pat  those women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my teachers  Katie  our dog  Simon and Jill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most people  doctors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LIST 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>address  car/cars  ideas  health  legs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father/fathers  nose/noses  clothes  education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fear of heights</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Possessives usually replace articles before nouns. We can say the car or Sue's car, but not Sue's the car or the Sue's car.
But a possessive word can have its own article: the boss's car.
Note also: that car of Sue's; a friend of Joe's (like a friend of mine—see page 28).

2 Right or wrong? Put ✓ for correct sentences; rewrite incorrect ones.

1 Is this the teacher's pen?
2 Are you the Al's daughter?
3 Do you know Lesley's last name?
4 Here's the Barry's address.
5 Here's my parents' address.
6 It was the school's responsibility.
7 What's the Wilsons' number?
8 That's an old habit of Marion's.
9 It's a crazy idea of Alice.
10 Where is that brother of Carol?

Note: We spent the evening at Anne's. ( = ... at Anne's house.)
She's at the hairdresser's.  I bought it at Harrod's.
noun + noun

We can put nouns together in three ways:

1 noun + noun: a shoe shop; a war film
2 preposition structure: the top of the hill
3 possessive’s structure: my boss’s ear; Ann’s idea

Usually, an idea can be expressed in only one of these ways, and it is often difficult to know which is correct. The rules on pages 63–67 will help, but there are exceptions – this is a very difficult point of grammar.

We often put one noun in front of another. The first noun is rather like an adjective, and is usually singular, even if the meaning is plural.

- a horse race (a kind of race)
- a race horse (a kind of horse)
- a shoe shop (NOT a shoes shop)
- a Lancashire mum
- a ten-mile walk (NOT a ten-miles walk)

Articles belonging to the first noun are dropped in this structure. Officers in the army = army officers, NOT the army officers.

1 Match the expressions on the left with their meanings on the right.

1 chocolate milk a book describing cases
2 milk chocolate b chocolate made with milk
3 book case c leather for making shoes
4 case book d drawing done in ink
5 leather shoe e garden with flowers in
6 shoe leather f ink used for drawing
7 flower garden g milk flavoured with chocolate
8 garden flower h piece of furniture for books
9 ink drawing i flower that grows in gardens
10 drawing ink j shoe made of leather

2 What do you call these?

1 a shop that sells music 5 the clock in the station
2 a man from Birmingham 6 a rocket that goes into space
3 a frame for a picture 7 a factory that makes biscuits
4 tea made from mint 8 powder made from soap

3 Put these words into pairs to make noun + noun expressions. Change plural to singular if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>antique</th>
<th>bicycle</th>
<th>bus</th>
<th>cowboy</th>
<th>door</th>
<th>film</th>
<th>grapes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>juice</td>
<td>kitchen</td>
<td>map</td>
<td>newspapers</td>
<td>publisher</td>
<td>race</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roads</td>
<td>shop</td>
<td>station</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
noun + noun or preposition structure

We use the noun + noun structure for well-known everyday combinations. To talk about things that do not go together so often, we usually prefer a structure with a preposition. Compare:

- a war film  a film about a dog (NOT a dog film)
- a history book  a book about violins (NOT a violin book)
- a postman  a man from the bank (NOT a bank man)
- road signs  signs of anger (NOT anger signs)
- a corner table  the girl in the corner (NOT the corner girl)

1 Eight of these ideas can naturally be expressed by ‘noun + noun’. Which are they? Rewrite them.

1 a cake made of chocolate  7 the door to the kitchen
2 a child in the garden  8 a bottle designed for wine
3 a cupboard in the kitchen  9 a timetable of trains
4 a box for matches  10 a book about the moon
5 paste for cleaning teeth  11 chairs for the garden
6 discussions about furniture  12 a man with a knife

2 Look at the labels. Can you think of some more names of food that use the noun + noun structure?

Chic en
soup
COR N F LAK E S
Blackcurrant
Juice Drink

Newspaper headlines often save space by using the noun + noun structure instead of the preposition structure. Strings of three or four nouns are common.

Channel ferry safety drill leaves 18 injured

Decision day in rail dispute

Football club burglars cut home phones
noun + noun and possessive 's

We use the noun + noun structure to name common kinds of thing. The first noun is often like an object (of a verb or preposition).

* a shoe shop = a shop that sells shoes
* a war film = a film about war

We use the possessive 's structure most often to talk about something that belongs to a particular person, group, organisation, country or animal. The first noun is often like a subject (usually of the verb have).

* my boss's car: my boss has a car
* Ann's idea: Ann had an idea

1 Choose the correct noun group.

1 a bus's station or a bus station
2 a toys' shop or a toy shop
3 the teacher's office or the teacher office
4 computer's disks or computer disks
5 my mother's chair or my mother chair
6 car's papers or car papers
7 Tom's plan or the Tom plan
8 a telephone's box or a telephone box
9 the dog's toy or the dog toy
10 a horse's race or a horse race
11 vegetables' soup or vegetable soup
12 China's history or the China history
13 a cowboys' film or a cowboy film
14 street's lamps or street lamps
15 the firm's office or the firm office
16 a bath's towel or a bath towel
17 that cat's tail or that cat tail
18 a teacher trainer or a teachers' trainer
19 the paper's editor or the paper editor
20 a glass's factory or a glass factory

2 Complete the cartoon caption.

'I laid 67,000 eggs last year, and if I don't receive a _____ there'll be trouble.'

Mother Day card  Mother Day's card
Mother's Day card  Mother's Day's card
possessive 's or the of structure

We use the possessive 's structure especially when the first noun is the name of a person, group of people, organisation, country or animal. In other cases we generally prefer a structure with of. Compare:

- my father's name
- the firm's structure
- America's influence
- the dog's leg
- the name of the book
- the structure of plastic
- the influence of alcohol
- the leg of the table

We also use the possessive 's structure with common 'time when' expressions, and in expressions of measurement of time.

- today's paper
- tomorrow's weather
- yesterday's news
- a month's holiday
- three hours' delay

△ 1 Rewrite these using 's, ' or of the. Examples:

- the club + its monthly meeting → the club's monthly meeting
- his parents + their car → his parents' car
- the world + its end → the end of the world

- Angela + her leg
- the trees + their highest branches
- my suitcase + its lock
- your dog + its leg
- the bank + its branch in Paris
- your office + its floor
- the table + its leg
- my family + its name
- the town + its atmosphere
- our company + its best sales manager
- the police force + its main problem
- next week + its timetable
- last night + its party
- today + its news

△ 2 Make two noun groups from each set of words. Example:

- file: your secretary, legal documents:
  your secretary’s file, the file of legal documents

1. story: Helen, the French Revolution
2. bed: the stream, the patient
3. policy: full employment, the company
4. style: my favourite author, the 1930s
5. place: language education, women
6. ideas: modern physics, my son
7. rules: the club, football
8. view: the committee, the lake
9. head: the cat, the queue
10. arm: the chair, John

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
3 Put together the expressions from the left-hand box, and three of the expressions from the right-hand box, to make captions for the cartoons.

| Fear? I have here He doesn’t know Let’s go. I’ve got Right. Mr Wilson. parked outside. | your tests’ results. the results of your tests. the word’s meaning. the meaning of the word. somebody else’s car the car of somebody else |
adjectives and adverbs

ADJECTIVES: kind, shy, cold, angry, wonderful, bad, unusual, mad
ADVERBS: kindly, shyly, coldly, angrily, wonderfully, badly, unusually, madly

We use adjectives to say how something is, seems, becomes, looks, feels, sounds, tastes or smells.

She is kind. She seems/appears shy. It’s getting cold. He felt angry. (NOT He felt angrily.) That smells wonderful.

We use adverbs with other verbs to say how something happens or is done.

She spoke kindly but shyly. (NOT She spoke kind...)
He answered me coldly. He closed the door angrily.

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box. More than one answer may be correct.

beautiful/beautifully calm/calmly cheap/cheaply clear/clearly slow/slowly soft/softly terrible/terribly unhappy/unhappily

1 I suppose I should be nervous, but I’ve never felt so _____ in my life.
2 I suppose we’ll never see each other again, she said _____.
3 I haven’t got much money: if I travel this year, I’ll have to do it _____.
4 The house is small and rather simple, but Anne has decorated it _____.
5 This soup tastes _____.
6 He spoke very _____, but she heard every word like a shout.
7 Good computers are getting quite _____ now.
8 The train was very _____; perhaps they were working on the line.
9 She sat there _____ lying about everything she had done.
10 This is a _____ house. I enjoy looking at it every time I walk past.
11 Her hair is so lovely and _____—like a baby’s hair.
12 This handwriting isn’t very _____: can you read it any better than me?
13 The team played _____ last Saturday.
14 Time seemed to go so _____: When would he arrive?
15 He looks really _____: I wonder what’s wrong.
16 Mary doesn’t speak very _____: I often have trouble understanding her.

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298-302.
We also use adverbs before adjectives, past participles, other adverbs and prepositional expressions.

It's *terribly* cold. (Not ... *terrible* cold.)  
This is very *badly* cooked.

You're driving unusually *fast*.  
He was *madly* in *love* with her.

2  Choose the right word.

1  Angela is *amazing/amazingly* good with animals.
2  As soon as I saw him I was *sure/surely* he had been drinking.
3  Do you think that's a *real/really* diamond in her ring?
4  He was wearing a *true/truly* astonishing tie.
5  I felt her arm *gentle/gently* to see if any bones were broken.
6  I read an *amazing/amazingly* thing in the newspaper this morning.
7  John was *wonderful/wonderfully* kind to me when I came to this country.
8  Keith seemed *gentle/gently*, but there was something cruel underneath.
9  One leg of the chair was *slight/slightly* damaged.
10  Sarah drives a *real/really* beautifully restored 1914 sports car.
11  She looked at me *kind/kindly*, but didn't say anything.
12  The door was *bad/badly* painted.
13  The food was *wonderful/wonderfully*, but the service was *awful/awfully*.
14  The room is *clever/cleverly* organised so three of us can work there.
15  The job was *surprising/surprisingly* easy.
16  He's acted *unbelievable/unbelievably* stupidly in the past year.

Some verbs are used with both adjectives and adverbs, with different meanings.

*You look angry.* (= You *seem* angry.)

*He looked angrily at the manager.* (= He *turned his eyes* ...)

*His plan appeared impossible.*

*She suddenly appeared in the window.*

If a thing is worth doing, it is worth doing well.

*Traditional*

If a thing is worth doing, it is worth doing badly.

*G K Chesterton*

Speak softly and carry a big stick.

*President Theodore Roosevelt*

Power tends to corrupt and absolute power corrupts absolutely.

*Lord Acton*

[You are] incredibly, inordinately, devastatingly, immortally, calamitously, hearteningly, adorably beautiful.

*The poet Rupert Brooke to the actress Cathleen Nesbitt*
confusing **adjectives** and **adverbs**

1. Are the words in the box adjectives, adverbs or both? Look at the sentences and decide.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjectives</th>
<th>adverbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>daily/weekly/monthly/yearly</td>
<td>cowardly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>friendly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
<td>likely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>lively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>likely</td>
<td>early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loud</td>
<td>lonely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lovely</td>
<td>ugly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silly</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. It's getting **late**.
2. *The Times* is a **daily** paper.
3. She's a **lovely, friendly, lively** person. But she seems **lonely**.
4. It doesn't seem **likely** that your children will be **ugly**.
5. The postman's **early**.
6. She speaks English very **well**.
7. We have **monthly** meetings.
8. Don't talk so **loud**.
9. If you've got a **fast** car, why don't you drive **fast**?
10. If you want me to work **hard**, you'll have to pay me more.
11. Milk is delivered **daily**.
12. The train arrived **late**.
13. I can't stand **loud** noises.
14. Don't be so **silly**.
15. She's becoming **hard** to live with.
16. I'm very **well**, thanks.
17. That was a **cowardly** thing to do.
18. Curare is a **deadly** poison.
19. I get paid **monthly**.
20. Try to come home **early**.

2. Which of the words from Exercise 1 could go in each blank?

1. a **cowardly/friendly/lovely/silly** expression
2. a ___ magazine
3. ___ music
4. She sings too ___.
5. He visits us ___.
6. a ___ thing to say
7. ___ faces
8. very ___ to rain
9. ___ flowers
10. a ___ house
11. We left ___.
12. trying ___
13. a ___ illness
14. ___ work
15. a ___ life
16. ___ phone calls

---

**Say it loud, I'm black and proud.**
*Title of song by James Brown*

**Once the toothpaste is out of the tube, it is awfully hard to get it back in.**
*H R Haldeman*

**People tell me there are a lot of guys like me, which doesn't explain why I'm lonely.**
*Mort Sahl*

**This universe is not hostile, nor is it friendly. It is simply indifferent.**
*J H Holmes*

**Give us this day our daily bread.**
*The Lord's Prayer*

**It is better to be beautiful than to be good. But ... it is better to be good than to be ugly.**
*Oscar Wilde*
and with adjectives

When adjectives come after a verb, we usually put and before the last. Before a noun, and is less common.

He was tall, dark and handsome.  I'm cold, tired and hungry.
a tall, dark, handsome cowboy  a tired (and) hungry child

But when adjectives (or other descriptive words) refer to different parts of a following noun, we use and.

a yellow and black dress  a concrete and glass building

1 Put in and if necessary.

1 The brick was rough/pink.  The brick was rough and pink.
2 hot/breezy weather
3 untidy/red hair
4 The man was young/bearded.
5 The sea was cold/rough.
6 The church was old/ugly.
7 a quiet/tense woman
8 yellow/grey sand
9 The badges were red/blue.
10 a narrow/brown room

When you're wearing Springers ... leave your feet feeling cool and relaxed.

In the softest, lightest sandals the world is somehow brighter.
adjectives without nouns

We can use the + adjective (without a noun) to talk about some social groups.

- the young  the old  the rich  the poor  the sick
- the disabled  the handicapped  the blind  the deaf
- the mentally ill  the homeless  the unemployed  the dead

These expressions are plural: the blind means ‘blind people’. Compare:

I’m collecting money for the blind.
Do you know the blind person next door? (NOT ... the-blind-next-door?)
I met a blind man on the train. (NOT ... a-blind-...)

We can’t use all adjectives in this way: we don’t normally talk about the foreign or the greedy, for example.

1. Complete the sentences with expressions from the box.

   the blind (twice)  the living (twice)  the poor (twice)
   the dead  the old  the rich (twice)  the young (twice)

1. In the country of _____ the one-eyed man is king.  Anonymous
2. Love, like youth, is wasted on ____.  Sammy Cahn
3. When the rich make war on each other, it’s ____ who die.  Jean-Paul Sartre
4. It’s all that ____ can do for ____ to shock them and keep them up to date.  George Bernard Shaw
5. ‘Let me tell you about _____. They are different from you and me.’  ‘Yes, they have more money.’  F Scott Fitzgerald and Ernest Hemingway
6. We owe respect to the dead; to ____ we owe only truth.  Voltaire
7. ____ have more children, but ____ have more relatives.  Anonymous
8. Pray for ____ and fight like hell for ____.  Mother Jones
9. Does it matter: – losing your sight?
   There’s such splendid work for ____;
   And people will always be kind,
   As you sit on the terrace remembering
   And turning your face to the light.  Siegfried Sassoon

The structure is also used with the following nationality words: Dutch, English, French, Irish, Scottish, Spanish, Welsh.

The Welsh have a very old literary tradition.

BUT: I like the Welshman who works in the garage.
(NOT ... the-Welsh...)
adjectives: order before nouns

This is a complicated point of grammar. The following rules have exceptions.

Words for colour, origin/place, material and purpose go in that order. Other adjectives come before these.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OTHER</th>
<th>COLOUR</th>
<th>ORIGIN/PLACE</th>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>PURPOSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>leather</td>
<td>riding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a funny</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>German</td>
<td></td>
<td>boots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>beer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mug</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Opinions often come before descriptions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OPINION</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>funny</td>
<td>buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a terrible</td>
<td>little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>clothes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Here are descriptions from a newspaper, a journal, a biography and a novel. Rewrite each description in the right order. Example:

books: old. terrible terrible old books (opinion + description)

1 city: Belgian. beautiful. little
2 club: jazz, local
3 dinner: excellent, cold
4 buildings: modern, industrial
5 dress: evening, red, silk
6 eyes: narrow. colourless
7 frame: flat, gold
8 furniture: old, lovely

9 ink: drawing. Swiss
10 jacket: short, leather
11 squares: brick, little
12 boots: French, ski
13 tie: blue, woollen
14 trousers: cotton, grey
15 trunks: black, nylon, swimming

---

Good-looking, slim, kind, cheerful, mature, non-smokingWelshman, 45, interested in everything except opera and politics, seeks attractive, warm, sensitive, intelligent woman in 30s for friendship, love, who knows? Please write to Box No.781.

WOOD STREET
A pretty detached town Cottage with dining hall, living room, fitted kitchen and conservatory. Two bedrooms and bathroom.
Gas heating, attractive rear garden.
£120,000

‘Single green male. 214 ...’

First and last usually come before numbers:
the first three weeks (NOT the three first weeks)
my last two holidays
Note the word order in something nice; nothing new.
word order: adverbs with the verb

Adverbs that go with the verb include words expressing frequency (e.g. always, often, usually, never) and certainty (e.g. definitely, probably). Note the exact position:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFTER AM/ARE/IS/WAS/WERE</th>
<th>AFTER AUXILIARY VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You are usually right.</td>
<td>She has probably forgotten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It was certainly cold.</td>
<td>I can never wake up in time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEFORE OTHER VERBS</th>
<th>NOT BETWEEN VERB AND OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He always forgot my birthday.</td>
<td>He forgot always my birthday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I often get headaches.</td>
<td>I get often headaches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All, both and each can also go with the verb.
You’re all wrong.
They are both studying maths.
We each gave a five-minute talk.

1 Make ten sentences from the box. Example:
My father is often bad-tempered.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am</th>
<th>is</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>always usually often</td>
<td>happy late tired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sometimes not often</td>
<td>friendly bad-tempered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occasionally never</td>
<td>depressed worried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in love in trouble etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Make ten sentences beginning I have often/never ...
Examples:
I have often been to America. I have never seen an opera.

3 Say how often you do some of the following things. Examples:
I sometimes stay in bed late. I don’t often go to the doctor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stay in bed late</th>
<th>have bad dreams</th>
<th>eat chocolate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get headaches</td>
<td>play tennis</td>
<td>read poetry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go to concerts</td>
<td>play the piano</td>
<td>forget people’s names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go to the cinema</td>
<td>cook</td>
<td>go to the doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go skiing</td>
<td>go swimming</td>
<td>get depressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>feel happy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 If you can work with another student:
- ask him/her how often he/she does the things in Exercise 3
- report his/her answer.

Examples:
1. 'How often do you go to concerts?' 'Never.'
2. Maria never goes to concerts.

5 These sentences are all taken from real recorded conversations.
Can you put the adverbs in the right places?
1 You are here when something happens. (usually)
2 Her mum cooks a meal in the evening. (always)
3 We book that April holiday in January. (usually)
4 They think that we have got bread. (probably)
5 You should look where you're going. (always)
6 She is going to stay overnight. (probably)
7 Chocolate cakes are the best. (definitely)
8 I will be able to get it cheaper. (probably)
9 I have had an illness in my life. (never)
10 We saw sweets in those days. (never)
11 I remember buying some. (definitely)
12 Do you read upside down? (usually)
13 I can manage to get there. (usually)
14 She has done that before. (never)
15 Something is burning. (definitely)
16 She has been nervous. (always)
17 I feel cold in your house. (never)
18 They were against me. (always)
19 We are going to win. (definitely)
20 February is the worst. (usually)
21 It is very difficult. (sometimes)
22 I buy them in boxes. (always)
23 I have tried to find it. (often)
24 They are fighting. (always)
25 She saw this ghost. (often)
26 You are right. (probably)

'You never tell me you hate me any more.'

If there is more than one auxiliary verb, adverbs of frequency and certainty usually go after the first auxiliary.

The roof has never been repaired.
I will definitely be seeing him tonight.

Adverbs go before or after not, depending on the meaning. Compare:

She's not often late. It's definitely not raining.
focusing adverbs: even and only

Even and only often go with the verb when they focus on words later in the sentence.

He's rude to everybody. He's **even** rude to me.

(Not Even, he's rude to me.)

He **even** plays tennis **in the rain**.

I **only** liked the **first part of the concert**.

They've **only** lived here **for a few weeks**.

---

1 Put in even or only.

1 She talks to her brother. *She only talks to her brother.*
2 I am doing this because I love you.
3 She gets up at six on Sundays.
4 He wears a suit on holiday.
5 She ate a piece of dry toast.
6 I can play very easy music.
7 He can't write his own name.
8 They make you pay for a carrier bag.
9 I was thinking of you.
10 You can ski there in summer.

---

Even and only can also go just before the words that they emphasise.

He plays tennis **even in the rain**.
He eats anything—**even raw potatoes**.
Even a child could understand it.
They've lived here **only a few weeks**.
**Only you** could do a thing like that.

Even does not normally go between the verb and the object.  
He can **even speak Chinese**. (Not He can **speak even Chinese**.)

---

2 Join the beginnings and ends, and put in even or only.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I work every day my mother</td>
<td>really understands me. rats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They do everything together</td>
<td>It's me! knew that he was ill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hello! the cat</td>
<td>thinks you're stupid. hated him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She likes all animals the clock</td>
<td>but for a few minutes. broke the silence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his wife his children</td>
<td>they brush their teeth together. on Sundays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can borrow it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
adverbs at the end of a sentence

At the end of a sentence we often put words and expressions which say how, where and when. They most often go in that order.

She sang very well at the concert last night.
He works in the garage on Tuesdays.
(NOT...on Tuesdays in the garage.)
He's working there now.
The children were playing quietly in the garden.
Let's go to bed early. (NOT...early-to-bed.)

We do not normally put adverbs between a verb and its object.
You speak English very well. (NOT...You speak very well English.)
Can you repair my watch now?
(NOT...Can you repair now my watch?)

1 Put the words in brackets into the sentences (not before the verb).

1 I work at night. (best)
2 I paid at once. (the bill)
3 He always moves very slowly. (in the morning)
4 She speaks Japanese. (fluently)
5 I think we'd better open the parcel. (now)
6 She was crying in her room. (quietly)
7 We talked about it briefly. (at lunchtime)
8 I'm going to break the eggs into the bowl. (carefully)
9 Ann works at the village shop. (on Saturdays)
10 I can't explain my feelings. (clearly)
11 The team played yesterday. (brilliantly)
12 I always worked at school. (very hard)
13 She practises the piano here. (every evening)
14 I don't think she plays tennis. (very well)
15 He read every word. (slowly)
16 Put the butter in the fridge. (at once)

After verbs of movement, the order can be different: we most often put expressions of place first.

He went upstairs quietly.
still, yet and already

We use still to talk about situations continuing. We use yet to ask if something expected has happened, or to say that it hasn’t. Still usually goes with the verb; yet usually goes at the end of the sentence.

She’s still asleep. Do you still love me? I still don’t understand.
Has the postman come yet? Alice hasn’t phoned yet.

We use already to say that something has happened earlier than expected, or earlier than somebody thought. Already usually goes with the verb.

‘When’s your mother coming?’ ‘She’s already here.’
‘You must go to Scotland.’ ‘We’ve already been.’
She’s only been here a week and she already knows all the neighbours.

1 Put in still, yet or already.

1 Are you in the same job?
2 He’s seventeen, but he’s married.
3 Has Susan arrived?
4 I’ve finished!
5 9 a.m., and it’s dark!
6 4 p.m., and it’s dark!
7 Have you had breakfast?
8 Look – it’s raining.
9 Our old car runs OK.
10 Is the rice cooked?
11 She’s gone to bed.
12 Is she in that little flat?
13 Why are you in bed?
14 I’m bored with my new job.
15 It’s not time to stop.
16 Have you written that letter?

‘It’s the waiter at the restaurant where we ate tonight. He wants to know if everything is still all right.’

Drawing by Victor © 1993
The New Yorker Magazine, Inc.

2 Write three or more sentences about yourself using I am still ..., I haven’t ... yet or I have already ...
comparatives and superlatives

Comparative adjectives are forms like younger, more expensive. Superlative adjectives are forms like youngest, most expensive.

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Look at the examples and match the beginnings and ends of the rules.

more/most beautiful more/most careful more/most distant
easier, easiest faster, fastest happier, happiest later, latest
more/most intelligent nicer, nicest older, oldest

Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To make the comparative and superlative of:</th>
<th>you:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one-syllable adjectives ending in -e</td>
<td>put more and most in front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other one-syllable adjectives</td>
<td>change y to i and add -er, -est.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two-syllable adjectives ending in -y</td>
<td>add -er, -est.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other two-syllable adjectives</td>
<td>put more and most in front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longer adjectives</td>
<td>add -r, -st.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DO IT YOURSELF

2 Look at the examples and complete the rule correctly.

bigger longest fatter shortest sweeter hottest
oldest plainer thinnest meaner

Rule

Before -er and -est, we double the last letter of:

1 all adjectives.
2 adjectives that have three letters.
3 adjectives that have one vowel.
4 adjectives that end in one vowel + one consonant.
5 adjectives that end in one consonant.
6 adjectives that end in -g or -t.

3 Check your answers to Exercises 1 and 2 in the key. Then write the comparative and superlative of:

boring cheap fine full funny handsome
hard honest interesting lazy light nervous sad
safe silly sorry stupid uncomfortable useful
violent wet
irregular comparison

good/well – better – best   bad – worse – worst
far – farther/further – farthest/furthest   old – older/elder – oldest/eldest
little – less – least   much/many – more – most

Farther/further and farthest/furthest are both used to talk about distance.
We use further to mean ‘additional’ in some expressions.

She lives three miles farther/further away from the office than I do.

further education   further information   further discussion

Elder and eldest are used with brother, sister, son, daughter, grandson, granddaughter.

John’s my elder brother. (I have one brother older than me.)
Sarah’s my eldest sister. (I have more than one sister.)

1 Answer the questions, using the words from the list at the top of the page.

1 If I’m not happy with the pen I’ve got and money is not a problem, what should I do? Buy a better pen.

2 Three thousand people entered a poetry competition. Max’s poem won. Why?

3 Five friends all arrived for lunch at the same time. Alice had left home an hour before anyone else. Why?

4 I had a cold. I went to work, but left early and went home to bed. Why?

5 I wanted to make a pear tart, but I realised all the pears were going bad. I used parts of some of the pears. Which three pears did I throw away?

6 Jill was born in 1970. Her sisters Liz and Sue were born in 1972 and 1973, and her brothers Ted and Joe were born in 1971 and 1974. What can Liz call Jill? What can Joe call Ted? What can Sue call Jill?

7 My cousin has a medical problem. The doctors have done some tests, but they still can’t decide what the problem is. What are they going to do?

8 Seven different plants need different amounts of water. Which one will grow best in a dry sunny place?

9 The Blacks have got a big house and three expensive cars. The Browns have got a small flat and one inexpensive car. Why?
   (Answer in two ways)

10 Why does it take longer for me to walk to the post office than to the park?
comparative and superlative adverbs

Comparative and superlative adverbs normally have more and most.

Could you drive more slowly? (not ... slowly?)
French is the language he speaks the most easily.

But the following adverbs have -er, -est like adjectives:
early    fast    hard    late    near    soon

Better, best, worse and worst can be used as adverbs.

1 Write the comparative/superlative of a word from the box for each blank.

1 If we don’t walk _____, we’ll never arrive on time.
2 She sings _____ than anyone else I’ve ever heard.
3 Andy’s the most intelligent, but Sue works _____.
4 Eight is late – could you possibly get here any _____?
5 Of all the children, Helen writes _____.
6 I would sleep _____ if I weren’t worried about Tom.
7 For the 10.20 train, _____ we can leave home is 10.
8 Mark speaks French _____ of all the boys in his class.

beautiful    early    fast    fluently    hard    late    peacefully    sensitively

2 If you are in a class, find out some of the following things and write sentences.

Who: sings best, sings worst, cooks better than you, cooks worse than you, can run fastest, gets up earliest, goes to bed later than you, works hardest?

3 Complete the captions with comparative adverbs.

1 She ought to drive _____.
2 He ought to drive _____.
3 She should have got up _____.
4 He ought to work _____.

30    70
much etc with comparatives

Before comparatives, we can use much, far, very much, a little, a bit (informal), a lot/lots (informal), any, no and even.

He's much/far older than her. (NOT He's very older....)
She's very much happier in the new job.
I feel a little/a bit better.
These grapes are a lot sweeter than the others.
The train's no quicker than the bus. / ... isn't any quicker ...
You look even more beautiful than usual.

1 Write ten or more sentences comparing some of the things in the box. Try and use much/very much/far/a little/a bit/a lot/even/no/any. Example:

The Taj Mahal is much older than the White House.

the Taj Mahal the Great Pyramid the White House
a Ferrari a Ford a Volvo the Amazon the Thames
the Rhône a pen a typewriter a computer a dog
a cat a parrot a horse living in the country
living in the city the Mediterranean the Atlantic
Europe Africa Asia North America South America
you your mother/father/friend/boss/teacher

'How about a little more coffee?'

Drawing by Cahan Wilson © 1993
The New Yorker Magazine, Inc.
comparative or superlative?

We use a comparative to compare one person, thing, action or group with another person, thing etc.
We use a superlative to compare one person, thing etc with the whole group that he/she/it belongs to. Compare:

Mary’s taller than her three sisters. Mary’s the tallest of the four girls.
Your accent is worse than mine. Your accent is the worst in the class.

Some people use a comparative instead of a superlative when the whole group has two members.
I like them both, but Maud’s the nicer/nicest of the two.
You can have the bigger/biggest steak if you like — I’m not very hungry.

1 Make two sentences for each item. Example:

a tiger large / a leopard? large / all the big cats?
Is a tiger larger than a leopard?
Is a tiger the largest of all the big cats?

1  this box strong / that one? strong / you’ve got?
2  Alistair tall / anyone else / class tall / the class
data of Alaska big / other states / US big / US
4  this wine expensive / that one expensive / the world
5  Al’s party good / Pat’s party good / I’ve ever been to

2 Compare four-wheel drive cars: here are some facts from an article about three real cars. Write at least ten sentences. Examples:

Car Z is faster than Car X. Car Y is the fastest of all the three.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>CAR X</th>
<th>CAR Y</th>
<th>CAR Z</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FAST? TOP SPEED:</td>
<td>106 mph</td>
<td>113 mph</td>
<td>109 mph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXPENSIVE?</td>
<td>£23,382</td>
<td>£35,889</td>
<td>£36,912</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECONOMICAL?</td>
<td>20.1 miles/gallon</td>
<td>16.7 miles/gallon</td>
<td>15.8 miles/gallon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAFE?</td>
<td>/ / /</td>
<td>/ / /</td>
<td>/ / /</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMFORTABLE?</td>
<td>/ / / /</td>
<td>/ / /</td>
<td>/ / /</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOD OFF-ROAD?</td>
<td>/ / / /</td>
<td>/ /</td>
<td>/ / /</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUGGAGE SPACE?</td>
<td>1,011 litres</td>
<td>1,100 litres</td>
<td>1,020 litres</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
comparatives: other points

We can use **double comparatives** to say that things are **changing**.

*It's getting colder and colder.*

*We went more and more slowly.* (NOT ... more slowly and more slowly.)

1 Complete the sentences.

1. She's driving ____.
2. She's getting ____.
3. It's getting ____.

4. The maths lessons are getting ____.
5. That cat's getting ____.

6. I'm getting ____.
7. Bread's getting ____.

2 Write sentences with ...*er and ...*er or more and more ... Example:

*My daughter's maths homework / difficult to understand.*

*My daughter's maths homework is getting more and more difficult to understand.*

1. My mother's driving / dangerous as the years go by.
2. I heard Jeremy practising the piano yesterday - / good.
3. It seems as if police officers / young.
5. hard / to find time for everything you want to do.
6. Professional tennis / boring.
7. Restaurants / expensive.
8. Her holidays / long.

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298-302.
We use the ... the with comparatives to say that things change or vary together.

**The older** I get, **the happier** I am. **(Not Older I get, more I am happy.)**

**The more dangerous** it is, **the more** I like it.
**(Not The more it is dangerous ...)**

**The more** money he has, **the more** useless things he buys.

3 Complete the sentences with expressions from the box.
Use the ... the. Example:

___ Mark gets. ___ he looks like his grandfather.

*The older Mark gets, the more he looks like his grandfather.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>older/more</th>
<th>more/more</th>
<th>older/darker</th>
<th>more/angrier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>warmer/more</td>
<td>more/less</td>
<td>longer/more</td>
<td>faster/more</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 ___ he drove, ___ we laughed.
2 ___ I live here, ___ I like it.
3 ___ I get, ___ my hair gets.
4 ___ money he lost, ___ it made him.
5 ___ I learn, ___ I forget and ___ I know.
6 ___ I get to know you, ___ I understand you.
7 ___ clothes she buys, ___ clothes she wants to buy.
8 ___ it got, ___ time we spent on the beach.

4 Circular situations: make sentences like the one in the example.

He drives fast: he gets nervous.

*The faster he drives, the more nervous he gets; and the more nervous he gets, the faster he drives.*

1 He eats ice cream: he gets fat. *(The more ice cream ...)*
2 He reads; he forgets.
3 She ignores him; he loves her.
4 She buys shoes; she wants shoes. *(Mind the word order.)*
5 We spend money; we have friends.
6 I sleep; I’m tired.
7 *(Make your own sentence.)*
8 *(Make your own sentence.)*

Why study?

*The more I study, the more I know.*

*The more I know, the more I forget.*

*The more I forget, the less I know.*

So why study?
superlatives: other points

After superlatives, we do not use *of* with a singular word for a place or group.

*I'm the happiest man in the world.* (NOT ... *of the world.*)
*She's the fastest player in the team.*
*(BUT ... the fastest player of them all.)*

1 **Of or in after a superlative?**

| 1  | all of us     | 7  | the four men |
| 2  | the Army      | 8  | the girls in her school |
| 3  | the books I own | 9  | the office |
| 4  | the class     | 10 | the paintings in the gallery |
| 5  | Europe        | 11 | Rome |
| 6  | my family     | 12 | the school |

We normally use *the* before **superlative + noun**, when we are comparing one person/thing/group with others.

*He's the most handsome man I know.*
*It's the longest day of the year.*

We do not use *the* before **superlative without noun**, when we are comparing somebody or something with him/her/itself in other situations.

*He's nicest when he's had a few drinks.* (NOT *He's the nicest when ...*)
*England is best in spring.*

**2 Invent suitable beginnings for these sentences. The or not?**

1 __________ most beautiful city in my country.
2 __________ most dangerous when they’re hungry.
3 __________ best modern writer.
4 __________ most interesting person I’ve ever met.
5 __________ quietest in the early morning.
6 __________ most efficient way to learn a language.
7 __________ most comfortable when there aren’t too many people around.

**3 Complete these sentences.**

1 I’m happiest when I ______.
2 ____ is happiest when he/she _____.
than, as and that

**Than** is used after comparatives.  
**As** is used in the structures **as ... as** and **the same as**.  
**That** is a conjunction used, for example, after words of saying and thinking.  
**That** is also a relative pronoun, like which and who.

She’s **taller than** me. (NOT ... **taller as** that me.)  
I’m **older than** her.  
It’s **as cold as** ice.  
The meeting’s **the same time as** last week.  
I told them **that** I disagreed.  
There’s the house **that** I told you about.

We can often leave out that (see page 243).  
I told them I disagreed.  
There’s the house I told you about.

1 **Than, as, or that?**

1 It’s ____ warm ____ toast in here.  
2 It’s later ____ I thought.  
3 I think ____ she’s Czech.  
4 I feel stronger ____ I did.  
5 Can’t you eat faster ____ that?  
6 He’s as funny ____ toothache.

7 It’ll cost the same ____ before.  
8 The car ____ I saw was too small.  
9 The cat seems worse ____ yesterday.  
10 There’s the boy ____ broke the window.  
11 It’s not as cold ____ yesterday.  
12 She’s got the same job ____ me.

2 **Complete the caption.**

'There, dear! I think we’ve left the world a better place ____ we found it!'
as ... as

We use as ... as to say that people or things are equal in some way.

*She's as tall as her brother.*  
*Is it as good as you expected?*  
*She speaks French as well as the rest of us.*

After not, we can use so ... as instead of as ... as.  
*He's not so/slightly as successful as his father.*

Other useful structures:  
*I haven't got as much time as I thought.*  
*We need as many people as possible.*  
*She earns twice as much money as me / as I do.*  
*He went to the same school as me / as I did.*  
*(NOT ... to-(a)-same-school ...)*

1 Look at the information about Jake and Susie, and then write sentences comparing them using as ... as, not solas ... as and the same ... as. Examples:

*Susie went to the same school as Jake.*  
*Jake's not as old as her.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Jake</th>
<th>Susie</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>University</strong></td>
<td>Manchester</td>
<td>Liverpool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>School</strong></td>
<td>Leeds H. S.</td>
<td>Leeds H. S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height</strong></td>
<td>1.92 m</td>
<td>1.70 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weight</strong></td>
<td>87 kg</td>
<td>56 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Job</strong></td>
<td>Accountant</td>
<td>Accountant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Born: When? Where?</strong></td>
<td>27.7.64 Leeds</td>
<td>31.3.64 Leeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Salary</strong></td>
<td>£26,000</td>
<td>£52,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Works For</strong></td>
<td>IBM</td>
<td>Rolls Royce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Holiday</strong></td>
<td>5 weeks</td>
<td>3 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Address</strong></td>
<td>3 Ross Street Manchester</td>
<td>8 Ross Street Manchester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Children</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Languages</strong></td>
<td>Fluent French, some German</td>
<td>Fluent French, fluent German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reading</strong></td>
<td>Newspapers</td>
<td>Newspapers, magazines, non-fiction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'There goes a car with exactly the same number as ours.'
Here are the beginnings and ends of some traditional expressions with as ... as. See how many you can put together correctly.

Example:

**as cold as ice**

| AS: black cold flat good green hard old pretty quiet red thin warm white | AS: a beetroot gold grass the grave the hills ice iron night a pancake a picture a rake a sheet toast |

Some colourful and unusual comparisons:

- as slow as a broken down snail
- as dirty as a dustbin lid
- as thick as two short planks (= stupid)
- as black as two o'clock in the morning
- as ugly as home-made soap
- as happy as a dog with two tails
- as poor as a church mouse
- as crooked as a dog's hind leg
- as crooked as a barrel of fish hooks
- as nervous as a brick wall
- as brave as the first man who ate an oyster
- as cold as an ex-wife's heart
- as big as the little end of nothing
- as welcome as a wet shoe
- as noisy as two skeletons dancing on a tin roof
- as dark as the inside of a wolf
- as scarce as hen's teeth
- as exciting as watching paint dry

'How d'you mean I'm as fit as a man of thirty – I am thirty!'
like and as

We can use *like* and *as* to say that things are similar. *Like* is a preposition, used before a noun or pronoun. *As* is a conjunction, used before subject + verb or a prepositional expression.

*He runs like the wind.*  *She looks like me.*
*Nobody knows her as I do.*  *On Friday, as on Monday, we meet at eight.*

Note the common expressions *as I said*, *as you know*, *as you see*, *as usual*.

1 **Like or as?**

1 He died ____ he lived, fighting.
2 Being in love is ____ an illness.
3 It's mended, ____ you can see.
4 In Paris, ____ in Rome, traffic is heavy.
5 His eyes are ____ knives.
6 My brother isn't at all ____ me.
7 She left ____ she came, silently.
8 You're shy, ____ me.
9 Your smile is ____ your sister's.
10 ____ I said, you're too late.

In informal speech (but not writing), many people use *like* as a conjunction.

*Nobody loves you like I do.*  *Like I said, she wasn't there.*

We use *as* as a preposition before a noun or pronoun to talk about the jobs, roles and functions of people and things.

*He worked as a waiter for a year.*  *Don't use your plate as an ashtray.*

Compare:

*As your brother, I must warn you to be careful.* (I am your brother.)
*Like your brother, I must warn you ... (We both warn you.)*

2 **Choose an item from the box for each blank and write it with like or as.**

1 Susan sings like an angel.
2 I worked ____ for five years.
3 Henry uses the dining room ____.
4 That cat snores just ____.
5 ____ next Tuesday is a holiday.
6 I've come to this meeting ____.
7 This bread tastes ____.
8 James speaks ____; carefully and precisely.
9 She's clever and passionate — ____.
10 Why don't we have ice cream ____?

---

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
so and such

We use so before an adjective (without a noun), or an adverb. We use such before (adjective +) noun. A/an comes after such.

She's so babyish.
I'm so hungry that I could eat a horse.
... your country, which is so beautiful.
(NOT ... your so beautiful country.)
I wish you wouldn't drive so fast.
She's such a baby.
I didn't know you had such nice friends.
It was such a comfortable bed that I went straight to sleep.

1 Put in such or so.

1 The weather was ___ cold that all the football matches were cancelled.
2 It was ___ hot weather that nobody could do any work.
3 The book was ___ boring that I stopped reading it.
4 It was ___ a good film that I went to see it three times.
5 They've got ___ a nice house that I always love staying there.
6 And their garden is ___ beautiful!
7 His voice is ___ pleasant that I could listen to him all day.
8 I don't know why she talks in ___ a loud voice.

2 Rewrite the sentences in Exercise 1, using such instead of so or so instead of such, and making any other necessary changes.

3 Complete the sentences, using expressions with such or so.

1 It was ___ that I couldn't see my hand in front of my face.
2 The canteen served ___ food that nobody could eat it.
3 It was ___ car that the police couldn't catch it.
4 The case was ___ that nobody could lift it.
5 It was ___ lecture that I couldn't keep my eyes open.
6 This language is ___ that foreigners can't learn it.
7 He was ___ person that everybody liked him.
8 I was ___ that I went to sleep standing up.
9 I wish my ___ wasn't/weren't so ___.
10 I wish I hadn't got ___.

Such and so emphasise. To talk about similarity, we prefer like this/that.

Look over there. I'd love to have a car like that. (NOT ... such-a-car.)
very and too

1. Do you know the difference between very and too? Put the right expressions with the pictures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>very expensive</th>
<th>too expensive</th>
<th>very fast</th>
<th>too fast</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>very hot</td>
<td>too hot</td>
<td>very slow</td>
<td>too slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too small</td>
<td>very tall</td>
<td>too tall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. [Image of a car with 120 mph]
2. [Image of a speed limit sign 30]
3. [Image of a person falling]
4. [Image of a person standing]
5. [Image of a person jumping]
6. [Image of a person in a crowd]
7. [Image of a person talking]
8. [Image of two people shaking hands]
9. [Image of a chair and a desk]
10. [Image of a person standing]
11. [Image of a person lying down]
12. [Image of a bird]
very (much) with past participles

We use very much with past participles when they are in passive verbs.

She was very much admired by her students.
(NOT ... very admired ...)
The bridge was very much weakened by the floods.

Very is common with past participles that are used as adjectives, especially to say how people feel – for example worried, shocked, frightened, confused, annoyed, surprised, isolated, disappointed, thrilled, amused.

We’re very worried about Sam. (NOT We’re very much worried ...)
I was very shocked to hear about the accident.
She’s very frightened of spiders.

▲ 1 Put in very or very much.

1 Her plans have been _____ simplified since I last told you about them.
2 I can see that you are _____ worried about something.
3 I get _____ confused when people shout at me.
4 I’ll be _____ surprised if you can’t answer this.
5 I’m _____ annoyed because I can’t open the safe.
6 His ideas were _____ imitated by other writers.
7 Many AIDS patients feel _____ isolated.
8 My book was _____ improved by your suggestions.
9 She’s been _____ photographed, written about and talked about, but nobody really knows her.
10 She’s _____ respected by her colleagues.
11 The police have been _____ criticised recently.
12 They weren’t _____ amused when you told that joke.
13 When I had money problems I was _____ helped by my uncle.
14 Will she be _____ disappointed if I can’t come?
15 You don’t sound _____ thrilled about seeing me.

Very much is used with mistaken.

That’s Bill’s car. unless I’m very much mistaken.
(NOT ... very mistaken.)
be: progressive forms; do be

We use *am being*, *are being* etc for *actions* and *behaviour*, but not feelings. Compare:

*You're being* stupid. (*= You're doing* stupid things.)
*I was being* careful. (*= I was doing* something carefully.)

*I'm* depressed just now. (*NOT* *I'm being* depressed just now.)
*She was* very cheerful yesterday. (*NOT* *She was being* ...)

For the use of *am being* etc in passive verbs, see page 176.

1 Put in the correct form of *be*.

1 The baby ____ very good today.
2 I ____ a bit lonely these days.
3 John ____ difficult about money again.
4 Really! The children ____ absolutely impossible this morning.
5 I don't know why I ____ so tired.
6 You ____ very careless with those glasses.
7 I didn't really mean what I said. I ____ silly.
8 She ____ excited about her birthday.

*Do* is used with *be* to make *emphatic imperatives* and *negative imperatives* (see page 218), but not usually in other cases.

*Do be* careful!    *Don't be* silly!

*But* *I'm not often* ill. (*NOT* *I don't often be* ill.)

"The dog's being impossible again."
**be: age, colour etc**

Note the use of *be* to talk about **physical characteristics and conditions**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **AGE**        | How old **is** she?  
**was** my age.  
(NOT **had** my age.) |
| **HEIGHT**     | He must **be** six feet tall.   
She is the same height as her father. |
| **WEIGHT**     | I wish I **was** a few kilos lighter.                                 |
| **SIZE**       | The room **is** ten metres by six.  
What size **are** your shoes?       |
| **COLOUR**     | **What colour are** his eyes?                                        |
| **PHYSICAL CONDITIONS** | **I'm** hungry.  
**Are** you thirsty?   
The baby **is** sleepy. |
|                | **We were** too warm/hot/cold.  
Don't be afraid.             |

Note also: to be **right/wrong/lucky/ashamed**.

1. **Complete the sentences.**
   1. I'm ____ tall.
   2. I ____ the same height as ____.
   3. My eyes ____.
   4. My eyes ____ the same colour as ____.
   5. My hair ____.
   6. My shoes ____ size ____.

2. **Write a sentence giving the size of the room that you are in now.**
   *If you are in a class, write sentences about some of the other students.*

3. **Write five or more sentences to say how you feel now. Use some of the words in the box.**

| cold | hot  | hungry | ill | sleepy | thirsty | warm | well  | wide awake |

4. **Write three or more sentences beginning I'm (not) afraid of ...**

**People can have it in any colour – as long as it's black.**
*Henry Ford, talking about the Model T Ford car*

**The so-called white races are really pinko-grey.**
*E M Forster*

**Eyes too expressive to be blue, too lovely to be grey.**
*Matthew Arnold*

**The future is black.**
*James Baldwin*

**I am black, but O! my soul is white.**
*William Blake*

**The East is red.**
*Chinese communist slogan*
**do: emphatic auxiliary**

**Emotive emphasis:** we can use *do* to make an expression sound stronger.

*Do* sit down.  
*You do* look nice today!  
*I did* enjoy our talk.

1 **Join the beginnings and ends:** make the sentences more emphatic by using *do/does/did*. Example:

*I do* feel ill!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I agree</td>
<td>a lot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I apologise</td>
<td>eggs and bacon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I feel</td>
<td>he's really happy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I hate</td>
<td>ill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I like</td>
<td>cooking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I need</td>
<td>tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter enjoyed</td>
<td>with you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She looks</td>
<td>your party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You talk</td>
<td>a job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wonder if</td>
<td>for disturbing you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'Do come out, Rover. Susan won't bite.'

**Contrastive emphasis:** we can use *do* to show a contrast — between false and true, appearance and reality, or a general statement and an exception.

*She thinks I don't love her, but I do love her.*

*It looks easy, but it does need quite a bit of practice.*

*There wasn't much time for shopping, but I did buy a couple of blouses.*

We can also use *do* to compare what is expected with what actually happens.

*I said I was going to win, and I did win.*
2 Join the beginnings and ends: add the idea of contrast by using *do/does/did*. Example:

*I've forgotten her name, but I do remember it began with a B.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I've forgotten her name.</td>
<td>Mind you, it has a nice big kitchen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'You don't love me.'</td>
<td>They said eight o'clock, didn't they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I may not be educated,</td>
<td>'I love you.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll be ready in a minute,</td>
<td>but I remember it began with a B.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm not sure she'll be there,</td>
<td>but I have to make a phone call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's a small house.</td>
<td>She plays a bit of tennis sometimes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My wife does the housework,</td>
<td>and she had a broken finger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Although she didn't say much,</td>
<td>but I iron my own trousers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She doesn't really like sport.</td>
<td>she gave me her phone number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I made her go to the doctor's,</td>
<td>but if you see her give her my love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There's nobody at home.</td>
<td>but I know something about life.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Make sentences like the one in the example. Use *do/does/did*.

*Shakespeare didn't make films, but he did write plays.*

| Shakespeare | made films | wrote plays | sell beer |
| Scottish people | lend money | fought against England |
| In England | fought against China | eat potatoes |
| Banks | eat mice | speak English | speak Japanese |
| Cats | rains a lot | snows a lot |
| Napoleon | |

Dear ...

For the past seven years the Society has benefited from the tax rebate on your covenant subscription but, unfortunately the covenant has now expired. We do hope you will renew it.

Dear ...

I am writing to thank you for your gift of £200.00 by banker's standing order under your covenant, received on 5th October 1992.

We do appreciate all your support - it is vital to our expanding work.

Dear ...

Thank you for your letter of 14th November. I am extremely sorry that you have been troubled and I entirely agree that writing to you was discourteous and a bad use of our funds.

We do in fact make good care to ensure that this does not happen and I am making enquiries as to why we slipped up in your case.

For *do be* in emphatic imperatives like *Do be careful*, see page 218.
do and make

DO IT YOURSELF

1. Can you work out the rule? Look at the examples and answer the questions. Then check your answers in the key.

Can you do the shopping? I want time to do some reading.
Make a copy of this letter. Once my father and I made a boat.
Dad makes wonderful omelettes. Shall I make a cake?
Do something! She's always making crazy plans.
Could you do the ironing and the washing up? He did something really funny.
He likes doing nothing. Time to do some work.
I love making model aeroplanes. We did a lot of walking and swimming.
I must do the accounts. What shall we do now?

1. Do we use do or make to talk about work?
2. Which do we use to talk about building and creating things?
3. Which do we use when we don't say exactly what the activity is?
4. Which do we use before determiner + ing form to talk about longer or repeated activities (mostly jobs and hobbies)?

2. Learn these fixed expressions:

**do**: good, harm, business, one's best, (someone) a favour, one's hair, one's duty, 100 mph/kph
**make**: an attempt, an effort, an offer, an excuse, a suggestion, a decision, an exception, enquiries, a phone call, a mistake, a fuss, a noise, arrangements, a journey, progress, money, a profit, a fortune, love, a bed, a fire, war, peace

3. Complete the cartoon caption.

---

‘Pembroke, have you been trying to ____ decisions again?’
4 Try to complete the sentences without looking at the opposite page.

1 He's **doing** the shopping.  
2 She's ____ the ironing.  
3 She's ____ her accounts.

4 He's ____.
5 He's forgotten to ____.
6 He's ____.

7 He's going to ____.
8 They're ____.
9 She's forgotten to ____.

10 This car will ____.
11 Somebody's ____.
12 'I'm just going ____.'
We often use **have** to talk about **actions**, especially in an informal style.

**typical expressions:**
- have breakfast, lunch, coffee etc
- have a wash, bath etc
- have a rest, sleep, lie-down, dream etc
- have a good time, bad day, nice evening, day off, holiday etc
- have a good flight/trip/journey etc
- have a talk, word, conversation, disagreement, quarrel, fight etc
- have a swim, walk, dance, ride, game etc
- have a try, a go, a look
- have difficulty/trouble in ...ing
- have a baby
- have an accident, an operation, a nervous breakdown

In this structure, **have** is an ordinary verb with progressive forms, and with **do** in questions and negatives.

'Where’s Jane?' 'She’s **having** a bath.' **What time do you have** lunch?

1 What can you do with these things / in these places? Use **have** with the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dinner</th>
<th>a drink</th>
<th>a game of cards</th>
<th>a game of tennis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a rest</td>
<td>a shave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a shower</td>
<td>a swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
2 What are they going to do? Use have with the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>an accident</th>
<th>a baby</th>
<th>a fight</th>
<th>a nervous breakdown</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>an operation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1

2

3

4

5

"Yes. this seems quite a clear bit. have a nice day."

"This is your captain speaking ... I apologise for the bumpy ride. We are now flying about ten feet ...
Mr Tatlow's had a go ... who's next?"

"You have a go in ours. and we'll have a go in yours. okay?"
**have (got): possession etc**

*Have* can be used to talk about **possession, relationships, characteristics** and similar ideas. The short forms *I have, have I, I have not etc* are **unusual** in an informal style. Instead, we generally use forms with *have got or do ... have.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instead of</th>
<th>We use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/you/etc have</td>
<td>I’ve got, you’ve got etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have I/you? etc</td>
<td>have I got etc or do I have etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/you etc haven’t</td>
<td>I haven’t got etc or I don’t have etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>had I/you? etc</td>
<td>did I have etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/you/etc hadn’t</td>
<td>I didn’t have etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Can you complete the examples?**
   1. I’ve ____ a new boyfriend. (*More natural than* I have a new boyfriend.)
   2. ____ your sister got a car? Or Does your sister ____ a car? (*More natural than* Has your sister a car?)
   3. I haven’t ____ your keys. Or I ____ have your keys. (*More natural than* I haven’t your keys.)
   4. The school does not ____ adequate sports facilities. (*More natural than* The school has not adequate sports facilities.)
   5. ____ you ____ good teachers when you were at school? (*More natural than* Had you good teachers ... ?)
   6. She ____ ____ children. (*More natural than* She hadn’t children.)

2. **If you’re homeless, you haven’t got a home. Write sentences using**
   *If you’re ..., you haven’t got any ...* to explain these words:
   1. bald  4. unemployed  7. starving
   2. penniless  5. toothless  8. an orphan
   3. childless  6. lonely  9. unmarried

*I have got* is not present perfect in this use. It means exactly the same as *I have.*

*Got-* forms are most common in the present.

The past forms I/you/etc had are common without got.

*I had a bad cold last week.*

*Do and got* are not used together. **NOT Do you have got any children?**

Progressive forms of *have* are not possible with these meanings.

**NOT Are you having any children?**

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 296-302.
3 Complete the conversations, using have got, has got etc.

1 ‘_____ an aspirin? _____ a terrible headache.’ ‘I’ll just look. I think _____ some in my bag. Oh, no, sorry, _____ any.’
2 ‘How many brothers and sisters _____?’ ‘Just one brother.’
3 ‘We _____ a new car.’ ‘Really?’ ‘Yes. _____ four-wheel drive, power steering and anti-lock braking.’ ‘Fascinating.’
4 ‘I’m afraid _____ some bad news for you.’ ‘Oh, no. What is it this time?’
5 ‘Why _____ dark glasses on?’ ‘_____ something wrong with my eyes.’
6 ‘_____ dirt on my nose?’ ‘No, but _____ something funny in your hair.’
7 ‘Sally _____ a new boyfriend.’ ‘What’s he like?’ ‘Very good-looking. He’s quite tall, and _____ big dark brown eyes and a lovely smile. But she says _____ a terrible temper.’

4 Here are some ‘contact’ advertisements from a magazine. Write sentences about some of the things that the people have got.

Example:
The man in the first advertisement has got an athletic build.

handsome, intelligent male,
6ft, 31, athletic build, Porsche
seeks attractive girlfriend,
under 30, for fun and friendship. Box 329.

natural woman, 37, intelligent,
fun loving, tall, brown hair, blue
eyes, good sense of humour;
enjoys cinema, theatre and
tavel, seeks sincere, well educated man, 35–55, for
honest, caring relationship. Ring 093 2281.

attractive, professional black
lady, slim, 5ft 6in, nice smile,
own apartment, likes long hair;
brains in a man. Ring 009 8734.

successful businessman, 35,
attractive, tanned, nice home,
yacht, requires exciting, slim
gale. Photograph. Ring
046 57943.

5 Complete some of these sentences.

1 I’ve got plenty of _____.
2 I haven’t got a _____.
3 I haven’t got much _____.
4 I haven’t got many _____.
5 I haven’t got any _____.
6 I’ve got too much _____.
7 I’ve got too many _____.
8 I’ve got enough _____.
9 I haven’t got enough _____.

6 If you can work with another student, ask him/her ten questions using have you got? Then write a report on what you have found out.
**have:** habitual and repeated actions

**Got-forms are not generally used to talk about habits and repeated actions.**

We **have** meetings on Mondays. (NOT We've *got* meetings on Mondays.)

*Do* you often **have** colds? (NOT *Have* you often **got** colds?)

1 **Here is a child's school timetable. Write ten or more sentences beginning She has ... / She doesn't have ...**

   Examples:

   *She has maths at nine o'clock on Mondays.*
   *She has economics once a week.*
   *She doesn't have French on Wednesdays.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>Th</th>
<th>F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9.00–10.00</td>
<td>maths</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>maths</td>
<td>physics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.15–11.15</td>
<td>history</td>
<td>maths</td>
<td>chemistry</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.30–12.30</td>
<td>biology</td>
<td>physics</td>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>geography</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.00–3.00</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>geography</td>
<td>sociology</td>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>maths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.15–4.15</td>
<td>games</td>
<td>economics</td>
<td>games</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>games</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 **Write some sentences about what happens in your week. Examples:**

   *I have staff meetings on Wednesday mornings.*
   *I have English lessons three times a week.*
   *I usually have a lie-in on Sunday mornings.*

**American influence on British usage**

In British English, present-tense *do*-forms have traditionally been used mostly to talk about habitual and repeated actions; *got*-forms have been used in other cases. (Compare: *I don’t usually have colds: I haven’t got a cold.*)

In standard American English, *got*-forms are unusual in questions and negatives, and *do*-forms are common for all meanings. (*I don’t have a cold.*)

But modern British English usage is becoming more similar to American usage.

---

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 299–302.
have + object + verb form

**Have something done:** arrange for something to be done.

I must **have my watch repaired.** We need to **have the curtains cleaned.**

1 Make sentences using have + object + the past participles in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>changed</th>
<th>cleaned</th>
<th>cut</th>
<th>put in</th>
<th>redecorated</th>
<th>repaired</th>
<th>reprooled</th>
<th>re-strung</th>
<th>serviced</th>
<th>sharpened</th>
<th>valued</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 When did you last (your hair)?
   When did you last have your hair cut?
2 We (our knives) once a year.
3 We're going to (the roof) next summer.
4 I must (my jacket). And I'd better (my raincoat).
5 'Do we need to (the car)?' 'Well. we ought to (the oil).'
6 When she (her jewellery), she found it wasn't actually worth much.
7 You need to (your tennis racket).
8 Shall we (the kitchen), or shall we do it ourselves?
9 It would be nice to (some more electric sockets).

This structure can also be used to refer to kinds of experience:

**Have something happen:** experience something that happens/happened/etc.

**Have something happening:** experience something that is/was happening.

**Have something done:** experience something that is/was done.

*We had a strange man come to the door yesterday.*

*We suddenly realised we had water coming through the ceiling.*

*He had his car stolen while he was shopping.*

'If you don't mind. I'm going to stop this conversation right now and turn on the television.
If I've got to have my intelligence insulted, then I'd rather it were done by an expert.'
modal auxiliary verbs: basic rules

The ‘modal auxiliary verbs’ are \textit{can}, \textit{could}, \textit{may}, \textit{might}, \textit{shall}, \textit{should}, \textit{will}, \textit{would}, \textit{must} and \textit{ought}. They are used \textit{before} other verbs, and in \textit{tags} and \textit{short answers}. 

\begin{quote}
'You can speak Japanese, \textit{can't} you?' 'Yes, I \textit{can}.'
'You \textit{shouldn't} be here, \textit{should} you?' 'No, I \textit{shouldn't}.'
\end{quote}

\begin{description}
\item[DO IT YOURSELF]
\item[1] Compare the modal verbs and the ordinary verbs in the examples, and answer the questions. Check your answers in the key.
\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{Could} you help me? \textit{Do} you expect to see her? \textit{Do} you want to stop?
\item \textit{He} must be happy. \textit{He} seems to be happy. \textit{I} can't sing.
\item \textit{I} hope to see him. \textit{It} may rain. \textit{Shall} we stop?
\item \textit{She} will not go home. \textit{She} doesn't know much. \textit{She} wants to go home.
\item \textit{They} didn't ask to be here. \textit{They} shouldn't be here. \textit{We} ought to tell her.
\end{itemize}
\item[1] Which sort of infinitive is used after modal verbs? Which is the exception?
\item[2] What is special about the third person present (\textit{he/she/it} ...) of modals?
\item[3] What is special about the question and negative forms of modals?
\end{description}

\begin{description}
\item[2] Use infinitives from the box to complete the sentences.
\begin{tabular}{llllll}
be & to be & do & to do & finish & to finish & get \\
\hline
to get & go & to go & make & to make & pass & to pass \\
play & to play & & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
\begin{itemize}
\item[1] Can you ____ the piano? \hspace{2cm} 5) When will you ____ school?
\item[2] She seems ____ better today. \hspace{2cm} 6) She hopes ____ a new car.
\item[3] I want ____ some shopping. \hspace{2cm} 7) Must you ____ so much noise?
\item[4] We may ____ to France soon. \hspace{2cm} 8) Could you ____ the salt?
\end{itemize}
\end{description}

\begin{description}
\item[3] Make these sentences into questions, and change the pronouns as shown. Example:
\begin{quote}
I can swim. (\textit{you} \rightarrow \textit{Can you swim}?)
\end{quote}
\begin{itemize}
\item[1] She can stay here. (\textit{I}) \hspace{2cm} 4) I shall drive. (\textit{we})
\item[2] I must go. (\textit{you}) \hspace{2cm} 5) He could do it. (\textit{she})
\item[3] They will understand. (\textit{he}) \hspace{2cm} 6) I would like to. (\textit{you})
\end{itemize}
\end{description}

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
Modal auxiliary verbs have no infinitives or participles. Instead, we use other expressions like be able to, be allowed to, have to.

4 Can you complete the examples with expressions from the box?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be able to</th>
<th>to be able to</th>
<th>been able to</th>
<th>been allowed to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have to</td>
<td>to have to</td>
<td>had to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 He'd like ____ travel abroad more. (NOT He'd like to can ...)
2 I've never ____ understand maths. (NOT I've never could ...)
3 The child has always ____ go out alone. (NOT She's always could ...)
4 I'm sorry ____ tell you this ... (NOT I'm sorry to must ...)
5 We've ____ get new shoes for both the kids. (NOT We've must ...)
6 One day, everybody will ____ travel where they want.
7 I'm afraid you will ____ work next weekend.
8 I would hate ____ live in a big city.
9 I would have enjoyed the holiday more if I had ____ speak Spanish.

5 Complete some of these sentences.

1 I've never been able to ____.
2 I'd like to be able to ____.
3 One day, people will be able to ____.
4 I wouldn't like to have to ____.
5 I've always had to ____.
6 I've never had to ____.
7 When I am President of the World, people will have to ____.

6 What do you think are the missing words in the cartoon caption?

"But the good news is that you'll never ____ smoke, drink or drive a car again."
must, can, may, might: how certain?

We can use must to say that something is logically necessary, or that we suppose it is certain. The negative is cannot or can't, not must not.

If A is bigger than B, and B is bigger than C, then A must be bigger than C.
Mary must have a problem — she keeps crying.
There's the doorbell. It must be Roger.
No, it can't be Roger. It's too early. (NOT ... it mustn't be Roger ...)

Can is used in questions.
There's the phone. Who can it be?

1 Rewrite these sentences using must or can't.
1 I'm sure she's at home. She must be at home.
2 I'm certain you're crazy.
3 I know that isn't Janet — she's in America.
4 I'm sure she thinks I'm stupid.
5 I bet I look silly in this coat.
6 They're always buying new cars — I'm certain they make a lot of money.
7 I'm sure he's not a teacher — he's too well dressed.
8 You're an architect? I'm sure that's an interesting job.
9 I'm sure you're not serious. I know you're joking.
10 I'm sure he's got another woman; he keeps coming home late.

JUMP, BOY!

'She must be blind. She's smiling.'
May suggests that something is possible. Might suggests a weaker possibility.

She may be at home. (perhaps a 50% chance)
Ann might be there too. (a smaller chance)
According to the radio, it may rain today. It might even snow.

2. Look at the pictures and write sentences with must/may/might/can’t. Example:

3. She must be ill. OR She can’t be well.

Note the difference between may/might not and can’t.

The game may/might not finish before ten. (Perhaps it won’t.)
The game can’t finish before ten. (It’s not possible.)
must, should etc: obligation

Must is used for orders and for strong suggestions, advice and opinions. Should is used for less strong suggestions, advice and opinions.

You must stop smoking or you'll die.
You really should stop smoking, you know. It's bad for you.

People must realise that the world is in serious trouble.
People should drive more carefully.

Ought is similar to should, but is followed by to.
People ought to drive more carefully.

Orders and instructions can be made more polite by using should.
Applications should be sent before 30 June.

1 Which do you think is better – must or should?

1 You know, I think you _____ take a holiday.
2 Tell Mark he _____ tidy his room at once.
3 Visitors are reminded that they _____ keep their bags with them.
4 I'm sorry, but you _____ go. We don't want you here.
5 I really _____ go on a diet. I'll start today!
6 I suppose I _____ write to Aunt Rachel one of these days.
7 You absolutely _____ check the tyres before you take the car out today.
8 All officers _____ report to the Commanding Officer by midday.
9 You _____ have your hair cut at least once a week.
10 I think men _____ wear jackets and ties in restaurants.

'For your first effort you should write about something you understand.
Don't try to write about yourself.'
2 Complete some of these sentences with your own ideas.

1 I think people should ____.
2 I don't think people should ____.
3 I think children should ____.
4 I don't think children should ____.
5 I really must ____.
6 People really must realise that ____.
7 My father/mother should ____.
8 My husband/wife really must ____.

We often use *should* in questions when we are wondering what to do.

*Should* I change my job or stay where I am?

3 Write questions for people who don’t know:

1 how much cheese to buy.  
2 whether to move to London.  
3 what she should call her baby.  
4 where to put his bicycle.  
5 when to pay her tax bill.  
6 whether to invite his mother.  
7 how to cook a crab.  
8 whether to go to the police.  
9 whether to take a taxi.  
10 whether to take a holiday.  
11 how long to wait.  
12 what to do at the weekend.

4 Write some similar questions for yourself. Example:

*Should* I go on studying English?

‘Should we walk upright? Should we continue to live in trees?  
Should we try to make things? Decisions, decisions!’
**must and have (got) to: obligation**

**Must** usually expresses the feelings and wishes of the speaker/hearer. **Have (got) to** often expresses obligations that come from somewhere else.

Compare:

- *I must* stop smoking. (I want to.)
- *I've got to* stop smoking — doctor's orders.

**Must** you wear those dirty jeans? (Is that what you want?)
- *Do you have to* wear a tie at work? (Is there a rule?)

1 **Put in must or have/has (got) to.**

1 I'm tired. I ____ go to bed early.
2 John ____ go to school on Saturdays.
3 We ____ get another dog soon.
4 'This is a great book.' I ____ read it.'
5 A soldier ____ obey orders.
6 We ____ go to London for a meeting.
7 I think we ____ pay in advance.
8 You really ____ visit us soon.
9 I ____ try to spend more time at home.
10 You ____ go through Carlisle on the way to Glasgow.

2 **Read this with a dictionary; see how must reflects the bearer's wishes.**

(In a dream, Mrs Ogmore-Pritchard is talking to her two dead husbands, Mr Ogmore and Mr Pritchard.)

**MRS O-P:** Tell me your tasks in order.

**MR O:** I must put my pyjamas in the drawer marked pyjamas.

**MR P:** I must take my cold bath which is good for me.

**MR O:** I must wear my flannel band to ward off sciatica.

**MR P:** I must dress behind the curtain and put on my apron.

**MR O:** I must blow my nose in a piece of tissue-paper which I afterwards burn.

**MR P:** I must take my salts which are nature's friend.

**MR O:** I must boil the drinking water because of germs.

**MR P:** I must make my herb tea which is free from tannin.

**MR O:** I must dust the blinds and then I must raise them.

**MRS O-P:** And before you let the sun in, mind it wipes its shoes.

*Dylan Thomas: Under Milk Wood* (adapted)

Unlike have to, **must has no infinitive, participles or past tense.**

When you leave school you'll **have to** find a job. (NOT You'll-must ...)

I don't like **having to** cook every evening.

We've **had to** change our plans for the summer.

Joe **had to** go home yesterday. (NOT Joe must/musted ...)
must not, do not have to etc

We use **must not** in prohibitions (negative orders).
We use **do not have to**. **do not need to** or **need not** to say that something is unnecessary.

*Students must not* leave bicycles in front of the library.
*Passengers must not* speak to the driver.
*Friday's a holiday - I don't have to* work. (NOT I mustn't work.)
*You needn't* pay now—tomorrow's OK. (NOT You mustn't pay now ...)

1 Complete the sentences, using must not / mustn't or do not / don't have to.

1 Campers ___ play music after 10 p.m.
2 Students ___ ask permission to stay out after midnight.
3 Bicycles ___ be parked in the front courtyard.
4 Residents ___ hang washing out of the windows.
5 British subjects ___ get visas to travel in Western Europe.
6 Passengers ___ lean out of the windows.
7 You ___ pay for your tickets now.
8 It's rained a lot, so we ___ water the garden.
9 You ___ disturb your sister while she's working.
10 You ___ knock before you come into my room.

2 Make sentences, using must not or do not need to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In rugby football</td>
<td>touch the ball with your hands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In tennis</td>
<td>lift your stick above your shoulder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In chess</td>
<td>hit your opponent below the belt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In boxing</td>
<td>pass the ball forwards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In athletics</td>
<td>look at other people's cards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In hockey</td>
<td>touch a piece if you aren't going to move it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In baseball</td>
<td>start before the gun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In football</td>
<td>hit the ball before it bounces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In bridge</td>
<td>hit the ball after its second bounce.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>throw the bat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
can (ability): special problems

Future: We can use can if we are deciding now what to do in the future. In other cases, we have to use will be able to.

I can see you tomorrow morning for half an hour.
One day we will be able to live without wars.
(NOT One day we can live ...)

Conditional: We can use could to mean 'would be able to'.

You could get a better job if you spoke a foreign language.

1 Put in can or can’t if possible; if not, use could or will be able to.

1 I _____ pick it up tonight, if that’s convenient.
2 I think I _____ speak English quite well in a few months.
3 'We need some more oil.' 'OK, I _____ let you have some this week.'
4 Dr Parker _____ see you at twelve on Tuesday.
5 She _____ walk again in a few weeks.
6 If we took the wheels off, we _____ get it through the back door.
7 Do you think one day people _____ travel to the stars?
8 This week's no good, but I _____ bring the car in next week.
9 If I practised a bit, I _____ be pretty good at tennis.
10 In a few years, computers _____ think better than we do.
11 She _____ give you a lesson this evening.
12 I'm free at the weekend, so the kids _____ come round.
13 I'll post your letter, but I don't think the postman _____ read the address.
14 I _____ do your job with no trouble at all.
15 We're busy this week, but we _____ repair it by next Thursday.

Past: We do not use could to say that we managed to do something on one occasion. Instead, we use, for example, managed to or succeeded in ...ing.

I managed to get up early today. (NOT I could get up early today.)
After six hours, we succeeded in getting to the top of the mountain.
(NOT After six hours, we could get ...)

But: She could read when she was four. (Not one occasion.)
He couldn't find the ticket office. (He didn't manage it.)
2 Complete the sentences with *could*, *couldn’t* or *managed to*.

1 I ____ speak French really well when I lived in Paris.
2 He ____ repair the car, but it took him a long time.
3 At last I ____ make her understand what I wanted.
4 We wanted to go to the opera, but we ____ get tickets.
5 I ____ swim across the river, but it was harder than I expected.
6 All three children ____ ride as well as they ____ walk.
7 Fortunately, I ____ get her address from her office.
8 I don’t know how the cat ____ get through the window, but it did.
9 He ____ already walk when he was ten months old.
10 After the accident, she somehow ____ walk home.

We often use *can* and *could* with *see*, *hear*, *feel*, *smell* and *taste*, with the same meaning as a progressive form.

*I can see* Susan coming. (not *I’m seeing...*)
What’s in the soup? I *can taste* something funny.
Through the window, I *could hear* a man singing.

3 Complete the sentences.

1 I ____ something burning. What do you think it is?
2 He opened his eyes, but to his horror he ____ nothing.
3 Through my study window I ____ mountains.
4 I ____ Susan practising the piano next door; it sounds nice.
5 This isn’t my coffee – I ____ sugar in it.
6 He thought he ____ something crawling up his leg, but when he looked he ____ anything.
7 Spring is coming: you ____ snowdrops in all the gardens.
8 I ____ the cats fighting in the kitchen: can you go and put them out?

4 Look around you, and write five sentences beginning *I can see* ...
Listen to the noises around you, and write five sentences beginning *I can hear* ...

*I can see why they made February the shortest month of the year.*

Drawing by Drucker; © 1971
The New Yorker Magazine, Inc.
can, could, may: permission etc

We use can to ask for and give permission, and cannot/can't to refuse it.

'Can I ask you a question?' 'Yes, of course you can.'
I'm sorry, you can't come in here.

We also use could to ask for permission; it is more polite.
Could I have a look at your newspaper?

May is used in the same way. It is more formal and less common.
May I help you, sir?

We use can and could (but not usually may) to talk about what is normally allowed.
Can you park in this street on Sundays? (NOT May you park ...?)

1 Rewrite these sentences using can, could or may.

1 I'd like to talk to you for a minute, Bill. (friendly)
   Can I talk to you for a minute, Bill?
2 I would like to use your phone. (more polite)
3 I would like to stop work early today. (formal)
4 Take my bike if you want to.
5 Are children allowed to go into pubs?
6 I don't want you to come into my room.
7 I would like to speak to Jane, if she's there. (polite)
8 I would like to have a beer. (friendly)
9 Are students allowed to use this library?
10 I would like to pay you tomorrow. (polite)

'Dad, can I borrow the gun tonight?'

Drawing by Mankoff © 1993
The New Yorker Magazine, Inc.
We use *can* in offers, requests and instructions.

*Can* I carry your bag?
*Can* I baby-sit for you this evening if you like.
*Can* you put the children to bed?
When you’ve finished the beds *you can* clean up the kitchen.

*Could* sounds less *definite*; it is common in suggestions and requests.
*I could* do some shopping for you, if that would help.
‘I’m bored.’ ‘You *could* go for a bike ride.’
*Could* you help me for a few minutes?

Common structures in **polite requests**:
*Could you possibly* help me?
*I wonder if you could* help me?

2 Rewrite these sentences, beginning with *I can ..., Can I ...?*

*You can ..., Can you ...? Could you ...? or I wonder if you could ...?*

1 Would you like me to take your coat?
2 Start cooking supper now, please.
3 I’d be glad if you would translate this for me. *(friendly)*
4 I’d be glad if you would translate this for me. *(polite)*
5 Why not watch a video if you don’t know what to do?
6 Why don’t you spend the day with us if you’re free on Saturday?
7 I don’t mind feeding the horses, if you’d like me to.
8 I’d be glad if you would lend me £5. *(polite)*
9 Tell me when it’s time to go. *(friendly)*
10 I’d be grateful if you would tell me when it’s time to go. *(polite)*

3 Put the words of the caption in the right order.

*Ellis, here my and come could pass coffee me in you Miss?*
will: willingness etc

Will can express willingness and intentions. We often use will to announce a decision at the moment when we make it.

I really will give up smoking tomorrow!
We'll buy the tickets if you'll make supper after the show.
There's the doorbell. I'll go. (NOT I go.)

I'll have ... is often used when people order in cafés, restaurants etc.
I'll have a black coffee, please.

Will you ...? can introduce instructions, orders and requests. Would you ...? is softer, and can be used to make requests more polite.
Will you get me a paper while you're out?
Will you be quiet, please?
Would you watch the children for a few minutes?

Won't can be used to talk about refusals.
He won't talk to anybody.
The car won't start.

1 Put the beginnings and ends together. Example:
I'll drive if you'll map-read.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'll drive</td>
<td>I will.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll wash up</td>
<td>I'll answer it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm tired. I think</td>
<td>I'll go to bed now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you see Ann.</td>
<td>if you'll dry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She won't tell us</td>
<td>if you'll map-read.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The cat</td>
<td>in the oven at 5.30?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The phone's ringing.</td>
<td>shouting?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This video</td>
<td>to this address, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who's going to get the tickets?</td>
<td>what's wrong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will you deliver the furniture</td>
<td>when you're ready to leave?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will you let me know</td>
<td>won't eat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will you stop</td>
<td>won't play.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would you put the meat</td>
<td>would you tell her I got her letter?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We can use **will** to make **threats** and **promises**. The simple present is not possible in this case.

*I'll hit you if you do that again.* (NOT *I hit you if...*)
*You'll get your money tomorrow.* (NOT *You get...*)
*I promise I'll stop smoking.* (NOT *I promise I stop smoking.*)

2 A boy left home for the first time to go to university. Look at the pictures, and write the promises he made to his parents. Begin:  
*I promise I'll ... or I promise I won't ...*

For *will* as a future auxiliary, see page 130.
will and would: typical behaviour

We can use will to talk about habits and typical behaviour.

She'll sit talking to herself for hours.
If something breaks down and you kick it, it will often start working again.

If we stress will it can sound critical.
She will fall in love with the wrong people.

Would is used to talk about the past.
On Saturdays, when I was a child, we would all get up early and go fishing.
He was a nice boy, but he would talk about himself all the time.

1 Complete the sentences with will/would + verbs from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>fall</th>
<th>keep</th>
<th>listen</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>ring</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>talk</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 'Dad, I've broken my watch.' 'Well, you _____ playing with it.'
2 On Sundays when we were kids, Mother _____ us pancakes for breakfast.
3 He's no trouble - he _____ by himself for hours.
4 She's nice, but she _____ about people behind their backs.
5 People _____ to you if you listen to them.
6 We lived by a lake, and sometimes Dad _____ us fishing.
7 I'm not surprised you had an accident - you _____ too fast.
8 If you drop toast, it _____ butter side down every time.
9 If you're having a bath, the phone _____ . And if you answer it, it _____ a wrong number.
10 He _____ you one thing one minute and the opposite the next - he's crazy.

2 Here are some laws of nature. Join the beginnings and the ends.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>After you have bought something.</td>
<td>it will.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If anything can go wrong.</td>
<td>somebody will.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If there are two good TV shows,</td>
<td>they will both be on at the same time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you explain so clearly that nobody can misunderstand.</td>
<td>will always move faster.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you throw something away.</td>
<td>will fall asleep first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No matter how much you do.</td>
<td>you will find it somewhere else cheaper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The one who snores</td>
<td>you'll need it the next day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The other queue</td>
<td>you'll never do enough.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
shall in questions

**Shall I/we ...?** can be used to ask for instructions and decisions, and to make offers and suggestions.

- What on earth shall we do?
- What time shall we come and see you?
- Shall I carry your bag?
- Shall we go out for a meal?

1. Can you complete the sentences? (They are from a discussion about holiday plans.) Use **shall we**?

   1. where?
   2. seaside/mountains?
   3. this country/abroad?
   4. when?
   5. how long for?
   6. fly/train/drive?
   7. hotel/camp?
   8. stay in one place / travel around?
   9. take Granny?
   10. go with the Jacksons?
   11. what do with dogs?

2. Write three questions asking for advice for yourself. If you can work with other students, ask them your questions and get their advice.

   - What shall I say when our neighbours want us to come to tea?
   - What shall I say when the phone rings and someone asks for you?

   - They don’t know you’re not with me.
   - They don’t know I ask for you too.

   - How can I hide the tears inside?
   - How can I face the crowd?
   - I can make lips of mine be still, but my heart sighs too loud.

   - I could explain that you’re gone for only a week to shop.
   - But after the week is up
   - What shall I say?

   - Peter Tinturin

For **shall** as a future auxiliary, see page 130.
should have, could have etc

We can use **should have**, **could have etc + past participle** to talk about 'unreal' **past situations** that are the opposite of what really happened.

You **should have been** here an hour ago. (But you weren't.)
Alice **should** never **have bought** that car. (But she did.)
I was so angry I **could have killed** her. (But I didn't.)
She **could have married** anybody she wanted to. (But she didn't.)
Jumping out of the window like that—**he could/might have broken** his leg.
If I'd known you were coming, I **would have stayed in**.

We can use this structure to criticise people for not doing things.
You **could have helped** me! (Why didn't you?)
You **might have let** me know you weren't coming—I stayed in all evening.

1. **Complete the sentences with should have ..., could have ..., might have ... or would have ...** More than one answer may be possible.

1. He **paid** me last week. *(pay)*
   - He should have paid me last week.
2. You **killed** somebody, driving like that. *(kill)*
3. I **phoned** you, but I didn't have your number. *(phone)*
4. If my parents hadn't been so poor, I **went** to university. *(go)*
5. It's his fault she left him: he **was** nicer to her. *(be)*
6. I **put** more garlic in the soup. *(put)*
7. If you needed money, you **asked** me. *(ask)*
8. ‘We got lost in the mountains.’ ‘You fools—you **took** a map.’ *(take)*
9. It's a good thing they got her to hospital in time. She **died**. *(die)*
10. When he said that to me I **hit** him. *(hit)*
11. You **told** me you were bringing your friends to supper! *(tell)*
12. You **washed** my jeans after you borrowed them. *(wash)*

This structure can also be used to talk about things that are not certain **to have happened**, or that we **suppose** (but don't know definitely) have happened. **May have ...** is common in these senses.

- I **may have left** my keys here this morning—have you seen them?
- He **should have arrived** home by now. Let's phone him.
- So you went to Australia. That **must have been** nice.
- Where is she? She **can’t have gone** out— the door's locked.

*For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.*
2 Complete the sentences with may have ..., should have ..., must have ... or can't have ... More than one answer may be possible.

1 'Where's Phil?' 'I don't know. He ____ home.' (go)
2 'How are the builders getting on?' 'They ____ by now. I'll go and see.' (finish)
3 'Ann isn't here.' 'Surely she ____ - I reminded her yesterday.' (forget)
4 The garden's all wet. It ____ in the night. (rain)
5 'We went to Dublin for the weekend.' 'That ____ a nice change.' (be)
6 'Who phoned?' 'She didn't give her name. It ____ Lucy.' (be)
7 He ____ all his money. I gave him £10 only yesterday! (spend)
8 I ____ a new job. I'll know for certain tomorrow. (find)
9 The car's got a big dent in the side. Bernie ____ an accident. (have)
10 They're not at home. They ____ away for the weekend. (go)

---

Note the differences between may not have ... and can't have ..., and between had to ... and must have ...

They may not have arrived yet. (= Perhaps they haven't arrived.)
They can't have arrived yet. (= They certainly haven't arrived.)
Joe had to go home. (= It was necessary for him to go home.)
Joe must have gone home. (= It seems certain that he has gone home.)

---

3 Put in may not have ..., can't have ..., had to ... or must have ...

1 Shakespeare ____ been to Australia because it hadn't been discovered.
2 King Arthur ____ existed - nobody's sure.
3 Castles in the Middle Ages ____ been cold places.
4 People in those days ____ get their water from wells and streams.
5 Poor people five hundred years ago ____ had easy lives.
6 But they ____ been unhappier than us.

---

'All the exits have been sealed off. He must have got out through the entrance.'

For will have ... (future perfect tense), see page 139.
For would have ..., see page 262.
revision of modal verbs

1 Correct the mistakes.
1 I don’t can sing.
2 I would like to can travel more.
3 He should to work harder.
4 Could you telling me the time?
5 I must work last Saturday and Sunday.

2 Choose the best form. (Sometimes both may be possible.)
1 We _____ win, but I don’t think there’s much chance. (may, might)
2 I _____ ask you to help me later. (may, might)
3 That _____ be her daughter – they’re nearly the same age. (can’t, mustn’t)
4 We _____ decide to go camping again at Easter. (can, may)
5 There _____ be enough room for everybody on the bus – we’ll have to wait and see. (may not, can’t)
6 You _____ get in without a ticket – not a chance. (may not, can’t)
7 You absolutely _____ go and see Liz. (should, must)
8 I think you _____ try to relax more. (should, must)
9 You _____ pass a special exam to be a teacher. (must, have to)
10 In this country, boys _____ do military service. (must not, don’t have to)
11 I _____ see you at eight tomorrow. (can, will be able to)
12 One day, everybody _____ say what they like. (can, will be able to)
13 It took a long time, but I _____ repair the car. (could, managed to)
14 When I was younger I _____ sing quite well. (could, was able to)
15 At what age _____ you get a driving licence? (can, may)
16 I promise I _____ smoking. (stop, will stop)
17 I don’t know why she’s not here. She _____ have got my message. (may not, can’t)
18 He’s not answering the phone. He _____ have got home yet. (may not, can’t)
19 When I was eighteen we _____ two years in the army. (had to do, must have done)
20 She _____ very quietly – I didn’t hear her go. (had to leave, must have left)

3 Write sentences about three things that you should have done last week but didn’t, and three things that you shouldn’t have done but did.
4 Complete the cartoon captions with expressions from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>he might be</th>
<th>it may not be</th>
<th>can this be</th>
<th>it can be</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you could</td>
<td>I'll</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **the same man who pulled Excalibur out of a stone?**
- **Yeah, they're all right. ____ take them.**
- **'Oh my God! His report says ____ Prime Minister one day!'**
- **'Provided you eat sensibly, stay off the beer, cigarettes and whisky, don't take any strenuous exercise and keep away from women, ____ live for another twenty minutes.'**
- **Frankly, Wallace, I think you'd better stop telling it. If no one laughs, ____ a joke.'**
- **'It's a Valentine's card. I wonder who ____ from!'**
**need**

*Need* can sometimes be used like a **modal verb**, (questions and negatives without *do*), especially to say what is (not) necessary at the time of speaking.

**Do I need to** pay now? OR **Need I** pay now?  
*He doesn't need to* go. OR *He needn't* go.

1 **Complete these sentences with needn't**, using a verb from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>come</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>laugh</th>
<th>phone</th>
<th>ring</th>
<th>take</th>
<th>think</th>
<th>try</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>worry</td>
<td>write</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 You ___ — my haircut's not as funny as all that.  
2 You ___ up yet, because there's no school today.  
3 He ___ everything down. Just the name and phone number will do.  
4 She ___ and see me if she doesn't want to; I don't mind.  
5 You ___ about me. I'm fine.  
6 You ___ I care about you, because I don't.  
7 Tell him he ___ the bell; he can just walk straight in.  
8 I'd like to see her today, but it ___ very long.  
9 Just come when you like, any time. You ___ first.  
10 You ___ to explain. I'm not interested.

**Compare didn't need to ... and needn't have ...**

We **didn't need to hurry**: we had lots of time.  
(It was unnecessary to hurry.)

We **needn't have hurried**— we got there much too early.  
(It was unnecessary to hurry, but we did.)

2 **Complete the sentences with didn't need to ... or needn't have ...**

1 I ___ the flowers; I could see that Anne had already done it. (*water*)  
2 You ___ supper for me; I've already had something to eat. (*cook*)  
3 I ___ all that work, because nobody appreciated it. (*do*)  
4 We ___ the encyclopaedia; the kids never look at it. (*buy*)  
5 We had enough petrol, so I ___.* (*fill up*)  
6 I ___ so much about Granny. When I got there she was fine. (*worry*)  
7 Luckily we had plenty of food, so I ___ shopping. (*go*)  
8 I ___ long; she arrived just after me. (*wait*)  
9 I ___ Latin at school; it hasn't been any use to me since. (*study*)
had better

*Had better (not)* is followed by an *infinitive without to.*  
We use *had better* to give *strong advice* to people (including ourselves).   
*Had better* is not past or comparative — the meaning is *'It would be good to ...'*

*You’d better* turn that music down before your Dad gets angry.  
It’s seven o’clock. *I’d better* put the meat in the oven.  
*You’d better* not say that again.  

*Had better* refers to the immediate future. It is more urgent than *should or ought.*  
'I *ought* to go and see Fred one of these days.' ‘Well, you’d *better* do it soon.  
He’s leaving for South Africa next month.’

1 **Complete the sentences with verbs from the box, using 'd better.'**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>not forget</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>invite</th>
<th>not let</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>open</td>
<td>start</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The plane’s at six o’clock. You ____ packing, hadn’t you?
2 I suppose I ____ up and put some clothes on.
3 You ____ the door and see who it is.
4 Tell Sheila she ____ my birthday this time!
5 We ____ Pat her camera back, hadn’t we? She might need it.
6 We ____ John round soon; we owe him a meal.
7 I ____ some washing, or we won’t have anything to wear.
8 You ____ Jane what’s happening: she’ll get too upset if you do.
9 You don’t look well. You ____ some whisky and honey.
10 You ____ your father see that magazine — he’ll kill you.

2 **What advice might you give to a friend who:**

1 feels very ill?
2 is very tired?
3 feels cold?
4 feels tense?
5 has been working too hard?
6 seems very unhappy?
7 is going to work in China and Japan?
8 can’t sleep?
9 has got an exam next week?
10 smokes too much?
11 thinks she saw burglars breaking into the house next door?

*Had better* is quite direct: it is *not* used in polite requests. Compare:

*Could you* help me if you’ve got time? (NOT *You’d better* help me ...)
*You’d better* help me or there’ll be trouble.
used to ... (/ˈjuːst tə/)

We use used + infinitive to talk about past habits and long-lasting situations which are now finished or different.

I used to smoke like a chimney. She used to live in Liverpool.

Used to ... is only past. For present habits, we use the simple present tense.

My sister smokes occasionally. (NOT My sister uses to smoke ...)

In an informal style, questions and negatives are generally made with do.

Did you use to collect stamps? I didn’t use to like her. I used not to like her. (More formal.)

1 Complete the text with words from the box, using used to ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>keep</th>
<th>look after</th>
<th>look at</th>
<th>live</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>take</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recently we took our 15-year-old son Joe to the place in Paris where we ___1___ when he was a baby. We showed him the house, with the balcony where he ___2___ and make speeches to imaginary crowds. Then we went inside, and believe it or not, there was Mme Duchène, who ___3___ Joe when we were working. She didn’t look a day older. We couldn’t get into the flat, but we saw the garden where Joe ___4____. Then we visited the park where we ___5___ him for walks, the zoo where he ___6___ the lions and tigers, and the lake where we ___7___ boating. Not much had changed in the area: most of the shops were still there, including the wonderful old grocer’s where we ___8___ delicacies like cherries in brandy. But the friendly butcher who ___9___ the best pieces of meat for us was gone, and so was the restaurant with the bad-tempered old waitress where we ___10___ Sunday lunch. I found it strange to go back: it made me feel happy and sad at the same time. But Joe was delighted with the trip.

2 Make sentences with used to and didn’t use to about how people lived hundreds of years ago.

1 travel / horse
2 cook / wood fires
3 live so long
4 fight / spears
5 hunt / bows and arrows
6 believe / ghosts and devils
7 be able / vote
8 think / earth was flat
9 bigger families
10 children / work

3 Write some sentences about things that you used to or didn’t use to do/think/believe when you were younger. If you can work with other students, find out what they used to do/think/believe.
supposed to (/sə'pəust tə/)

*Be supposed* + infinitive can be used to talk about what is **generally believed**.

- *He's supposed to be* rich.  
- *This stuff is supposed to kill* flies.

Another meaning is: what people are expected to do, or what is intended.

- *You're supposed to start* work at 8.30 in the mornings.  
- *She was supposed to be* here an hour ago. Where is she?  
- *You're not supposed to park* on double yellow lines.  
- *That's a strange picture. What's it supposed to be?*

1 Put the beginnings and ends together.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aspirins are supposed</td>
<td>at the cash desk on the way out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catholics are supposed</td>
<td>but I can't find them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You were supposed</td>
<td>in food shops.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's supposed to have instructions with it</td>
<td>supposed to come today?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wasn't my computer magazine</td>
<td>the shower with shoes on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What am I supposed to do</td>
<td>to cure headaches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You're not supposed to go into</td>
<td>to go to church on Sundays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You're not supposed to smoke</td>
<td>to come and see me yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You're supposed to be good at geography</td>
<td>with all this chicken salad?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think you're supposed to pay</td>
<td>– where the hell are we?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 What do you think these are supposed to be?

1 It's supposed to be a house.

- It's supposed to be a dog.
- It's supposed to be a sun.
- It's supposed to be a flower.
- It's supposed to be a house.
- It's supposed to be a dog.
- It's supposed to be a sun.
- It's supposed to be a flower.
- It's supposed to be a house.
**future: will (and shall)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I will (or shall) work</th>
<th>Questions: will/shall I work? etc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you will work</td>
<td>Negative: I will/shall not work etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it will work</td>
<td>Contractions: I’ll, you’ll etc: won’t /wʌnt/, shouldn’t /ʃəʊn’t/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we will (or shall) work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they will work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I/we will and I/we shall are used with no difference of meaning in most situations in modern British English. (But see page 121.) Will is more common than shall.*

We use **will/shall** to give or ask for information about the future, in cases where there is no reason to use a present verb-form (see pages 132–136).

*We will need the money on the 15th.
Will all the family be at the wedding?
It will be spring soon.
She’ll be here in a few minutes.*

We often use **will/shall** to predict the future – to say what we think, guess or calculate will happen.

*Tomorrow will be warm, with some cloud in the afternoon.
Who do you think will win?
You’ll never finish that book.*

1 Here are some sentences taken from recorded conversations. Can you put the beginnings and ends together?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buy the cat food here.</td>
<td>about you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Don’t give her your keys.</td>
<td>and then your kids will laugh at you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get John to have a look at the TV.</td>
<td>He’ll fix it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘He’ll grow up one day.’</td>
<td>he’ll be dead in five years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He’ll need somebody</td>
<td>he’ll drink it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘How’s June?’</td>
<td>he’ll get hit on the nose with a ball.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I must get back to work,</td>
<td>‘I hope you’re right.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If he doesn’t stop drinking.</td>
<td>It’ll be cheaper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If we give her a shout,</td>
<td>on May 12th.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you put lemon in it,</td>
<td>otherwise I’ll get the sack.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowing his luck, if he plays golf</td>
<td>‘She’ll be OK.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No good sending her a bill, is it?</td>
<td>She’ll just refuse to pay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One day you’ll be old,</td>
<td>She’ll only lose them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She’ll be fourteen</td>
<td>she’ll come and help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She’ll forget</td>
<td>to help him.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
2 Complete the sentences with your own predictions.
1 It will / will not rain next week. (rain)
2 England will / will not win the next football World Cup. (win)
3 The weather _____ much warmer in the next few years. (get)
4 There _____ a world government before the year 2050. (be)
5 There _____ a world war before the year 2050. (be)
6 Private cars _____ before the year 2100. (disappear)
7 English _____ the world language in the year 2100. (be)
8 Everybody / Not everybody _____ a computer in the year 2100. (have)
9 Everybody / Not everybody _____ enough to eat in the year 2100. (have)
10 Clothes _____ very different in the year 2100. (be)
11 In the year 2100, people _____ the same things as they do now. (eat)
12 (Write your own prediction.)

3 Look at the map and complete the weather forecast. Use some of the words in the box.

be cold dry earthquakes
east hurricanes ice
lightning north rain
snow south thunder
warm west wet will
will be winds

Tomorrow will _____ mainly _____, but there _____ some _____ in the north.
There _____ be strong _____ from the south-west later in the day. It will be quite _____ in the south, but Scotland _____ cold, and in the _____ of Scotland the rain _____ turn to _____ during the afternoon.

For will after if, see pages 137, 256. For will in requests, promises etc, see page 118.
future: going to

We often use present verb-forms to talk about the future. For example, we say that something is going to happen. This is common when we talk about plans, decisions and firm intentions, especially in an informal style.

We're going to get a new car soon.
When are you going to get your hair cut?
I'm going to keep asking her out until she says 'Yes'.

1 Here are some of the plans of various members of a family. Can you put the sentences together, using going to? Example:

Jane is going to study music in Vienna.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jane / study</td>
<td>a professional pianist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She / try to become</td>
<td>a year learning German.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But first, she / spend</td>
<td>as a pilot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max / do maths and science</td>
<td>decorate the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Then he / train</td>
<td>for his final exams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jennifer's eight, and she doesn't know</td>
<td>music in Vienna.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One day she says</td>
<td>she / be a dancer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And the next she says she /</td>
<td>the summer learning to fly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This summer, Jane /</td>
<td>start her own business.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max / spend</td>
<td>stay with her aunt in America.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Their parents / spend</td>
<td>two weeks walking in Scotland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Then they /</td>
<td>what she / do.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'Right, children, there are going to be a few changes this term.'

'This is going to put the magic back into our marriage.'
Going to is common when we predict the future by using present evidence – when we can see that a future event is on the way, or starting to happen.

Look – it's going to rain. Look out – we're going to crash!

2 What is going to happen?

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10
future: present progressive

The present progressive is common when we talk about future personal arrangements and fixed plans; we often give the time, date, and/or place.

'What are you doing this evening?' I'm washing my hair.
My car's having a service next week. We're going to Spain in June.
Did you know I'm getting a new job? What are we having for dinner?

1 Look at the diary and correct the sentences.

1 She's playing tennis on Sunday afternoon.
2 She's having lunch with James at 12.30 on Tuesday.
3 She's flying to Rotterdam on Thursday.
4 She's meeting Mrs Parsons in the London office.
5 She's driving to the meeting with Mrs Parsons.
6 She's going to a funeral on Wednesday afternoon.
7 She's meeting the accountants at 12.00 on Monday.
8 She's going to the theatre on Saturday evening.
9 She's spending Friday at the races.
10 Matthew is coming to see her on Sunday morning.

2 Write some sentences about your plans for the coming week. If you can work with other students, find out about their plans.

'August

22 Sunday
Tennis with Barbara 10am
Matthew afternoon

23 Monday
10.15 Mrs Parsons
Oxford office (9.00 train)
Accountants 4.00 pm

24 Tuesday

25 Wednesday
George's funeral 9.00
Lunch James 12.30

26 Thursday
To Amsterdam KLM H7, 8.00
Back 18.50 KLM 156

27 Friday

28 Saturday

Hi, it's me. Listen. It's David's birthday, so a few million of us are going out for a meal. Are you interested?
future: comparison of structures

We can often use more than one structure to talk about the same future event.

Present forms emphasise present ideas like intention, certainty and plans. We prefer will/shall when we are not emphasising present ideas. Compare:

Next year is going to be different – I promise. (present intention)
Next year will probably be different.

What are you doing next year? You haven’t told me your plans.
What will you do next year – do you know?

We prefer present forms when we are talking about future events that have some present reality. Compare:

I’m seeing Pete on Tuesday. (There is an arrangement now.)
I wonder if he’ll recognise me. (No present idea.)

In predictions, we prefer present forms when there is outside evidence for what will happen – when we can see something coming.
We prefer will when we are talking more about what is inside our heads: our beliefs, guesses, knowledge etc.

Look out – we’re going to crash! (I can see it coming.)
Don’t lend him your car – he’ll crash it. (I know him.)

1 Which form do you feel is best?

1 Here’s the builder’s estimate. It (will cost / is going to cost) £7,000 to repair the roof.
2 I think it (will cost / is going to cost) about £3,000 to rebuild the garage.
3 Alice (will have / is going to have) a baby.
4 With a bit of luck, the baby (will have / is going to have) Alice’s eyes.
5 (I will play / I’m playing) tennis with Stan on Sunday.
6 (He’ll win. / He’s winning.) He always does.
7 Don’t tell her. (She’ll tell / She’s going to tell) everybody else.
8 What’s happening? The train (won’t stop / isn’t going to stop)!
9 One day everybody (will have / is going to have) proper housing.
10 (She’ll get married / She’s getting married) on Friday at the local church.
11 (It will rain / It’s going to rain) – look at those clouds.
12 If it gets any colder, (it will snow / it’s going to snow).

‘Separate futures, please.’
future: simple present

We sometimes use the **simple present** to talk about the future. This happens mostly when we talk about **timetables**, routines and schedules.

- Next term **starts** on 6 April.
- My train **leaves** at 3.17.
- **What time** **does** the bus **arrive** in York?
- **Do** you **have** classes next Saturday?

The simple present can also be used to give and ask for instructions.

- When you get to the office you **go up** to the first floor, you **knock** on the first door on the right and you **ask** for Mrs Alstone. OK?
- **What do** we **do** now?
- **Where** do I **pay**?

In other cases we **don’t** use the **simple present** in main clauses to talk about the **future**. (For subordinate clauses after conjunctions, see page 244.)

- Lucy’s coming for a drink this evening. (NOT Lucy comes ...)
- **I’ll** phone you — I promise. (NOT I phone you ...)
- There’s the doorbell. I’ll go. (NOT ... I go.)

1 Choose the best tense.

1. When (does / will) school start?
2. The plane (arrives / will arrive) at 10.00.
3. I (write / will write) soon.
4. We (go / are going) to Spain some time soon.
5. You (go / will go) next door for the tickets.
6. I (stop / will stop) smoking after Christmas.
7. How (do / will) I switch this on?
8. The exams (are / will be) in June.
9. I (have / will have) a lecture at 9.00 tomorrow.
10. The train (won’t / doesn’t) stop at Oxford.
11. I (come / will come) round after 7.00.
12. Where (do / will) I go for my interview?
13. I (play / am playing) football tomorrow.
14. What time (does / will) the concert end?
15. I (post / will post) your letters.

‘— And please hurry. My credit card expires at midnight.’
future: tenses after if and when

After *if* and *when*, we normally use *present tenses* to talk about the *future*.

*If* I'm there tomorrow, I'll phone you.
*When* it's ready I'll give it to you.

1 Put in *if* or *when* with the present tense of a verb from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be</th>
<th>come</th>
<th>not find</th>
<th>grow up</th>
<th>pass</th>
<th>rain</th>
<th>say</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>not want</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 What are you going to be ___ you ___?
2 We won't play ___ it ___.
3 I'll try again ___ I ___ older.
4 I'll be surprised ___ she ___ the exam.
5 ___ you ___ your keys, you can use mine.
6 I'll hit you ___ you ___ that again.
7 Pete will take the job ___ Ann ___ it.
8 We'll all be happy ___ the weekend ___.

*If* and *when* can be followed by *will* in indirect and direct questions.

*I don't know if* I'll be there.
*They haven't said when* it'll be ready.
*When will* I see you again?

We can also use *will* after *if* in polite requests.
*If* you *will* just come this way ...

And we use *if* ... *will* to say 'if this will happen as a result'.
*All right. I'll give up smoking if it will make you happy.*
*We can come tomorrow evening if it won't upset your plans.*

2 Put in the correct verb form (present tense or will ...).

1 If you ___ there first, keep a seat for me. (*get*)
2 I'll see you again when I ___ next in London. (*be*)
3 I don't know when I ___ a job. (*find*)
4 Give her some more chocolate if it ___ her quiet. (*keep*)
5 I'll open the window when it ___ raining. (*stop*)
6 You can borrow my coat if you ___ it back. (*bring*)
7 If you ___ a seat, I'll see if the doctor’s free. (*take*)
8 All right. I'll apologise if it ___ you feel better. (*make*)
9 Can you tell me when Mr Ellis ___ here next? (*be*)
10 Come back again soon if you ___ a chance. (*get*)
future progressive

verbs: will be working, will you be working, she will not be working

We can use the future progressive to say that something will be going on at a certain time in the future.

This time tomorrow I'll be skiing.
Good luck with the exam. We'll be thinking of you.

The future progressive is also used for planned or expected future events.
Professor Asher will be giving another lecture at the same time next week.
I'll be seeing you one of these days, I expect.

In polite enquiries the future progressive suggests 'What have you already decided?', giving the idea that we are not trying to influence people. Compare:
Will you be staying in this evening? (just asking about plans)
Are you going to stay in this evening? (perhaps pressing for a decision)
Will you stay in this evening? (request or order)

1 Make future progressive questions to ask somebody politely:

1. what time they are planning to get up.
2. what they plan to wear.
3. how they intend to travel to work.
4. how soon they intend to leave.
5. whether they expect to take the car.
6. whether they plan to have lunch out.
7. what time they intend to come back.
8. where they are planning to sleep.
9. how they intend to pay.
10. when they plan to go back home.

2 Complete the cartoon caption, using a future progressive.

'My name is Mr Collins. I (teach) you English literature, and I'm armed.'

Drawing by M. Stevens © 1993
The New Yorker Magazine, Inc.
future perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✓ I will have worked etc</td>
<td>I will have been working etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>? will you have worked? etc</td>
<td>will you have been working? etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✗ she will not have worked etc</td>
<td>he will not have been working etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can use the **future perfect** to say that something will have been **completed by a certain time in the future**.

*The builder says he'll have finished the roof by Saturday.*

*The car will soon have done 100,000 miles.*

We can use the **future perfect progressive** to say how long something will have continued by a certain time.

*Next Christmas I'll have been teaching for twenty years.*

1. Use the future perfect to put the beginnings and ends together.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I (not finish) the report by Monday,</td>
<td>and we'll be able to get a smaller house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a couple of years the children leave home</td>
<td>and it's needed for Monday morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On our next wedding anniversary</td>
<td>I (drive) for fourteen hours non-stop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When I get home tonight</td>
<td>I (work) for forty years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When I retire</td>
<td>we (be) married for twenty-five years.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. A romantic novelist writes 300-page books. She writes ten pages a day, and takes no holidays. Use the future perfect to answer the questions.

1. How many pages will she have written after ten days? After a month? After a year? After ten years?
2. If she starts today, how soon will she have finished her first book?
   How many books will she have written a year from now?
3. How long will she have been writing when she has written 120 books?
4. She earns £100,000 per book. How much money will she have made altogether after her 120th book?

3. How long will you have been learning English / working / going to school / living in your present house by next summer? (Write sentences with the future perfect progressive.) If you can work with other students, ask them the same questions.
future: I am to ...

We can talk about the future by saying that something is to happen. We often use this structure to talk about official plans and fixed personal arrangements.

The President is to visit Scotland in September.
We are to get a wage rise.
I felt nervous because I was soon to leave home for the first time.

1 Write sentences about President Morton’s schedule. Example:

The President is to arrive at Star City at 08.00.

Schedule for Presidential Visit to Northland
Monday 27.6

08.00 Arrive Star City Airport. Inspect guard of honour.
09.00 Working breakfast with President Jensen.
11.00–13.00 Tour of Star City; meet mayor and civic leaders.
13.00–14.00 Lunch with Foreign Minister Svendsen and guests.
14.00–16.00 Visit inner city schools; open new eye hospital.
16.00–20.00 Meet business leaders; rest.
20.00–23.00 Attend State Dinner as guest of President and Mrs Jensen.

You are (not) to can be used (for example by parents) to give orders.

You’re to do your homework before you watch TV.
She can go out, but she’s not to be back late.

2 Put together sentences that a parent might say to a child, using expressions from the two boxes and You’re (not) to ...  Example:

You’re to clean up your room.

clean up do give chocolate go to bed learn how to use
leave dirty leave empty make make your own
open door write

at nine o’clock bed Christmas thank-you letters
crisp-packets lying around hour-long phone calls
piano practice room socks on floor to cat
to strangers washing machine
future in the past

When we are talking about the past, we often want to say that something was still in the future at that time. To express this idea, we can use the past progressive (was ...ing), was going to ..., would ... or was to.

1 Put the beginnings and ends together.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carola and I hardly noticed each other that first evening.</td>
<td>and she still hadn’t started packing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He was to regret that conversation</td>
<td>arrived one Friday morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was going to ring you yesterday,</td>
<td>but I forgot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She was leaving in two hours.</td>
<td>for many years to come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>So this was the school where I would spend the next five years.</td>
<td>I didn’t like it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The letter that was to change my life</td>
<td>Two weeks later we would be married.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 These sentences are from C S Forester’s novel The General, set in the First World War. Complete the sentences with expressions from the box.

would stand would make would return was going to be
was going to say was marrying were to find were to lose

1 The parlourmaid was in the room and her presence caused Lady Emily not to say immediately what she ____.
2 As the Duchess had said, the fact that Emily ____ a General was a very adequate excuse for so much ceremony at the wedding.
3 There was going to be no muddling in his Corps. Everything ____ exact, systematic, perfect.
4 (This was) the front line of the British trench system – in it many men ____ their lives for the barren honour of retaining that worthless ground.
5 There were six men bending over that map, and five of them ____ their graves at the point where the General’s finger was stabbing at the map.
6 A vivid flash of imagination, like lightning at night, revealed the future to Curzon. He ____ to England a defeated general, one of the men who had let England down. Emily ____ by him, but he did not want her to have to do so. Emily whom he loved ____ it all the worse. He would rather die.
the two present tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE PRESENT</th>
<th>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✓ I/you/we/they work he/she/it works</td>
<td>I am, you are etc working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>? do I/you/we/they work? does he/she/it work?</td>
<td>am I, are you etc working?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✗ I/you/we/they do not work he/she/it does not work</td>
<td>I am not, you are not etc working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You **live** in North London, don’t you?
No thanks. I **don’t smoke**.
Cheltenham Castle **stands** on a hill outside the town.
Alice **works** for an insurance company.
What do frogs **eat**?
I **play** tennis every Wednesday.
The sun **rises** in the east.

**My sister’s living** with me just now.
Look – **Ann’s smoking** a cigar.
Why **is that girl standing** on the table?

**Phil’s working** in Japan at the moment.
Hurry up! We’re **waiting** for you.
‘**What are you doing?**’ ‘**I’m writing** letters.’
Why are you **crying**? What’s wrong?

**DO IT YOURSELF**

1 Study the above examples, and then look at the words and expressions in the box. Which of them go best with the simple present, and which go with the present progressive? Check your answer in the key.

permanent temporary habit just around now always
usually just at this moment these days but not for very long

**DO IT YOURSELF**

2 Write a rule in your own language to explain the difference between the two English present tenses. If you can work with other students who speak your language, compare your rule with theirs.

'I am standing under your foot.'
We don't use a present tense to say how long something has been going on. I've known her for years. (NOT I know her for years.) See page 156.

3 Here are some exchanges from an interview between an American journalist and a French film star. Can you complete them with the correct tenses?

1 'How do you start work on a film?' 'I (read) the script and (make) notes.'
2 'I (make) notes of our interview. I hope you don't mind.' 'No, that's OK.'
3 'What languages (you speak)?' 'English, French and Spanish.'
4 'I'm glad we (do) this interview in English. My French isn't very good.'
5 'Who (play) that guitar?' 'My son, when he has time.'
6 'Who (play) the piano upstairs?' 'My sister. She's got a concert tomorrow.'
7 'What (she play)?' 'I think it's a piece by Mozart.'
8 '(She play) anything else?' 'The violin. She's very musical.'
9 'Your daughter's very keen on sport, isn't she?' 'She (play) tennis.'
10 'Where is she now?' 'She (play) tennis, as usual.'
11 'What's that delicious smell?' 'My husband (cook).'
12 'Is that usual?' 'Yes, normally I (shop) and my husband (cook).'
13 'What a lovely clock!' 'It (not work), I'm afraid – it's been broken for years.'
14 'Could I use your phone?' 'I'm afraid it (not work) at the moment.'

4 Choose the correct forms of the cartoon captions.

'field with a man and a woman looking at a house for sale'

'Of course, he still has his hobby. He (collect / is collecting) dust.'

'field with a man and a woman looking at a house for sale'

'So (how's everything going / how does everything go)!'

Repeated actions not only around the moment of speaking: simple present.
Repeated actions around the moment of speaking: present progressive.

I go to the mountains about twice a year. Water boils at 100° Celsius.
Why is he hitting the dog? Jake's seeing a lot of Felicity these days.
present tense stories etc

We often tell stories with present tenses in an informal style. We use the simple present for events – things that happen one after another.

We use the present progressive for background – things that are already happening when the story starts, or that continue through part of the story.

There's this Scotsman, you see, and he's walking through the jungle when he meets a gorilla. And the gorilla's eating a snake sandwich. So the Scotsman goes up to the gorilla and says ...

1 Put the story in order and put in the correct forms of the verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ask</th>
<th>close</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>hold</th>
<th>keep</th>
<th>notice</th>
<th>open</th>
<th>say</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>start</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>throw</td>
<td>work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The man ___ another orange out of his bag and ___ opening the window.

'But there are no elephants in these mountains,' ___ the woman.

Suddenly the man ___ the window, ___ out the orange and ___ the window again.

'Because we ___ through the mountains. Oranges ___ the elephants away.'

A woman ___ in a railway carriage when she ___ that the man opposite her ___ an orange in his hand and looking out of the window.

'You see?' says the man. 'It ___.'

'Excuse me,' the woman ___, 'but why did you do that?'

2 You probably know a better story than this. Write it, or tell other people.

We use the simple present to describe events that happen one after another in commentaries and demonstrations.

We also use the simple present to ask for and give instructions.

Calvin passes to Peters, Peters to O'Malley, Lucas intercepts, Lucas to Higgins, Higgins shoots – and it's a goal!
First I put a lump of butter into the frying pan and light the gas; then while the butter's melting I break three eggs into a bowl ...
'How do I get to the station?' 'You go straight on for half a mile, then you come to a garage, you turn left and then you take the first right.'
3 Look at the map and follow the directions. Where do you get to?

When you come out of the station you turn right. Then you take the first left and keep straight on till you come to a T-Junction. You turn right and keep straight on till you get to a crossroads, and then turn right again.

4 Write similar directions to tell somebody how to get from the station to the Apollo Theatre.

5 If you can work with other students, give them directions to another place on the map. See if they can work out where it is.

6 Look at the pictures and write the instructions for boiling an egg.

7 Write the instructions for cooking something else.
present progressive for changes

We use the present progressive for changing and developing situations.

The climate is getting warmer. (NOT The climate gets warmer.)
That child's growing bigger every day.
The universe is expanding, and has been since its beginning.

1 Look at the graph and say what is happening.

2 Say what is happening to some of the following.

the world’s population you (age) your English prices
days (length) pollution roads trains cars air travel
the world’s forests wildlife the political situation children
cities medical care teenagers unemployment sprinters
men women older people people’s holidays

3 Complete the cartoon captions

'Seems all right. How (your English / get on) ?'

'That funny noise (get) louder.'
simple present: spelling

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Look at the examples of third person singular (he/she/it ...) forms and answer the questions. Check your answers in the key.

catches cooks does eats enjoys fixes flies
goes lives makes misses passes plays pushes
reads replies says shops smokes speaks stands

teaches thinks tries waits washes works

1 What is the most common way of making the third person singular?
2 What happens with words ending in vowel + -y?
3 What happens with words ending in consonant + -y?
4 After which consonants and groups of consonants do we add -es?
5 Which two other common words add -es?

2 Write the third person singular of these verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>box</th>
<th>brush</th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>complete</th>
<th>cry</th>
<th>defend</th>
<th>deny</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>destroy</td>
<td>excite</td>
<td>expect</td>
<td>fry</td>
<td>guess</td>
<td>look</td>
<td>pray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reach</td>
<td>receive</td>
<td>rush</td>
<td>spend</td>
<td>want</td>
<td>watch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Complete the quotations with the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>come</th>
<th>do (twice)</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>happen</th>
<th>hate (twice)</th>
<th>love</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>start</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>wash</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 He who can, _____. He who cannot, _____.  G B Shaw
2 It's not that I'm afraid to die. I just don't want to be there when it _____.  Woody Allen
3 He's fanatically tidy. After he takes a bath, he ____ the soap.  Hugh Leonard
4 Opera is when a guy ____ knifed in the back and, instead of bleeding, he _____.  Ed Gardner
5 Never marry a man who ____ his mother; he'll end up hating you.  Jill Bennett
6 The brain is a wonderful organ. It ____ working the moment you get up in the morning, and it ____ not stop until you get to the office.  Robert Frost
7 A man who ____ whisky and ____ kids can't be all bad.  W C Fields
8 The man who ____ no mistakes does not usually make anything.  E J Phelps
9 Everything ____ to him who _____.  Traditional
non-progressive verbs

Some verbs are not normally used in progressive forms.

I know what you mean. (not I’m knowing what you’re meaning.)
You seem worried. (not You’re seeming ...)

1 These verbs aren’t normally used in progressive forms. Use some or all of them to complete the sentences. More than one answer may be possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>believe</th>
<th>belong</th>
<th>contain</th>
<th>forget</th>
<th>hate</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>love</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>matter</td>
<td>need</td>
<td>own</td>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>realise</td>
<td>remember</td>
<td>suppose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 This book ____ to me.  
2 I ____ you’re right.  
3 ____ you ____ this music?  
4 His father ____ a chain of hotels.  
5 She says she ____ to see Fred.  
6 I ____ a drink of water.  
7 I ____ you don’t ____ me.  
8 I ____ how old she is.  
9 She ____ me and I ____ her.  
10 Money doesn’t ____ to me.  
11 ‘Beer?’ I ____ water.  
12 I ____ his face, but not his name.  
13 That bottle ____ petrol.

Some verbs have progressive forms with one meaning but not with another. The following do not usually have progressive forms:

have (= ‘possess’); appear (= ‘seem’); look (= ‘seem’); see (= ‘understand’); think (= ‘have the opinion that’); feel (= ‘have the opinion that’).

2 Choose the correct form (simple present or present progressive).

1 I (have) a great time.  
2 She (have) plenty of money just now.  
3 He (appear) at the Fortune Theatre next week.  
4 She (appear) to have a problem.  
5 Why (you look) at me like that?  
6 It (look) as if it’s going to rain.  
7 I (see) what you’re trying to say.  
8 I (see) the manager this afternoon.  
9 I (think) you’re right.  
10 What (you think) about?  
11 I (feel) very tired today.  
12 I (feel) she’s making a mistake.

‘I think we’ve got a leadership problem.’
he's always borrowing money etc

If something is always happening, it happens often, but is unplanned.

I'm always losing my keys.
Granny's always giving us little presents.
He's always borrowing money.

Compare:
When Alice comes, I always meet her at the station. (planned meetings)
I'm always meeting Alan Forbes in the supermarket. (unplanned)

1 Here are some sentences taken from real conversations. Can you put the beginnings and ends together?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dad is always teasing me</td>
<td>a party in one of the houses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He's always arguing</td>
<td>about my clothes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He's always giving people</td>
<td>and chest problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Her best friend is always dropping in</td>
<td>her family.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I hate those cartoons</td>
<td>making up stories about people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jamie is always having colds</td>
<td>new products.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My wife's always buying</td>
<td>or fighting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She's always criticising</td>
<td>she wishes she was prettier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She's always saying</td>
<td>small presents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Someone is always giving</td>
<td>to criticise the way she lives her life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That old bitch is always</td>
<td>where Tom is always chasing Jerry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DO IT YOURSELF

2 This structure usually expresses an emotion. Which emotion is most common in the examples in Exercise 1 – interest, criticism, surprise or admiration? Check your answer in the key.

3 Use this structure to write sentences describing people you know who often do some of the following things (or others):

worry about nothing  lose their temper  lose things  complain about their health  forget things  cry  fall in love  change their job  buy new clothes  quarrel  talk nonsense
revision of present tenses

1 Put in the correct tense (simple present or present progressive).
1 Vegetarians are people who (don't eat / are not eating) meat.
2 Look out! My husband (comes / is coming).
3 Some people still think the sun (goes / is going) round the earth.
4 I (play / 'm playing) tennis every weekend.
5 Who (sits / 's sitting) in my chair?
6 What (happens / is happening) in golf if you lose the ball?
7 An alcoholic is a person who (drinks / is drinking) too much and can't stop.
8 Look! (She wears / She's wearing) the same shoes as me.
9 'What (are you looking / do you look) at?' 'A strange bird.'
10 I (stay / 'm staying) with John for a few weeks until my flat's ready.
11 We (usually stay / 're usually staying) with Peggy when we go to Chicago.
12 Can you explain why water always (runs / is running) downhill?
13 What (do you do / are you doing) with my coat?
14 Nobody (gets / is getting) up early for fun.
15 Not many passenger planes (fly / are flying) faster than sound.

2 Match the questions and answers.

| 1 What do you do? | a Actually, that's the radio. |
| 2 What are you doing? | b French — she's from Belgium. |
| 3 Where do you work? | c I want to get this car started. |
| 4 Where are you working? | d I'm an architect. |
| 5 Does your son play the violin? | e I'm in Cardiff this week. |
| 6 Is your son playing the violin? | f In a big insurance company. |
| 7 What language does she speak? | g It sounds like Russian. |
| 8 What language is she speaking? | h Me — can I have some more? |
| 9 Who drinks champagne? | i Me, when I can afford it. |
| 10 Who's drinking champagne? | j No, the piano. |

3 Put in the correct tense (simple present or present progressive).
1 I (think) he's away.
2 You (know) what I (mean).
3 She (always complain).
4 We (always start) at nine.
5 While the butter (melt), you (take) three eggs and (break) them into a bowl.
6 I (think) about your father.
7 Scientists (believe) the weather (change).
8 I (not see) what the problem is.
9 Why (you look) at me like that?
10 Now I (understand) what she wants.
simple present perfect: introduction

✓ I have seen, you have seen etc
? have I seen? have you seen? etc
X I have not seen, you have not seen etc

The simple present perfect connects the past and the present. We use it especially for finished actions that are important now. They have results now, or they are news.

RESULTS NOW
I can’t walk – I’ve hurt my leg.
Look – he hasn’t drunk his tea.

NEWS
Have you heard? He’s arrived!
You’ve passed your exam!

Compare: Brutus killed Caesar. (NOT ... has-killed ... – no present meaning.)

We can often change a present perfect sentence into a present sentence with more or less the same meaning.

I’ve hurt my leg. = I have a bad leg.
He’s lost his keys. = He can’t find them.
Sue’s come back. = Sue is home.
He’s gone. = He isn’t here.

1 Change these present perfect sentences into present sentences with similar meanings.

1 The Foreign Minister has died.
2 Lucy’s had a baby.
3 You’ve torn your coat.
4 I’ve broken my leg.
5 He’s lost his address book.
6 Have you made tea?
7 I’ve done the washing up.
8 She’s gone to work for the BBC.
9 We haven’t found out where he is.
10 The noise has stopped.
11 I’ve forgotten your name.
12 She’s learnt French.

2 Complete the cartoon caption. Can you make a present-tense sentence about the situation in the cartoon?

‘First the good news. His temperature (go) down.’
present perfect and past: news

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE PRESENT PERFECT</th>
<th>SIMPLE PAST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✓ I have seen etc</td>
<td>I saw etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>? have I seen? etc</td>
<td>did I see? etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✗ I have not seen etc</td>
<td>I did not see etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We often announce a piece of news with the **present perfect**. We can use **just** to say that something has happened **very recently**.

*A light passenger plane has crashed in Surrey.*

*Andy’s just found a flat!*

1 Join the beginnings and ends to make pieces of news. Which sentence goes with which picture?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A parachutist has just</td>
<td>a baby girl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucy has had</td>
<td>gone into hospital again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My poor old father has</td>
<td>into our garden gate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polly and Simon have</td>
<td>just got married.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some people have bought</td>
<td>landed on the roof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody has just crashed</td>
<td>lost £30 million this year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The firm has</td>
<td>the cup again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United have won</td>
<td>the house next door.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  

| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |
When we give more details, we usually change to the simple past.

'I’ve had a terrible day at the office, dear. My secretary went home sick, we lost three major contracts and a funny little dwarf turned me into a banana.'

2 Choose the right tenses and put the sentences in pairs to make news items. Example:

A light passenger plane has crashed in Surrey. According to eyewitnesses, the aircraft hit a tree while coming in to land.

A light passenger plane (crash) in Surrey.
Five thousand fans (be) at the airport.
According to eyewitnesses, the aircraft (hit) a tree while coming in to land.
Ana Gomez, of Peru, (set) a new record for the marathon.
He (say) I was just the person he needed.
Novelist Maria Santiago (marry) actor Tony Delaney.
Peter (just offer) me a new job!
Police (find) missing schoolgirl Karen Allen.
She (cover) the 42 km in just over 2 hours and 16 minutes.
She (be) at a friend’s house in Birmingham.
The World Cup team (arrive) home.
They (fall) just before reaching the summit of Mont Blanc (4,807 m).
They (meet) while working on the screenplay for the film Sun in the Morning.
They (steal) dustmen’s uniforms and walked out through the main gate.
Three climbers (die) in the Alps.
Two prisoners (escape) from Caernarvon high security prison.

Note that we use the simple past to talk about the origin of something present.

Who wrote that? (Not Who has written that?)
Bill gave me this necklace. Did you put this here?
Whose idea was it to come here on holiday?
present perfect and past: time words

To talk about finished actions, we can use the present perfect or the simple past. It often depends on the kind of time expression that is used. We do not normally use the present perfect with expressions which refer to a finished time, like yesterday, last week, three years ago, then, when. We normally use the present perfect with expressions which refer to 'any time up to now', like ever, never, before, recently, often, already, yet.

Compare:

I saw Kate yesterday. (NOT I have seen Kate yesterday.)
Have you seen Rob recently?
You were here last week, weren't you?
You've been here before, haven't you?
She studied Chinese when she was at university.
He's never studied any foreign languages.

1 Finished or unfinished time? Put the expressions in two lists.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a long time ago</th>
<th>before I was born</th>
<th>in 1991</th>
<th>in my life</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>just after I got up</td>
<td>last year</td>
<td>lately</td>
<td>this year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when I was nine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Choose the correct tense.

1 I (haven't seen / didn't see) much of Al lately.
2 'Who is she?' 'I (we never seen / never saw) her before.'
3 I (we done / did) a lot of stupid things in my life.
4 She (has left / left) school last year.
5 When (have you got / did you get) married?
6 I'm sorry. I (haven't finished / didn't finish) yet.
7 I (we often wondered / often wondered) what he does for a living.
8 He (has caught / caught) the plane at eight this morning.
9 I (we read / read) a lot of her books when I was at school.
10 (Have you seen / Did you see) any good films recently?

Just now (meaning 'a moment ago') is used with the simple past.

Compare:

She has just phoned.  She phoned just now.

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298-302.
We can **think of a finished time** even without using a time expression. We can **think of 'any time up to now'** even if we don't say so.

**Did you see 'Hamlet'?** (It was on TV **last night**.)  
**Have you seen 'Hamlet'?** ( = **Have you ever seen 'Hamlet'?**)  

3 **Put in the most suitable tense (simple past or present perfect).**

1 You (**be**) a beautiful baby.
2 I (**not read**) her latest book.
3 (**you visit**) India?
4 My great-grandmother (**live**) in Glasgow.
5 Columbus (**not discover**) America: the Indians already (**know**) where it was.
6 Amazing news! Scientists (**discover**) a new planet!
7 Who (**give**) Shakespeare his first job?
8 How many times (**you be**) in love?
9 I (**never enjoy**) a holiday as much as this one.
10 '(**you hear**) the thunder?' 'No, nothing wakes me up.'

4 **Complete the three questions in your own words. If you can, ask somebody else and report the answers.**

Have you ever ...?
How often have you ...?
When did you last ...?

5 **Complete the cartoon captions correctly.**

'Oh yes! I **met / 've met** your sort before.'

'When did you **last feed / have you last fed** that goldfish?'
present perfect: situations ‘up to now’

past situation → present

We use the present perfect to talk about situations continuing up to now, especially when we say how long they have lasted.

Alex has worked with children all her life.
He went to Rome on holiday ten years ago, and he’s lived there ever since.
She’s always wanted to go to Australia, but she’s never had time.

We do not use a present tense to say how long something has lasted.

I’ve known Joe for years. (NOT I know Joe for years.)
How long have you been here for? (= ‘Since when ...?’)
Compare: How long are you here for? (= ‘Until when ...?’)

1 Read the sentences and answer the questions.

1 ‘How long has Ann lived in Spain?’ Does Ann still live in Spain?
2 ‘How long did Bill live in Italy?’ Does Bill still live in Italy?
3 ‘Joe worked with me for two years.’ Does Joe still work with the speaker?
4 ‘Sue has worked with me for two years.’ Does Sue still work with the speaker?
5 ‘I’ve had a headache all day.’ Has the speaker got a headache?
6 ‘I had a headache all day.’ Has the speaker got a headache?

2 Put the bracketed expressions into the sentences and choose the correct tenses.

1 I (like) sport. (always) I have always liked sport.
2 I’m sorry for her. She (have) bad luck. (all her life)
3 I (want) to be a doctor. (until I was fifteen)
4 He (be) unemployed. (ever since he left school)
5 (you live) in this town? (How long)
6 I (not work) very hard. (when I was at university)
7 He was ill before Christmas, but he (be) fine. (since then)
8 I (have) trouble sleeping. (all this week)
9 I (have) trouble sleeping. (all last week)
10 I (learn) a lot. (in this job)
11 I (not learn) much. (in that job)
12 My boyfriend and I (know) each other. (for ages)
13 He (live) in Durban. (for a year before he got married)
14 I (spend) three days in hospital. (last month)
We often use the present perfect for actions repeated up to now. Compare:

Benjamin's been to Africa several times this year. ('up to now')
I went to Africa three times last year. (not 'up to now')

I've climbed a lot of mountains, but I've never been up Mont Blanc.
In 1861 he climbed most of the highest mountains in France.

3 Complete the sentences with the present perfect or simple past.

1 I (play) a lot of tennis this year.
2 She (have) six different jobs since she left school.
3 He (run) away from school three times when he was fourteen.
4 How many cups of coffee (you drink) today?
5 In those days, Andrew (come) to stay with us most weekends.
6 Shakespeare (write) poems as well as plays.
7 Since my brother lost his job, he (write) two books.
8 I'm not cooking today – I (cook) all the meals yesterday. In fact, I (cook) most of the meals this week.
9 Would you believe I (make) twenty-three phone calls today?
10 Our team are rubbish. They (just lose) eight games one after the other.

4 Complete these sentences in any way you like.

1 I've always _____.
2 I've often _____.
3 I often ____ when I was a child.
4 All my life I have _____.
5 I've known _____.
6 I've had my ____ since _____.
7 I've lived _____.
8 I've never lived _____.
9 I've ____ times this year.
10 I ____ times last year.

5 Choose the correct version of the cartoon caption.

'I've spent / I spent twenty-five years making a name for myself and now you want me to CHANGE it?'

With most verbs, we can also use the present perfect progressive to talk about situations continuing up to now. For details, see pages 158–159.

Have you been waiting long?
present perfect progressive

✓ I have been working etc
? have you been working? etc
✗ he has not been working etc

We often use the present perfect progressive to talk about actions continuing up to now, especially when we say how long they have lasted. We do not use a present tense to say how long something has lasted.

It has been snowing since Tuesday.

(NOT It is snowing since Tuesday.)

How long have you been learning English?

(NOT ... are you learning ...)?

For the difference between the progressive and simple tenses, see page 160.

1 Complete the sentences with verbs from the box. Use the present perfect progressive. Which sentences go with the two cartoons?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cry</th>
<th>learn</th>
<th>live</th>
<th>play (twice)</th>
<th>rain</th>
<th>wait (twice)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 It _____ all day.
2 I _____ English since I was six.
3 She _____ tennis professionally for ten years.
4 We _____'t _____ in this house for very long.
5 That man _____ up and down the street for ages.
6 I _____ very hard this week.
7 She _____ non-stop since she got his letter.
8 He _____ that music for hours. I wish he'd stop.
9 _____ you _____ long, sir?
10 They call me waiter, but you _____ for half an hour.
We can also use the **present perfect progressive** to talk about long or repeated actions that have finished recently, and which have **present results**.

'You look hot.' 'Yes, I’ve been running.'

### 2 Put together the beginnings and ends of the conversations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>BEGINNINGS</strong></th>
<th><strong>ENDS</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘Aren’t you hungry?’</td>
<td>‘Helen’s been looking at them.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Is it true that Philip’s been arrested?’</td>
<td>‘I’ve been gardening all afternoon.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Janet seems very cheerful.’</td>
<td>‘I’ve been swimming.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘She’s very dirty.’</td>
<td>‘I’ve been talking to Henry, and he just goes on and on.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Why are my books all over the floor?’</td>
<td>‘No, I’ve been eating all day.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Why’s your hair wet?’</td>
<td>‘She’s been cleaning the cellar.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘You all look very miserable.’</td>
<td>‘She’s been skiing with Roger for the last week.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘You look tired.’</td>
<td>‘Yes, he’s been stealing things from shops.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘You’re very late.’</td>
<td>‘Yes, I’ve been painting the ceiling.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Your hair’s all white.’</td>
<td>‘Yes, we’ve been telling each other our life stories.’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3 Write sentences about the pictures, to say what has been happening.

1. [Image of a man holding an umbrella]

2. [Image of a woman running]

3. [Image of a man reading a newspaper]

4. [Image of a group of people running]

5. [Image of a woman eating a sandwich]

6. [Image of a man cleaning the floor]
present perfect progressive or simple?

To talk about recent long actions and situations:
the **present perfect progressive** looks at the *continuing situation itself*; the **present perfect simple** says that something is *completed, achieved*.

*I've been reading* your book: I'm enjoying it.
*I've read your book.* (= I've finished it.)

We use the **simple present perfect** to say *how often* something has happened (because of the idea of completion). Compare:

*I've played* tennis three times this week.
*I've been playing* a lot of tennis recently.

We prefer the **simple present perfect** to talk about permanent or very long-lasting situations. Compare:

*He's been living* in Doncaster for the last few months.
*I've lived* here all my life.

1 Put in the present perfect progressive or simple.

1. That man *(stand)* outside for hours.
2. The castle *(stand)* on that hill for 900 years.
3. Ann *(garden)* all afternoon. She *(plant)* a lot of rose bushes.
4. James *(go)* out every night this week.
5. He *(see)* a lot of Alexandra recently.
6. How long *(you wait)*?
7. I *(wait)* long enough. I'm going.
8. Her family *(farm)* this land since the tenth century.
9. She *(only farm)* for two years, but she's doing very well.
10. I *(learn)* German for six years.
11. I *(learn)* most of the irregular verbs.
12. My mother *(do)* all her Christmas shopping.
13. I *(do)* Christmas shopping all day.
14. I *(clean)* the car. Doesn't it look nice?
15. 'You look tired.' 'I *(wash)* clothes all day.'

Remember that some verbs are not used in progressive forms even if the meaning is one for which a progressive form is more suitable (see page 148).

*He's only known* her for two days. (NOT *He's only been knowing* her ...)
*How long have you had* that cold? (NOT ... *have you been having* ...?)

---

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298-302.
since and for

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Do you know the difference between since and for? Look at the examples and try to make a rule. Then check this in the key.

He’s been here since ten o’clock.       He’s been here for two hours.
We’ve had this car since December.       We’ve had this car for six months.
I’ve known her since university.         I’ve known her for a very long time.

2 Complete the expressions.

since yesterday = for 24 hours
for 200 years = since the 18th century
since 1980 = ___ ___ ___ ___ for 20 years = since ___ ___ ___ ___
since Tuesday = ___ ___ ___ ___ for five days = ___ ___ ___ ___
since six o’clock = ___ ___ ___ ___ for the last two hours = ___ ___ ___ ___
since my birthday = ___ ___ ___ ___ the last ___ ___ ___ ___ days/weeks/months

3 Complete the sentences with since or for.

1 I’ve had this job ___ ___ a month.  5 I’ve lived here ___ ___ 1992.
2 He’s known her ___ ___ April.       6 He’s been away ___ ___ a long time.
3 She’s been ill ___ ___ years.        7 I haven’t slept ___ ___ two nights.
4 I haven’t seen him ___ ___ ages.

4 Write sentences about these situations with since and for.

1 Jake runs a small business. He started doing this five years ago.
2 Andy lives in Dublin. He moved there last year.
3 Helen plays the piano. She started two years ago.
4 Rob has a Mercedes. He bought it five years ago.
5 Jan is living with Pete. This started in 1994.
6 Sammy is learning Turkish. He started four years ago.

5 Complete the sentences in your own words.

1 I’ve had this ___ ___ for ___ ___.
2 I’ve known ___ ___ since ___ ___.
3 I haven’t ___ ___ for ___ ___.
4 I haven’t ___ ___ since ___ ___.

6 If you can work with other students, ask them questions beginning ‘How long have ...?’ They should answer ‘Since ...’ or ‘For ...’
tenses with since and for

Sentences with *since* usually have a **perfect** tense. But **past tenses** are possible in the **time expression after since**. Compare:

*I’ve known her since 1980.*  
*I’ve known her since we were students.*

1 **Choose the right tenses.**

1 It (*is / was / has been*) snowing since I (*have got up / got up*).
2 Things (*have been / were*) difficult since Carol (*has lost / lost*) her job.
3 Since Jake (*has taken up / took up*) the trumpet, nobody (*has / has had / had*) any peace.
4 He (*has been / was*) quite different since he (*has got / got*) married.
5 Since she (*has gone / went*) to live in France we (*haven’t heard / didn’t hear*) anything from her.
6 He (*has been / was*) strange ever since he (*has had / had*) the accident.

A **present tense** is sometimes used in the main clause to talk about **changes**.  
Note also the structure *It is ... since ...*  

*She looks* quite different since her illness.  
*It’s a long time since* lunch.

2 **Put the beginnings and ends together.** (Different answers are possible.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He looks much younger</td>
<td>since he had a job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s nearly three years</td>
<td>since he shaved off his beard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s only a week</td>
<td>since I met her, but it seems like years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s too long</td>
<td>since she stopped going out with Pete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She’s a lot happier</td>
<td>since we got our own flat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Things are better</td>
<td>since we last had a proper talk.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sentences with *for* have a **perfect** tense when the meaning is ‘**time up to now**’, but other tenses are used with other meanings.

*I’ve known her for ages.*  
*I was in that school for three years.*  
*She’s staying for another week.*  
*He’ll be in hospital for a month.*
present perfect and past: revision

**DO IT YOURSELF**

1. Tenses and time expressions. Which rule is true? Check your answer in the key.

1. Present perfect (simple or progressive) with longer periods of time; simple past with shorter periods.
2. Present perfect with expressions of finished time; simple past with expressions of unfinished time.
3. Present perfect with expressions of unfinished time; simple past with expressions of finished time.
4. Present perfect with repeated actions; simple past with actions that are not repeated.

2. Put in the correct forms.

Dear Eileen

Hope things are OK with you. The doctor (1. come) yesterday. He (2 not like) my cough. I (3 lie) in bed looking at the ceiling since Tuesday, and I can tell you, I’m fed up with it. I (4 never be) ill like this before – don’t know what’s happening to me. And the weather’s terrible. It (5 rain) all day, and I can’t even have a cup of tea to cheer myself up, because the milkman (6 not come) this morning. Don’t know why – I’m sure I (7 pay) his bill.

Alice (8 get) married last week, so now all Mary’s kids (9 leave) home. She won’t know what to do with herself, will she?

Lucy Watson (10 move) to Doncaster. Since Fred (11 die) she (12 be) all alone. It (13 be) a heart attack, apparently. I’m sorry she (14 go) – we (15 be) neighbours (16 since/for) over thirty years, and she (17 always be) friendly and ready to help out.

Amy (18 leave). My cleaning lady, you remember? I’m glad. She (19 not be) much use, and I (20 not trust) her since she (21 break) all those plates and (22 say) it (23 be) the cat.

There (24 not be) much change in the village. Some new people (25 take) over the shop. They seem quite nice. Hope they’re more efficient than old Joe.

No more news. Write when you’ve got the time.

Love

Emma
past progressive

✓ I was working etc
? were you working? etc
✗ she was not working etc

What were you doing
-------------------

As I was walking down the road
-----------------------------

- at 1.00?
- I saw Bill.

We use the past progressive to say that something was going on around a particular past time.

'What were you doing at 1.00 last night?' 'I was watching TV.'
(NOT 'What did you do...?' 'I watched TV.')

We can use the past progressive and simple past together.
Past progressive: longer background action or situation.
Simple past: shorter action that interrupted it or happened in the middle.

As I was walking down the road I saw Bill.
The phone rang while I was having dinner.

1 Put in the correct tenses.

1 At six o'clock this morning I (have) a wonderful dream, but then the alarm (go) off.
2 This time yesterday I (lie) on the beach.
3 When I walked in they (all talk) about babies.
4 I saw Sid when I (come) to work this morning. He (shop).
5 She (meet) her husband while she (travel) in Egypt.
6 While I (talk) to Mrs Singleton somebody (walk) into my office and (steal) the computer.
7 When Jake (come) in everybody (stop) talking.
8 I (look) out of the window and (see) that we (fly) over the mountains.
9 I (wake) up to find that water (pour) through the bedroom ceiling.
10 He (break) his leg while he (play) football.
11 I (go) to see how she (be) and found she (cry).
12 She (tell) me she (have) a bad time with her husband.
2. Look at the pictures, and write sentences to say what was happening and what happened.

3. Complete the text with the verbs in the box (there is one verb too many). You will need five past progressives and three simple pasts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ask</th>
<th>come</th>
<th>dance</th>
<th>grin</th>
<th>hold</th>
<th>not dance</th>
<th>order</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>throw</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On the dance floor half a dozen couples _1_ themselves around. Most of them _2_ cheek to cheek, if dancing is the word. The men wore white tuxedos and the girls wore bright eyes, ruby lips, and tennis or golf muscles. One couple _3_ cheek to cheek. Mitchell's mouth was open, he _4_ his face was red and shiny, and his eyes had that glazed look. Betty _5_ her head as far as she could get away from him without breaking her neck. It was very obvious that she had about all of Mr Larry Mitchell that she could take.

A Mexican waiter in a short green jacket and white pants with a green stripe down the side _6_ up and I _7_ a double Gibson and _8_ if I could have a club sandwich. Raymond Chandler: Playback (adapted)

**Progressive** forms are used mostly for temporary actions and situations. For longer, more permanent situations we prefer the simple past.

**Compare:**

When I walked in I found that water **was running** down the walls.
Explorers believed that the river **ran** into the Atlantic.

We do **not** normally use the past progressive to talk about past habits, or to say how often something happened.

I **played** a lot of tennis when I was younger. (NOT I **was playing** ...)
She **rang** the bell three times. (NOT She **was ringing** ...)

Remember that some verbs are not used in progressive forms (see page 148).

I **tried** the cake to see how it **tasted**. (NOT ... how it **was tasting**.)
past perfect

✓ I had worked etc
? had you worked? etc
✗ he had not worked etc

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Look at the examples. Which of rules 1–5 gives the best explanation for the use of the past perfect? Check your answer in the key.

When I got to the car park I realised that I had lost my keys. She told me she had worked in France and Germany. He arrived late; he hadn’t realised the roads would be so icy. She was upset because Andrew hadn’t telephoned.

Do we use the past perfect:
1 mostly in indirect speech?
2 to show that a past action was completed?
3 when we are already talking about the past, and want to talk about an earlier past for a moment?
4 to talk about things that happened a very long time ago?
5 to say why something happened?

2 Put in the simple past or past perfect.

1 I (be) sorry that I (not be) nicer to him.
2 Nobody (come) to the meeting because Angela (forget) to tell people about it.
3 I (see) her before somewhere – I (know).
4 Because he (not check) the oil for so long, the car (break) down.
5 She couldn’t find the book that I (lend) her.
6 All the people we (invite) turned up, and some that we (not invite).
7 They (never find) where he (hide) the money.
8 It was a firm that I (never hear) of.
9 When she (come) in, we all knew where she (be).
10 The lesson (already start) when I (arrive).

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
3 Choose the correct tense (simple past or past perfect).

When I (1 go) to Paris last spring for a job interview, I (2 not be) there for five years. I (3 arrive) the evening before the interview, and (4 spend) a happy hour walking round thinking about the good times I (5 have) there as a student.

As I was strolling by the Seine, I suddenly (6 see) a familiar face – it was Nedjma, the woman I (7 share) a flat with when I was a student, and whose address I (8 lose) after leaving Paris. I could tell she (9 not see) me, so I (10 call) her name and she (11 look) up. As she (12 turn) towards me. I (13 realise) that she (14 have) an ugly scar on the side of her face. She (15 see) the shock in my eyes, and her hand (16 go) up to touch the scar; she (17 explain) that she (18 get) it when she was a journalist reporting on a war in Africa.

She (19 not be) uncomfortable telling me this: we (20 feel) as if the years (21 not pass), as if we (22 say) goodbye the week before. She (23 arrive) in Paris that morning, and she (24 have) a hospital appointment the next day. The doctors (25 think) that they could remove the scar, but she would have to stay in Paris for several months. Both of us (26 have) the idea at the same time: if I (27 get) the job, we could share a flat again. And we could start by having a coffee while we (28 begin) to tell one another everything that (29 happen) to us in the past five years.

We often use the past perfect after when and after to show that something was completely finished.

When he had painted the kitchen and bathroom, he decided to have a rest. After I had finished the report, I realised that it was too late to post it.

4 Join the beginnings and ends to make sensible sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>After he had tried on six pairs of shoes</td>
<td>he decided he liked the first ones best.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After Mary had done all the shopping</td>
<td>he started going through the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When I had washed and dried the last plate</td>
<td>cupboards downstairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When Mark had looked through all the</td>
<td>she took a short walk round the park.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawers in his room</td>
<td>he went to the café in the square for a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When he had finished eating lunch</td>
<td>cup of coffee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paul came in and offered to help.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Use when or after to make one sentence for each situation.

1 I wrote to my boyfriend. Then I watched television for an hour or so.
2 Everybody had a chance to say what they thought. Then we took a vote.
3 I posted the letter. Then I felt much better about everything.
4 She stopped trying to lose weight. She looked much healthier.
5 He bought presents for everyone in his family. Then he bought something for himself as well.
past perfect progressive

✓ I had been working etc
? had you been working? etc
X she had not been working etc

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Look at the examples and think about when we use the past perfect progressive instead of the (simple) past perfect.

All the roads were blocked: it had been snowing all night long.
After I had been walking for an hour, I decided to have a rest.
She fell ill because she had been working too hard.
Mary could see that the child had been crying for some time.

DO IT YOURSELF

2 Look at these diagrams. Which one represents the (simple) past perfect, and which represents the past perfect progressive? Check your answers in the key.

A \( \downarrow \) x \( \longleftrightarrow \) past present

B \( \downarrow \) \( \longleftrightarrow \) earlier past past present

C \( \downarrow \) \( \longleftrightarrow \) earlier past past present

3 Complete the text with past perfect progressives: choose verbs from the box.

drive lie repair work

John Latton, 39, an engineer at Felton Plastics in Upton, had a lucky escape after an accident on the A34 in the early hours of the morning. Mr Latton fell asleep while driving and crashed into a pile of sand left by workers who \( ^1 \) the road.

When he left Felton Plastics at 3.00 this morning, Mr Latton \( ^2 \) for 72 hours without any sleep.

A passing motorist discovered the accident after the engineer \( ^3 \) in his car with a broken leg for half an hour. Ambulance workers said that if Mr Latton \( ^4 \) any faster his injuries might have been much worse.
4 Read the story.

On Tuesday afternoon, everyone in my family was very busy – except me. During the afternoon Helen repaired her car; John practised his karate; Kate did some gardening; Stephanie played tennis; Roger swam for half an hour; Pam went horse-riding; Philip painted the ceiling in his room light blue. I spent the afternoon sitting reading.

Now answer the questions.

1 Who had black grease on her hands at teatime? Why?
   Helen, because she had been repairing her car.
2 Who had dirt on her hands and knees? Why?
3 Who was wearing a short white skirt? Why?
4 Who was wearing a white jacket and trousers and a black belt? Why?
5 Who was wearing high boots and a hard hat? Why?
6 Whose hair had light blue streaks in it? Why?
7 Whose hair was all wet? Why?

5 In a murder investigation, some suspects were asked by police what they had been doing at eight o'clock the previous evening. They all told lies. Write sentences to explain what they told the police they had been doing, and what they had actually been doing. Example:

Mrs Oliver said she had been reading, but actually she had been watching the neighbours through binoculars.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>TOLD POLICE HAD BEEN DOING</th>
<th>TRUTH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mrs Oliver</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>watching neighbours through binoculars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr Lucas</td>
<td>watching TV</td>
<td>stealing cars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mrs Allen</td>
<td>talking on the phone</td>
<td>making a bomb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr Nash</td>
<td>washing clothes</td>
<td>forging £5 notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alice</td>
<td>playing cards</td>
<td>selling drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pete</td>
<td>studying chemistry</td>
<td>fighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aunt Jane</td>
<td>writing letters</td>
<td>planning a bank robbery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miss Fry</td>
<td>washing her hair</td>
<td>out dancing with her sister's boyfriend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rob</td>
<td>painting his flat</td>
<td>playing roulette</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
perfect tenses with this is the first etc

We use a simple present perfect tense in sentences with this/it/that is the first/second/third/only/best/worst etc.

This is the first time that I've heard her sing.  
(NOT This is the first time that I hear her sing.)
This is the fifth time you've asked me the same question.  
(NOT This is the fifth time you ask ...)
That's the third cake you've eaten this morning.  
It's one of the most interesting books I've ever read.

1 Complete the sentences correctly.

1 This is the first time I (see this film).
2 That's the eighth time you (sing that song) today.
3 This is the only time this week I (feel happy).
4 This is the third serious mistake you (make) in this job.
5 This is the only time I (ever see) her cry.
6 That's the tenth cup of coffee you (drink) since breakfast.
7 It's the first time all the family (be together) since Sue's wedding.
8 This is the best meal I (eat) this year.
9 'Excuse me.' 'That's the first thing you (say) to me all day.'
10 These are the first clothes I (buy) myself since Christmas.

When we talk about the past, we use a past perfect tense in these structures.

It was the third time he had been in love that year.  
(NOT It was the third time he was in love . . .)

2 Read the text and make sentences beginning It was the first time.  
Example:

It was the first time he had been away from home.

John didn't enjoy his first week in the army. He had never been away from home before; he had never worn uniform; he had never had to make his own bed; he had never cleaned his own boots; he had never fired a gun, and he hated the noise: he had never walked more than a mile.

Can you make some more examples?
past and progressive in requests etc

Past tenses can make requests, questions and suggestions more polite.
(They sound less direct than present tenses.)

I wondered if you were free this evening.
How much did you want to spend, sir?

The past modal forms would, could and might are often used in this way.
I thought it would be nice to have a picnic.
Could I ask you to translate this for me?
You might see if the consulate can help you.

Past progressives can make requests less direct, and so more polite.
I was wondering if I might use your phone.

In other kinds of sentence, present progressives can sound casual and friendly.
We're hoping you'll come and stay with us soon.
I'm looking forward to hearing from you.

▲ 1 Make these sentences less direct.

1 How many days do you intend to stay? ( → past)
2 I hope you can lend me £10.
( → past progressive and past modal)
3 I wonder if you have two single rooms.
( → past progressive and past)
4 Are you looking for anything special?
( → past progressive)
5 Can you give me a hand? ( → past modal)
6 I look forward to seeing you again.
( → present progressive)
7 I think I'll borrow your bike for the afternoon,
if that's OK. ( → past progressive and past modal)
8 We can ask Peter to help us. ( → past modal)
9 I wonder if I can ask you a small favour.
( → past progressive and past modal)
10 I think it will be a good idea to invite Simon.
( → past and past modal)

Another way of making requests less direct is to use a future verb form.

I'm afraid you'll need to fill in this form.
I'll have to ask you to wait a minute.
revision of past and perfect tenses

1 Choose the right tenses (present perfect, past or past perfect; simple or progressive).

1 Reports are coming in that a train (crash) near Birmingham. According to eyewitnesses, it (hit) a concrete block which somebody (put) on the line.
2 Halfway to the office Paul (turn) round and (go) back home, because he (forget) to turn the gas off.
3 I (do) housework all day today. I (clean) every room in the house.
4 I (lie) in bed thinking about getting up when the doorbell (ring).
5 It wasn’t surprising that she (start) getting toothache. She (not go) to the dentist for two years.
6 I (play) a lot of bridge recently.
7 When I (get) home everybody (watch) TV.
8 We (not see) your mother for ages.
9 How long (you learn) English?
10 London (change) a lot since we first (come) to live here.
11 ‘How many times (you see) this film?’ ‘This is the first time I (see) it.’
12 ‘Who’s that?’ ‘I (never see) him before in my life.’
13 I hear Joe (get) married last summer.
14 I (often wonder) where she (get) her money.
15 (You read) Pam Marshall’s latest book?
16 They (just discover) a new fuel – it’s half the price of petrol, and much cleaner.
17 (You hear) the storm last night?
18 My sister (be) married three times.
19 While she (talk) on the phone the children (start) fighting and (break) a window.
20 He used to talk to us for hours about all the interesting things he (do) in his life.
21 You know, she (stand) looking at that picture for the last twenty minutes.
22 The old cross (stand) on top of the hill as long as anybody can remember.
23 I (spend) a lot of time travelling since I (get) this new job.
24 When I (be) at school we all (study) Latin.
25 After he (finish) breakfast he (sit) down to write some letters.
26 When I (meet) him he (work) as a waiter for a year or so.
27 I (never learn) to ski.
28 (you finish) with the bathroom yet?
29 We (live) in Scotland until I (be) eighteen.
30 She (have) a hard life, but she’s always smiling.

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 296–302.
2 Choose the right tenses (present perfect, past or past perfect; simple or progressive).

**Going to the Pictures**
That afternoon we all (1 get) ready to go to the pictures. We (2 get) a 63 bus to take us to the Elephant and Castle, because the pictures are just next door. There (3 be) a great big queue waiting to go in and we (4 be) at the very back. Soon we (5 get) in. The picture (6 already start) and it was very dark in there. We had to go down some stairs to get to our seats but instead of walking down them we (7 fall) down them. Soon we were in our seats. We (8 sit) there watching the film when something (9 hit) me on the head. It was an ice-cream tub. I (10 turn) round to see who it was and a little boy who (11 sit) two rows behind me said, 'I am very sorry. It wasn't meant to hit you. It was meant to hit the boy in front.'

*Anonymous Child*

**The Little Girl and the Wolf**
One afternoon a big wolf (12 wait) in a dark forest for a little girl to come along carrying a basket of food to her grandmother. Finally a little girl did come along and she (13 carry) a basket of food. 'Are you carrying that basket to your grandmother?' asked the wolf. The little girl said yes, she was. So the wolf (14 ask) her where her grandmother lived and the little girl (15 tell) him and he (16 disappear) into the wood.

When the little girl (17 open) the door of her grandmother's house she (18 see) that there was somebody in bed with a nightcap and nightgown on. She (19 approach) no nearer than twenty-five feet from the bed when she (20 see) that it was not her grandmother but the wolf, for even in a nightcap a wolf does not look in the least like anybody's grandmother. So the little girl (21 take) an automatic pistol out of her basket and (22 shoot) the wolf dead.

Moral: It is not so easy to fool little girls nowadays as it used to be.

*James Thurber: Fables for Our Time* (adapted)

**Rioting students battle against police**
May 7 (1968). In the last two days, Paris (23 see) the worst street-fighting since the Liberation in 1944. Up to 30,000 students, locked out of their own campus yesterday by the Sorbonne rector, Jean Roche, (24 fight) the tear gas of the riot police with barricades, bricks, paving stones and Molotov cocktails.

The trouble (25 be) fermenting for some time. On March 20, six students (26 be) arrested after an anti-American demonstration; the next day, a mass sit-in at the Nanterre campus (27 begin). Last Friday, the police – whose alleged brutality is said to have sparked off the violence – forcibly evicted the students, who were led by Daniel Cohn-Bendit.

All day yesterday, the Latin Quarter (28 be) the arena for running street fights centred on the Boulevard St Germain.

*Chronicle of the 20th Century*
3 Complete the cartoon captions with the expressions from the box, and put in the right tenses.

another bit of metal, Maureen. Could you tell us, please, where we (go)?
I (start) leaving my husband an hour ago. (do) this job, is it?
this fear of heights, Mr Winthrop?
what, exactly, (you do)?
you (die).
All his batteries (run) down.

A Look, Mary, I must go;

B How long (you have)

C You (book) us a holiday abroad during the summe:
D  I (find)

E  Good Lord, Fenton, I had no idea

F  First time you

G  Perhaps I could help you choose, sir –

H  He has nothing to do.
### Passive Structures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passive Tense</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple present</td>
<td>am/are/is + past participle</td>
<td>English is spoken here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present progressive</td>
<td>am/are/is being + pp</td>
<td>Excuse the mess: the house is being painted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple past</td>
<td>was/were + pp</td>
<td>I wasn’t invited, but I went.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past progressive</td>
<td>was/were being + pp</td>
<td>I felt I was being watched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>have/has been + pp</td>
<td>Has Mary been told?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past perfect</td>
<td>had been + pp</td>
<td>I knew I had been forgotten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will future</td>
<td>will be + pp</td>
<td>You’ll be told soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>will have been + pp</td>
<td>Everything will have been done by Tuesday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Going to future</td>
<td>am/are/is going to be + pp</td>
<td>Who’s going to be invited?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples of passive infinitives: (to) be told; (to) have been taken.
Examples of passive -ing forms: being told; having been taken.
Future progressive passives (will be being + pp) and perfect progressive passives (e.g. has been being + pp) are unusual.
Two-word verbs can have passive forms (e.g. The meeting has been put off).

#### 1 Find the passive verbs in this text. What tenses are they?

IN DENMARK, 24 people were left hanging upside down when a roller coaster car made an unscheduled stop. The passengers were stranded 60 ft in the air for 20 minutes before firemen arrived with ladders.

An official for the fairground, at Aalborg in Western Denmark, said the riders had been firmly locked in and had not been in danger. “They were given their money back,” the official said.

The **subject** of a **passive verb** corresponds to the **object** of an **active verb**.

**Passive:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>This house</th>
<th>was built in 1486.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Active:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>They</th>
<th>built this house in 1486.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>German</th>
<th>Is spoken in Austria.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Austrians</th>
<th>speak German.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
2 Write passive sentences.
1 Chinese (speak) in Singapore.
2 The Taj Mahal (build) around 1640.
3 The new hospital (open) next year.
4 She (interview) now.
5 I realised I (follow).
6 (you invite) to Andy’s party?
7 He found that all his money (steal).
8 These computers (make) in Korea.
9 Passengers (ask) not to speak to the driver.
10 Sorry about the noise – the road (mend).
11 The village church (burn down) last year.
12 A Roman pavement (just find) under Oxford Street.

With a passive, we can use by + noun if we need to say who does the action.
This house was built in 1486 by Sir John Latton.

3 Make the sentences passive. Use by ... only if it is necessary to say who does/did the action.
1 Shakespeare wrote ‘Hamlet’.
2 They have arrested her for shoplifting.
3 They are repairing your car now.
4 People in Chile speak Spanish.
5 Has anybody asked Peter?
6 My mother made this ring.
7 Electricity drives this car.
8 Somebody will tell you where to go.
9 A drunken motorist knocked her down.
10 Liverpool beat Manchester 3–0 yesterday.
11 The Chinese invented paper.
12 You need hops to make beer.
13 They don’t sell stamps in bookshops.
14 The directors are still considering your application.

4 Choose the correct version of the cartoon caption.

'Bad news, Cromwell – you’re replaced / you’re being replaced / you were replaced by a machine.'
reasons for using **passives**

**DO IT YOURSELF**

1 Rule study. Read the text and then do the rest of the exercise.

A **DRIVER** has been sent to jail for 90 days for driving with excess alcohol.

Graham Smith, 29, of North Street, Barton, was stopped by police officers near his home last November and was found to have drunk almost twice the legal limit for drivers, Didcot magistrates heard on Thursday.

Twelve months earlier Smith had been disqualified from driving for three years for drink-driving.

He was disqualified for twelve months in 1986 for a similar offence.

Mr Peter Jones, defending, said Smith had used the car to visit a sick friend.

He said Smith was depressed after the visit, and went to a pub and drank five or six pints before driving home.

He was caught by police during a routine speed check in Wantage Road, Barton.

The following expressions in the text have passive verbs. Would it be easy to rewrite the text with active verbs (e.g. *... sent a disqualified driver to jail; police officers stopped Graham Smith*)?

A disqualified driver **has been sent** to jail

Graham Smith **... was stopped** by police officers

**... was found** to have drunk almost twice the legal limit

Smith **had been disqualified** from driving

He **was banned** for twelve months

He **was caught** by police

Which two rules are best? Check your answers in the key.

1 We use passives when we are interested in **what happens**, not **who it happens to**.

2 Passives are common when we are thinking about **what is done** to the person or thing that we are interested in, not about what he/she/it does.

3 Passives can help us to go on talking about the **same thing**, in cases where an active verb would need an **unwanted new subject**.

4 Passives are best in a **formal** style. Actives are more **informal**.

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
2 Choose the best way of continuing after each sentence.
   1 He lives in a small house.  a. Somebody built it about forty years ago.
      b. It was built about forty years ago.
   2 English is worth learning.  a. People speak it in a lot of countries.
      b. It is spoken in a lot of countries.
   3 He got a sports car, but he didn’t like it.  a. So he sold it again.
      b. So it was sold again.
   4 My nephew is an artist.  a. He has just painted another picture.
      b. Another picture has just been painted by him.
   5 The new Virginia Meyer film is marvellous.  a. They are showing it at
      our local cinema.  b. It is being shown at our local cinema.

\[\text{△} \] 3 Choose the best sentence from each pair to build up a continuous text.
   1 a. HOW BOOKS ARE MADE
      b. HOW PEOPLE MAKE BOOKS
   2 a. First of all, the printers print big sheets of paper.
      b. First of all, big sheets of paper are printed.
   3 a. Each sheet contains the text of a number of pages (e.g. 32).
      b. The text of a number of pages (e.g. 32) is contained in each sheet.
   4 a. People fold and cut the sheets to produce sections of the book.
      b. The sheets are folded and cut to produce sections of the book.
   5 a. These sections are called signatures.
      b. We call these sections signatures.
   6 a. The printers put all the signatures together in the correct order.
      b. All the signatures are put together in the correct order.
   7 a. Then they are bound together and their edges are trimmed.
      b. Then they bind the signatures together and trim the edges.
   8 a. Finally, the cover – which has been printed separately – is attached.
      b. Finally, they attach the cover – which they have printed separately.
   9 a. Now the publishers can publish the book.
      b. Now the book can be published.

\[\text{DO IT YOURSELF}\]

4 Change these sentences as in the example. Then think about why
   this makes them better, and check your answers in the key.
   1 That she had not written to her parents for over two years surprised me.
      \textit{I was surprised that she had not written to her parents ...}
   2 That nobody was prepared to take him to hospital shocked us.
   3 That Mary wanted to tell everybody what to do annoyed me.
   4 That George rang me up at three o’clock in the morning to tell me he was
      in love again didn’t please me.
   5 The fact that he looked completely different from the last time I had met
      him confused me. \textit{(I was confused by ...)}
passives: verbs with two objects

Verbs with two objects (see page 183) have two possible passive structures.

**ACTIVE**
They gave the winner a prize.
They gave a prize to the winner.

**PASSIVE**
The winner was given a prize.
A prize was given to the winner.

We choose the structure which fits best with what comes before and after (see page 178). The structure with the **person** as subject is probably more common.

1 **Change the structure.**
   1. Nothing was sent to me.  *I was sent nothing.*
   2. Papers were brought to us to sign.
   3. A clock was given to Henry when he retired.
   4. Stories were read to the children.
   5. £5,000 is owed to me.
   6. A new job has been offered to me.
   7. French is taught to us by Mrs Lee.
   8. A car has been lent to me for the week.
   9. A full explanation was promised to us.
  10. A lot of lies were told to me by the secretary.

2 **Complete the text with expressions from the box.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>had been given</th>
<th>had been told</th>
<th>had never been taught</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>was given (twice)</td>
<td>was offered</td>
<td>was promised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was shown</td>
<td>wasn't being paid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I'll never forget my first day at that office. I 1. to arrive at 8.30. But when I got there the whole place seemed to be empty. I didn't know what to do, because I 2. no information about the building or where I was going to work, so I just waited around until some of the secretaries began to turn up. Finally I 3. a dirty little office on the fifth floor, where I 4. a desk in a corner. Nothing happened for an hour; then I 5. some letters to type on a computer by one of the senior secretaries. This wasn't very successful, because I 6. how to use a computer. (In the letter I 7. when I 8. the job, I 9. computer training, but they'd obviously forgotten about this.) By lunchtime things hadn't got any better, and I decided that I 10. enough to put up with this nonsense, so I walked out and didn't go back.

3 **Complete these sentences any way you like.**

1. I was given _ last Christmas / for my last birthday /  
2. I have often been given _  
3. I have never been given _
**passives: progressive, perfect etc**

Further practice on some passive verb forms.

1. **Present progressive passive.** Imagine you are in a busy hotel at midday. Make sentences to say what is being done, using words from the two boxes and the present progressive passive. Example:

   *Beds are being made.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>beds</th>
<th>bills</th>
<th>coffee</th>
<th>drinks</th>
<th>food</th>
<th>luggage</th>
<th>money</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>new guests</td>
<td>reservations</td>
<td>rooms</td>
<td>tables</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   | bring down | change | clean | lay | make | order | pay |
   | prepare | serve | take | welcome |      |         |     |

2. **Present perfect passive.** Imagine that, rich and famous, you return to your old home town after fifty years. A lot of things are different. Make sentences, using words from the boxes and the present perfect passive. Example:

   *The Café Royal has been turned into a casino.*

   | Café Royal | houseboats | new car park | new schools |
   | opera house | old fire station | ring road | station | streets |
   | town centre | statue of you | Super Cinema | your house |

   | build | modernise | put up in park | rebuild | widen |
   | turn into casino / floating restaurants / museum / supermarket / theatre / pedestrian precinct |

3. **Infinitives and -ing forms.** Make some sentences beginning *I (don’t) like ... ing or I (don’t) want to ...,* using verbs from the box. Examples:

   *I like being talked to. I don’t want to be forgotten.*

   | admire | criticise | forget | give presents | ignore |
   | invite out | laugh at | like | listen to | look at |
   | love | need | shout at | take seriously | talk about |
   | talk to | undervalue |
passives: complex structures

Note these passive structures. They are mostly rather formal.

A active object complement → passive subject complement

ACTIVE
The Queen considered him a genius.
They elected Mrs Robins President.
The others call him stupid.
You've made me very happy.

PASSIVE
He was considered a genius.
Mrs Robins was elected President.
He is called stupid by the others.
I have been made very happy.

B structure with introductory it: It is thought/believed etc that ...

It is thought that the Minister will resign.
At the time, it was believed that illnesses were caused by evil spirits.
It is expected that the company will become profitable in the New Year.

C subject + passive verb + infinitive

... is thought/believed/said/asked/seen/made etc to ...

She is thought to have left home.
They are said to be millionaires.
I was asked to help.

Note that we use to-infinitives in the passive after see, hear and make.

He was seen to enter the bank.
I was made to tell them everything.

D structure with there is: There is thought/said etc to be ...

There are thought to be fewer than twenty people still living in the village.
There were said to be ghosts in the house, but I never heard anything.

▲ 1 Make these sentences passive, using one of the above structures.

1 People think the government will fall.
2 We appointed Mr Evans secretary.
3 The villagers called her a witch.
4 People believed that fresh air was bad for sick people.
5 Some people say that there are wolves in the mountains.
6 Police think the man holding the hostages is heavily armed.
7 They say he is in an agitated state.
8 Everybody considered her strange.
9 We expect that the rate of inflation will rise.
10 They say he is somewhere in Germany.
11 Somebody saw Harris leave the plane in Ontario.
12 People think that she died in a plane crash.
13 People believed that the earth was the centre of the universe.
14 They think that there is oil under Windsor Castle.
15 They made me give them details of my bank accounts.
verbs with two objects

Many verbs can have two objects – one direct and one indirect. Usually the indirect object refers to a person, and this often comes first.

He gave his wife a camera. I wish you a Merry Christmas.

If we put the indirect object last, we use a preposition (usually to or for).

I passed my licence to the policeman.
Mother bought the ice cream for you, not for me.

1 Change the structure. Examples:

I gave my sister some flowers.
I gave some flowers to my sister.
Let me make some tea for you.
Let me make you some tea.

1 Could you send me the bill?
2 I've bought a present for you.
3 Leave me some potatoes.
4 I lent Bill £5 yesterday.
5 Show Granny your picture.
6 Read the letter to me, will you?
7 She teaches adults French.
8 I took the report to Mrs Samuels.
9 Would you get me a beer?
10 We owe £20,000 to the bank.

2 Write five sentences with two objects beginning I would like to give/send ..., using verbs from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common verbs with two objects:</th>
<th>bring</th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>cost</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>leave</th>
<th>lend</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>offer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>owe</td>
<td>pass</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>promise</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>wish</td>
<td>write</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Explain, say, suggest and describe do not have the indirect object first.

Can you explain the plan to us? (NOT Can you explain us the plan?)
I've come to say goodbye to you. (NOT ... to say you goodbye.)
I suggested a new method to her. (NOT I suggested her a new method.)
Describe your wife to me. (NOT Describe me your wife.)
verbs with prepositions and particles

PREPOSITIONS:
after at during for from into of out of to
with without

(ADVERB) PARTICLES:
ahead aside away back forward home out

BOTH PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES:
about across along (a)round before behind by
down in inside near off on outside over
past through under up

English has many two-word verbs, made up of a verb and a small word like at, in, on, up. Two-word verbs are very common in an informal style.

1 Match the two-word verbs and the more formal one-word verbs.
Example:
look for - seek

| blow up | break up | get up | give up | go away |
go into | look for | put off | send back | talk about |
think over | turn up |
abandon | arrive | consider | discuss | disintegrate |
Enter | explode | leave | postpone | return | rise | seek |

The small word in a two-word verb may be a preposition or an adverb particle. (A good dictionary will tell you which.) There are some differences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB + PREPOSITION</th>
<th>VERB + ADVERB PARTICLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Look at this.</td>
<td>Look out!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Don’t sit on that chair.</td>
<td>Sit down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She climbed up the ladder.</td>
<td>She cut the wood up / cut up the wood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I fell in the river.</td>
<td>I filled the form in. / I filled in the form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He got off the bus.</td>
<td>Switch the light off. / Switch off the light.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 296–302.
DO IT YOURSELF

2 Which three rules are correct? Check your answers in the key.

1  Verbs with prepositions are normally followed by objects.
2  Some verbs with prepositions don’t have objects.
3  Verbs with adverb particles are normally followed by objects.
4  Some verbs with adverb particles don’t have objects.
5  Prepositions can come just after their objects.
6  Adverb particles can come just after their objects.

An adverb particle must go after a pronoun object.

She cut it up. (NOT She cut up it.)  Switch it off. (NOT Switch off it.)

Compare the word order with a preposition and a pronoun object.
She climbed up it. (NOT She climbed it up.)  He got off it.

▲ 3 Change the object to a pronoun; change the word order if necessary. Examples:

Sit on the wall.  →  Sit on it.
Switch on the light.  →  Switch it on.

1  We talked about the accident. (preposition)  6  She put the dress on. (adv. part.)
2  I put off the meeting. (adverb particle)  7  I’m looking for my bag. (prep.)
3  Could you look after the children? (prep.)  8  I wrote down the address. (adv. part.)
4  We broke off our relationship. (adv. part.)  9  I sent the steak back. (adv. part.)
5  Can you clean up the kitchen? (adv. part.)  10  I stood on the table. (prep.)

▲ 4 Look at the adverb particles in the following sentences, and choose the best meaning from the box for each one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>away</th>
<th>further</th>
<th>higher</th>
<th>into pieces</th>
<th>louder</th>
<th>quieter</th>
<th>working</th>
<th>not working</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>on paper</td>
<td>to various people</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1  He drove off.
2  Write it down.
3  The heater’s off.
4  Turn the radio down.
5  Can you cut up the onions?
6  I’ve sent out the invitations.
7  Go on.
8  Prices are going up.
9  Is the printer on?
10  Who turned the music up?

Note the position of prepositions and particles in passive sentences: after the main verb. (See also page 292.)

Their wedding has been put off.  All the lights were switched on.
She likes to be looked at.  He’s already been spoken to.

Some verbs have both prepositions and particles: e.g. get on with, look out for.
structures with get

Get has different meanings in different structures.

Where can I get some stamps? She got a letter from her mother.
It's getting late. The problem is getting worse.
What time do you usually get up? It takes me an hour to get to work.

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Look at the examples above, and decide which structure goes with which meaning. Check your answer in the key.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURES</th>
<th>MEANINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get + direct object</td>
<td>move, change position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get + adjective</td>
<td>receive, obtain, fetch, buy ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get + adverb particle / preposition</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Can you match the expressions with get and their more formal equivalents? Example:

get older — age

greater — greater

get across | get better | get bigger | get off | get older
get on     | get out of | get over   | get smaller | get to | get up

age      | alight from, leave (public transport)
board (public transport) | cross | decrease, shrink
improve | increase, grow | leave | reach | recover from
rise (from bed)

3 Complete the sentences using expressions with get.

1 My English is ____ing ____.
2 Ann ____ her car and drove away.
3 ____ the bus opposite the cinema, and ____ at the second stop.
4 What are you doing in my room? ____!
5 If you go out in the rain without a coat, you’ll ____.
6 If you don’t put on a sweater, you’ll ____.
7 I don’t want to ____; I’m going to die young.
8 If I don’t have breakfast, I ____ really ____ about eleven o’clock.
9 I’m ____ing ____. I think I’ll go to bed.
10 It ____ very early in winter.
Get is often used with a past participle.

Common expressions:
- get dressed
- get changed
- get lost
- get married
- get divorced
- get broken
- get drowned

This structure can be similar to a passive verb.

Joe got arrested for drunken driving last week. (= ... was arrested ...)
They had a dog, but it got run over.
We never get invited anywhere.

4 Put together the beginnings and ends, using a structure with get + past participle. Example:

'Ann and Bill are getting divorced.' 'But they've only been married a year.'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Ann and Bill are (divorce).'</td>
<td>'But they've only been married a year.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Shall we go swimming?'</td>
<td>'Eight o'clock.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'What time do the animals (feed)?'</td>
<td>'OK. I'll just go and (change).'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Every time he goes walking in the country</td>
<td>and go to bed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His glasses (break)</td>
<td>but we (cut off).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was talking to her on the phone</td>
<td>he (lose).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm going to (undress)</td>
<td>in the fight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you leave your bag there,</td>
<td>it'll (steal).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That child takes an hour</td>
<td>next April.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They're going to (marry)</td>
<td>to (dress) in the morning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can often add a direct object to structures with get. Compare:

Get out of here!
I can't get warm.
You'd better get dressed.

Get him out of here!
I can't get my feet warm.
You'd better get that child dressed.

'I still say she's too young to get married.'
infinitives

There are simple, progressive, perfect and passive infinitives, with and without to (see page 190).

- **Simple:** I want to see the manager. It may rain.
- **Progressive:** It's nice to be sitting here. You must be joking.
- **Perfect:** I'm glad to have seen her. She could have told us.
- **Passive:** She likes to be liked. It will be posted today.

There are also perfect progressive and perfect passive infinitives.

- **Perfect Progressive:** I'd like to have been sitting there when she walked in.
- **Perfect Passive:** You could have been killed.

Negative infinitives are made with not (to).

- Try not to be late. (NOT try to don't be late.)
- I'm sorry not to have phoned.
- You should not worry.

1 Put in the right kind of infinitive.

1 I ought (work) right now.
2 Your watch will (repair) by Tuesday.
3 I'd like (go) home early today.
4 I'd like (see) her face when she opened the letter.
5 She must (have) a shower – I can hear the water running.
6 It's important (listen) to people.
7 She hopes (choose) for the national team.
8 Try (not be) back late.
9 You should (tell) me you were ill.
10 He doesn't like (interrupt) while he's working.

2 Say what you think the woman in the pictures is doing. Begin She could/may/must be ...ing or She seems to be ...ing. Example:

1 She may be cycling.
perfect infinitives (to have gone etc)

Perfect infinitives have the same kind of meaning as perfect or past tenses.

I’m glad to have left school. (= ... that I have left school.)
She was sorry not to have seen Bill. (= ... that she had not seen Bill.)
We hope to have finished the job soon. (= ... that we will have finished ...)
I seem to have annoyed Anne yesterday. (= It seems that I annoyed ...) 

1 Rewrite these sentences using perfect infinitives.
1 I’m glad I’ve met you.
2 I was sorry I had disturbed him.
3 I expect I’ll have passed all my exams by June.
4 It seems that you made a mistake. (You seem ...)
5 I’m happy that I’ve had a chance to talk to you.
6 I was disappointed that I had missed the party.
7 It seems that she’s got lost.
8 She was pleased that she had found the house.

With was/were, would like and meant, perfect infinitives often refer to unreal situations that are the opposite of what really happened.

He was to have gone to art college but he fell ill. (He didn’t go.)
I’d like to have been sitting there when she walked in. (I wasn’t there.)
I meant to have telephoned but I forgot.

2 Rewrite the sentences as shown.
1 She didn’t marry a friend of her parents. (was to)
   She was to have married a friend of her parents.
2 I didn’t see his face when he realised what had happened. (would like to)
3 He didn’t finish all his work by three o’clock. (mean)
4 We didn’t spend a week skiing. (were to)
5 It wasn’t the happiest week of my life. (was to)
6 She didn’t say goodbye to everybody before she left. (mean)
7 I didn’t live in the seventeenth century. (would like)
8 He didn’t play in the Cup Final. (was to)

For perfect infinitives after modals (e.g. should have gone), see page 122.
infinitive with and without to

We use the infinitive without to after the modal verbs can, could, may, might, must, shall, should, will and would, and after had better and needn’t.

Could you help me? (NOT Could you to help me?)
You should try to forget about it.
‘Can I give you a lift?’ ‘No, thanks, I’d rather walk.’
She’d better go home now.
You needn’t worry.

Note also the structure with Why (not) ...?
Why worry?
Why not give him socks for Christmas?

In most other cases, we use the infinitive with to.

I want to have a rest. (NOT I want have a rest.)
It’s necessary to plan carefully. (NOT It’s necessary plan carefully.)

The infinitive with to is used after the modal verb ought.
We ought to see if Pat’s OK.

1 Change the sentences as shown.
1 I couldn’t understand the timetable. (wasn’t able)
   I wasn’t able to understand the timetable.
2 It’s important to eat enough. (You should)
3 I’d like to go sailing this summer. (I might)
4 She will probably get married in June. (She expects)
5 I said I would help her. (I agreed)
6 It’s necessary to make careful plans. (We must)
7 Perhaps he’s ill. (He seems)
8 I want to change my job. (I wish I could)
9 I may come and see you next week. (I hope)
10 You don’t need to apologise. (You needn’t)
11 They will open a new branch in North London. (They have decided)
12 I will certainly pay you on Saturday. (I promise)
13 I couldn’t find the ticket office. (I didn’t manage)
14 I prefer to go by myself. (I would rather)
15 She said she wouldn’t see him again. (She refused)
16 I can play chess. (I’ve learnt)
I don't want to etc

We can use to for the infinitive of a repeated verb, if the meaning is clear.

'Are you moving?' 'We hope to.' (= ... 'We hope to move.')
'Come and dance.' 'I don't want to.'
'You made Ann cry.' 'I didn't mean to.'

1 Put the beginnings and ends together.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Ann really upset Granny.'</td>
<td>but we can't afford to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Are you enjoying your new job?'</td>
<td>'He seems to.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Can I see you home?'</td>
<td>'I don't really want to — it's too cold.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Can you mend this by Tuesday?'</td>
<td>'I intend to. They can't go on keeping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Did you get my coat from the cleaner's?'</td>
<td>the whole street awake every night.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Do you collect stamps?'</td>
<td>'I'd like to, but I'm working late.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Do you think he knows what he's doing?'</td>
<td>'I'll try to, but I can't promise.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Do you want to come out with us tonight?'</td>
<td>'I'm sure she didn't mean to.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Does she think she'll win?'</td>
<td>'If you'd like to.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'How would you and Sue like to spend the weekend with us?'</td>
<td>'No, but I used to.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I think you ought to see the police about the people next door.'</td>
<td>'Sorry, I forgot to.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Shall we go swimming?'</td>
<td>'We don't need to — there's always plenty of room.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Should we book seats in advance?'</td>
<td>'We'd love to.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We'd like to move to a bigger house,</td>
<td>'Well, I'm starting to.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'Yes, she expects to.'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We cannot usually drop to.

'Come and have a drink.' 'I'd like to.' (NOT 'I'd like...')

But we can drop to in the expressions if you like/want, when you like/want and as you like.

'Can I help?' 'If you like.' We'll stop when you want.

'I can say we live in a fascist state if I want to. It's a free country.'
infinitive of purpose

We can use an infinitive to say why somebody does something.

*She sat down to rest.* (NOT ... for-rest, or ... for-resting.)

*In order to ... and so as to ... are common before be, know and have; and before other verbs in a more formal style.*

*I got up early in order to be ready to leave at eight.*

*I studied English in order to have a better chance of getting a job.*

*I came to Britain so as to know more about British culture.*

*In order and so as are normal before not to.*

*I spoke quietly so as not to frighten her.* (NOT I spoke quietly not to ...)

1 Write sentences to say why people go to some of the following places. Begin You go ...

1 a library _You go to a library to borrow books._
2 a bookshop
3 a cinema
4 a theatre
5 a swimming pool
6 a gymnasium
7 a driving school
8 a station
9 an airport
10 a travel agent's
11 a church
12 a football stadium
13 a bank
14 a post office
15 a restaurant
16 a supermarket
17 a garage
18 a newsagent

"Please – I come here to forget my troubles."

2 Write a sentence to say why you are learning English. (To get a better job? To study something else? To travel? To ...?) If you can work with other students, find out why they are learning English.
interested and interesting etc

**Interested, bored, excited etc** say how people feel.
**Interesting, boring, exciting etc** describe the people or things that cause the feelings.

I was very **interested** in the lesson. (NOT I was very **interesting** ...)
His lessons are always **interesting**. (NOT His lessons are ... **interested**.)
Do you ever get **bored** at work?
My job’s pretty **boring**.

1 **Complete the words.**

1 I was surpris ___ to see Ann there.
2 It was surpris ___ to see her.
3 I find this work very tir ___.
4 It makes me tir ___.
5 Her exam results were disappoint ___.
6 She was pretty disappoint ___.
7 She was excit ___ about her new job.
8 It was an excit ___ new challenge.
9 We were shock ___ to hear about your brother.
10 The news was really shock ___.
11 His explanations are confus ___.
12 Listening to him, I got confus ___.
13 I get annoy ___ when people break promises.
14 It’s annoy ___ when that happens.

2 **Look at the cartoon. Who is boring?**

‘No really, your husband’s right, it is late and we must go.’

3 **What are the people interested in? Make sentences. Example:**

*An astronomer is interested in the stars.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>astronomer</th>
<th>botanist</th>
<th>cook</th>
<th>doctor</th>
<th>explorer</th>
<th>fashion designer</th>
<th>zoologist</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>geographer</td>
<td>historian</td>
<td>linguist</td>
<td>mathematician</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>animals</th>
<th>clothes</th>
<th>food</th>
<th>languages</th>
<th>medicine</th>
<th>numbers</th>
<th>places</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plants</td>
<td>the past</td>
<td>the stars</td>
<td>travel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
-ing forms as subjects, objects etc

We can use -ing forms as subjects, objects or complements.

*Smoking* is bad for you. (subject)
*I hate packing.* (object)
*My favourite activity is reading.* (complement)

An -ing form can have its own object.
*Smoking cigarettes* is bad for you.
*I hate packing suitcases.*
*My favourite activity is reading poetry.*

1 Complete the sentences with -ing forms of the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>answer</th>
<th>climb</th>
<th>drink</th>
<th>forget</th>
<th>hear</th>
<th>learn</th>
<th>lie</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>ski</td>
<td>type</td>
<td>watch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ____ too much alcohol is very bad for you.
2. I don’t like ____ bills.
3. He really enjoys ____ his own voice.
4. What's wrong with ____ in bed all day?
5. Her favourite sports are ____ and ____ mountains.
6. ____ languages is hard work.
7. I hate ____ goodbye.
8. ____ is better than remembering.
9. ____ animals can teach you a lot.
10. ‘What's your job?’ ‘____ the phone and ____ letters.’

2 If you can work with other students, find out what their favourite activities are. They should use ...ing in their answers.

That’s not writing, that’s typing.
Capote’s criticism of Kerouac

Writing is nothing more than a guided dream.
J.L. Borges

Writing is easy; all you do is sit staring at a blank sheet of paper until the drops of blood form on your forehead.
Gene Fowler

First I write one sentence: then I write another. That’s how I write. And so I go on.
But I have a feeling writing ought to be like running through a field.
L. Strachey

There are three rules for writing the novel. Unfortunately, no one knows what they are.
W. Somerset Maugham

All good writing is swimming under water and holding your breath.
F. Scott Fitzgerald

Writing a book of poetry is like dropping a rose petal down the Grand Canyon and waiting for the echo.
Dorothea
d Marquis
We can use a determiner (e.g. the, this, my) or a possessive's before an -ing form.

the rebuilding of the cathedral    Do you mind my smoking?
I don't like his borrowing my things without asking.
What's all this shouting?
John's leaving home upset everybody.

Object forms are possible instead of possessives, especially after a verb or preposition. They are less formal.

I don't like him borrowing my things without asking.
She was upset about John leaving home.

3 Make these sentences less formal.

1  Do you mind my asking you a question?
2  I do not appreciate your shouting at me.
3  I could not understand Pat's wanting to pay for everybody.
4  What is the use of their asking all these questions?
5  The delay was caused by Peter's needing to see a doctor.
6  I was astonished at your expecting us to give you a room.
7  The holiday was ruined by Ann's having to go home early.
8  She cannot stand my telling her what to do.

No is often used with an -ing form to say that something is not allowed.

NO SMOKING    NO PARKING    NO WAITING

‘Sorry sir, no smoking in the museum.’

For more about -ing forms after verbs, nouns and adjectives, see pages 199–209.
preposition + -ing

We use -ing forms after prepositions.

You can only live for a few days **without drinking**.
(NOT ... **without to drink**.)

1 Make ten or more sentences from the table. You can use the same preposition in more than one sentence. Example:

*Are you interested in coming to Greece with us?*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Are you interested</th>
<th>about answering that child’s questions.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you feel</td>
<td>as well as changing her job, but I don’t think she will.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you have time to do anything else</td>
<td>at coming to Greece with us?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He insisted</td>
<td>besides convincing the police that she was not a burglar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He passed his exams</td>
<td>for cooking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How</td>
<td>in disturbing you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I apologise</td>
<td>instead of eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I like walking</td>
<td>like going out to a restaurant tonight?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I sometimes dream</td>
<td>of having time to read all my books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m fed up</td>
<td>on helping me?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m not capable</td>
<td>without looking after the children?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m tired</td>
<td>with moving to Canada.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She succeeded</td>
<td>without not doing any work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She talked</td>
<td>with paying for everything.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She’s keen</td>
<td>with playing football.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She’s very good</td>
<td>with seeing George next week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thank you</td>
<td>with selling things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We’re excited</td>
<td>with staying at home?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We’re thinking</td>
<td>with swimming and dancing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why don’t you come out with us</td>
<td>with telling me the truth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can’t live</td>
<td>with understanding this – it’s too difficult.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete this sentence in five or more different ways:

*I couldn’t live without ____-ing (____).*

For *after, before, when, while* and *since + -ing*, see page 240. For *-ing* after the preposition *to*, see page 198.
preposition + -ing: special cases

We use **by ...ing** to say how – by what **method or means** – we do something.
We use **for ...ing** to give the purpose of something – to say what it is used for.
**On doing** something (formal) means ‘**when / as soon as** you do something’.

You can find out somebody’s phone number **by looking** in the directory.
He made his money **by buying** and selling houses.
I’ve bought some special glue **for mending** broken glass.
‘What’s that funny knife for?’ ‘Opening letters.’
**On hearing** the fire alarm, go straight to the nearest exit.
**On arriving** at the office, she noticed that her secretary was absent.

1 Find the answers in the box; write them with **by ...ing**.

look in a dictionary oil it play loud music rob a bank
stroke it switch on the ignition take an aspirin
use an extinguisher

1 How do you make a cat happy? **By stroking it.**
2 How can you annoy your neighbours?
3 How can you get money fast?
4 How do you stop a door squeaking?
5 How do you find out what a word means?
6 How can you cure a headache?
7 How can you put a fire out?
8 How do you start a car?

2 Write sentences to say what these things are for. Example:

* A telephone is for talking to people who are a long way away.

3 Write a sentence beginning **On arriving home yesterday, I ...**
to ...ing

The preposition to is followed by an -ing form.

I look forward to your letter / to hearing from you. (To is a preposition used after look forward – it can be followed by a noun or an -ing form.)

Compare: I hope to hear from you. (To is part of the infinitive after hope, not a preposition – it couldn’t be followed by a noun.)

Other expressions followed by to ...ing: be/get used to, object to.

If you come to England you’ll soon get used to driving on the left.

I object to people trying to sell me things over the telephone.

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Choose the best explanation of each expression. Check your answers in the key.

1 I look forward to seeing you.
A It gives me pleasure to think that I will see you.
B I know I will see you.
C I hope I will see you.

2 I’m used to driving in London.
A I drive in London regularly.
B In the past, I drove in London regularly.
C I have driven in London so often that it seems easy and natural.

3 I object to paying good money for badly made products.
A This often happens to me.
B I am not pleased when this happens.
C I try to stop this happening.

2 Here are some sentences taken from real conversations. Can you put together the beginnings and ends, using to ...ing?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aren’t you used (walk) Starting at half four’s no problem –</td>
<td>back to school. difficult kids.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I look forward (receive)</td>
<td>I’m not used (come) this way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I look forward (see) you again</td>
<td>I’m used (get up) early.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I object (pay) for it.</td>
<td>in six months’ time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ll never get used (sleep)</td>
<td>It should be free.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m not looking forward (go)</td>
<td>it’s hard to be without it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m not sure where to turn.</td>
<td>on the floor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you’re used (have) money,</td>
<td>this far?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sean’s used (deal) with</td>
<td>your comments.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For used to + infinitive (e.g. I used to be shy when I was younger), see page 128.
verb + infinitive or -ing form

Some verbs are followed by the infinitives of other verbs. Example: want.
Some verbs are followed by the -ing forms of other verbs. Example: enjoy.

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Do you know which verbs are followed by infinitives and which are followed by -ing forms? Make two lists; then check them in the key.

| agree | avoid | can't help |
| dare | decide | deny | expect |
| (can't) face | fail | fancy |
| feel like | finish | give up |
| happen | hope | imagine |
| keep (on) | manage | mean |
| mind | miss | offer |
| postpone | practise | prepare |
| pretend | promise | put off |
| refuse | risk | seem |
| spend time | (can't) stand | suggest |
| wish |

2 Put in the correct forms of the verbs.

1 You can't help (like) him.
2 We decided (stay) at home.
3 We expect (hear) from Ann soon.
4 Do you fancy (go) out tonight?
5 I don't feel like (cook).
6 When do you finish (study)?
7 I've given up (smoke).
8 Imagine (be) married to her!
9 I managed (find) a taxi.
10 Would you mind (pass) the bread?
11 I missed (see) the beginning of the film.
12 She pretended (be) ill.
13 Don't put off (see) the doctor.
14 He spends ages (talk) on the phone.
15 I want (see) the manager.
16 Do you enjoy (watch) football?

'I don't want to go to their party and have a good time. I don't enjoy having a good time.'

Some verbs are followed by preposition + ...ing.

I'm thinking of changing my job. (NOT I'm thinking to change my job.)

For verbs that can be followed by both infinitives and -ing forms, see page 204.
We often use *go ...ing* to talk about *sporting* and *leisure* activities.

*Let's go climbing* next weekend. *Did you go dancing* last Saturday?

1. What can you do in these places?

1.  
2.  
3.  
4.  
5.  
6.  
7.  

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
need ...ing

*It needs doing* means *It needs to be done*.

*The car needs washing.* (= ... *needs to be washed.*)
*My shoes need mending.*

1. Look at the pictures. What needs doing in each one? Use the words in the box.

| clean | cook | cut | make | mend | paint | re-string | service |

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8
verb + object + infinitive

Some verbs can be followed by object + infinitive. Examples: want, prefer.

He wants me to wash his socks. (NOT He wants that I wash his socks.)
I would prefer you to pay now.

Other verbs that can be followed by object + infinitive:
advise  allow  ask  can’t bear  cause  encourage
expect  forbid  force  get  help  invite  leave
mean  need  order  persuade  remind  teach
tell  warn

1 Make sentences about Mary, using ... want(s) her to ...

Example:

Everybody wants her to do something.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Everybody</th>
<th>Her boss</th>
<th>Her daughter</th>
<th>Her husband</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Her mother</td>
<td>Her son</td>
<td>The butcher</td>
<td>The dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The government</td>
<td>The vicar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do something</th>
<th>buy her a car</th>
<th>buy him some new clothes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cook supper</td>
<td>go to church</td>
<td>leave her husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay taxes</td>
<td>take him for a walk</td>
<td>work harder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Change the sentences. Example:

I told John ‘I think you should stop smoking’. (advise)
I advised John to stop smoking.

1 They said we couldn’t look at the house. (didn’t allow)
2 I said to Jake. ‘Please be more careful.’ (ask)
3 She said to me, ‘Do try the exam.’ (encourage)
4 I think he’ll come soon. (expect)
5 I went away, so he had to solve the problem. (I left ...)
6 Was it your idea that I should pay? (Did you mean ...)
7 The captain told the men, ‘Attack!’ (order)
8 ‘Don’t forget to buy coffee,’ I told Sue. (remind)
9 She gave me lessons in cooking. (teach)
10 She mustn’t tell anybody. (I don’t want ...)

3 Complete one or more of these sentences.

1 My parents want(ed) me to _____.
2 My parents don’t/didn’t want me to _____.
3 I would like my children to _____.
4 Complete the cartoon caption with the correct structure.

'I'm not asking (you serve) me—just to include me in your conversation.'

*Let* and *make* are followed by *object + infinitive without to.*

Don't *let me forget* to phone Jill. *You make me laugh.*

Passive structures with *make* have the infinitive with *to.*

*He was made to apologise.*

5 *Let or make?* Make sentences beginning *Her parents let her ... or Her parents made her ...*

1 stay up late 6 drink beer
2 do the washing up 7 clean up her room
3 read what she liked 8 go to church
4 iron her own clothes 9 have parties
5 do her homework 10 choose her own school

6 What did your parents *let/make you* do when you were small? Write three or more sentences. If possible, find out what other students' parents *let/made* them do.

For structures with *see, hear, watch* and *feel,* see page 205.
-ing form and infinitive both possible

Some verbs can be followed by both -ing forms and infinitives. There are often important differences of meaning.

DO IT YOURSELF

Exercises 1–7: check your answers in the key.

1  *Remember, forget and regret*. Look at the examples. Which structure is used to talk about *things people did*, and which is used to talk about *things people are/were supposed to do*?

I still *remember buying* my first bicycle.
*Remember to lock* the garage door tonight.
I’ll never *forget meeting* the President.
I *forgot to buy* the soap.
I *regret leaving* school at fourteen: it was a big mistake.
We *regret to say* that we are unable to help you.

2  *Go on*. Look at the examples. Which structure is used for a change to a new activity, and which is used for continuation of an activity?

She *went on talking* about her illness for hours.
Then she *went on to talk* about her other problems.

3  *Allow and permit*. When do we use an -ing form and when do we use an infinitive?

We don’t *allow/permit smoking*.
We don’t *allow/permit people to smoke*.

4  *Stop*. One structure says that an activity *stops*; the other gives the reason for *stopping*. Which is which?

I’ve *stopped smoking*.
I *stopped* for a few minutes to *rest*.

5  *Like, love, hate and prefer*. Both structures can be used except – when?

Do you *like dancing / to dance*?  Would you *like to dance*?
I don’t get up on Sundays. I *prefer staying / to stay* in bed.
‘Can I give you a lift?’ ‘No, thanks. I’d *prefer to walk*.’
6 Try can be used to talk about trying something difficult, or about trying an experiment (to see if something works). Which structure(s) is/are used for each meaning?

He tried sending her flowers and writing her letters, but it had no effect.
I tried to change / changing the wheel, but my hands were too cold.

7 See, hear, watch and feel. These can be followed by object + infinitive without to or object + -ing form. One is used to talk about an action going on, the other about a completed action. Which is which?

I saw her pick up the parcel, open it and take out a book.
I last saw him walking down the road towards the shops.
I heard her play Bach’s A Minor concerto on the radio last night.
As we passed his house we heard him practising the violin.

8 Choose the correct verb forms. (If two answers are possible, put both.)

1 Do you remember (meet) her last year?
2 Sorry – I forgot (post) your letters.
3 I regret (not visit) her when she was ill.
4 We discussed the budget and then went on (talk) about sales.
5 Do you want to go on (learn) English?
6 He doesn’t allow us (make) personal phone calls.
7 The hospital only allows (visit) at weekends.
8 I like (watch) TV in the evenings.
9 Would you like (spend) the weekend with us?
10 Thanks – I’d love (come).
11 If nothing else works, try (read) the instructions.
12 I’ll try (repair) your car tomorrow.
13 I saw John (wait) for a bus as I came home.
14 I heard you (break) something – what was it?
15 I can feel something (crawl) up my leg.
16 We’ll have to stop (get) petrol.
17 He stopped (work) when he was sixty-five.
18 I regret (tell) you that you have failed your examination.

After some verbs (e.g. begin, can’t bear, continue, intend, propose, start), both -ing forms and infinitives are possible without much difference of meaning.

I began playing / to play the piano when I was six.
We must continue looking / to look for a new house.
adjective + infinitive or -ing form

Many adjectives can be followed by infinitives. This is common when we are talking about feelings and reactions.

She was very pleased to see me. I'm sorry to disturb you.

**DO IT YOURSELF**

1 Thirteen of the adjectives in the box can be used in the sentence I was ... to see her. Which five cannot? Check your answers in the key. Example:

I was afraid to see her.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>afraid</th>
<th>anxious</th>
<th>certain</th>
<th>fine</th>
<th>glad</th>
<th>happy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>intelligent</td>
<td>lazy</td>
<td>likely</td>
<td>lucky</td>
<td>ready</td>
<td>right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shocked</td>
<td>surprised</td>
<td>unusual</td>
<td>well</td>
<td>willing</td>
<td>wrong</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some other adjectives are followed by preposition + -ing form.

**A 2 Choose the right prepositions and make sensible sentences.**

**Example:**

I'm annoyed at/about having to work tonight.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I'm</th>
<th>annoyed</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>bored</th>
<th>capable</th>
<th>excited</th>
<th>fed up</th>
<th>fond</th>
<th>good</th>
<th>guilty</th>
<th>tired</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>about</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>with</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>studying.</td>
<td>breaking the speed limit.</td>
<td>listening to the children.</td>
<td>going for a long time without sleep.</td>
<td>seeing my family next weekend.</td>
<td>having to work tonight.</td>
<td>getting up early.</td>
<td>seeing the same faces every day.</td>
<td>repairing cars.</td>
<td>dancing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Write sentences about three things you are good at doing, three things you are bad at doing, and three things you are fed up with doing.
noun + infinitive or -ing form

Some nouns can be followed by infinitives; others can be followed by preposition + ...ing.

You were a fool to agree. She has a terrible fear of being alone.

DO IT YOURSELF

1. Are these nouns normally followed by infinitives or by preposition + ...ing? Make two lists; check your answer in the key.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>decision</th>
<th>difficulty</th>
<th>hope</th>
<th>idea</th>
<th>need</th>
<th>plan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thought</td>
<td>time</td>
<td>wish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Choose the correct way of completing each sentence.

1. Has she told you about her decision (to go / of going?)
2. I have difficulty (to read / in reading) quickly.
3. We have no hope (to arrive / of arriving) in time.
4. I hate the idea (to leave / of leaving) you.
5. Is there any need (to tell / of telling) Peter?
6. She has a plan (to spend / of spending) three years studying.
7. I won’t get married: I dislike the thought (to lose / of losing) my freedom.
8. It’s time (to go / for going) home.
9. I have no wish (to meet / of meeting) him again.

3. Join the beginnings and ends. Put in prepositions where necessary. Example:

Who had the idea of moving to Berlin?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Has he got any hope (pass)</td>
<td>(buy) that car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He made a decision (start)</td>
<td>(get) angry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does your fear (fly)</td>
<td>(get) up!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucy has difficulty</td>
<td>(keep) her temper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She hated the thought (die)</td>
<td>(move) to Berlin?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She was a fool</td>
<td>the exam?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There’s no need</td>
<td>(start) a business.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They have a plan</td>
<td>a new life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>stop you travelling?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who had the idea</td>
<td>without seeing the world.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
for ... to ... after adjective/noun

After an adjective or a noun, if an infinitive needs its own subject this is introduced by for. Compare:

Ann will be happy to help you.
Ann will be happy for the children to help you.

My idea was to learn Russian.
My idea was for her to learn Russian.

This structure is common after adjectives and nouns when we are talking about possibility, necessity, importance and frequency.

1  Rewrite these sentences using the structure with for ... to ...
   Example:
   She can’t come. → It’s impossible for her to come.
   1 The meeting needn’t start before eight. (There’s no need for the ...)
   2 The postman ought to come. (It’s time for ...)
   3 He’s not usually late. (It’s unusual for ...)
   4 I want the children to go to a good school. (I’m anxious for ...)
   5 John shouldn’t go to Australia. (It’s a bad idea ...)
   6 Sue shouldn’t change her job just now. (It would be a mistake ...)
   7 Can Paul come to the meeting? (Is it possible ...?)
   8 The car really should have regular services. (It’s important ...)
   9 He normally stays up late on Saturdays. (It’s normal ...)
   10 I’d be happy if you took a holiday. (I’d be happy for ...)

   We can use for with the infinitive of there is – for there to be.

   It’s important for there to be enough jobs for everybody.

2  Imagine you are planning a new town. Rewrite the following sentences using for there to be.

   1 It’s important that there should be public libraries.
   2 It’s vital that there should be a good public transport system.
   3 It’s important that there should be plenty of open spaces.
   4 It’s essential that there should be enough car parks.

   Now write five more sentences about the town using for there to be.
After some adjectives, we can use an infinitive to mean 'for people to ...'.

She's easy to amuse. (= She's easy for people to amuse.)
Just open the packet, and it's ready to eat.

3 Make some sentences from the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>is/are</th>
<th>easy</th>
<th>hard</th>
<th>difficult</th>
<th>impossible</th>
<th>nice</th>
<th>(un)pleasant</th>
<th>good</th>
<th>interesting</th>
<th>boring</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>small children</td>
<td>小孩子</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>easy</td>
<td>hard</td>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>impossible</td>
<td>nice</td>
<td>(un)pleasant</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>boring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silver</td>
<td>银色</td>
<td>are</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boiled eggs</td>
<td>水煮蛋</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lobster</td>
<td>螃蟹</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maths</td>
<td>数学</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modern music</td>
<td>现代音乐</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc</td>
<td>等等</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to</td>
<td>可以</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>please</td>
<td>请</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amuse</td>
<td>逗乐</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>理解</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean</td>
<td>干净</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen</td>
<td>听</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to watch</td>
<td>看</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook</td>
<td>烹饪</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>吃</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>喝</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>阅读</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>学</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc</td>
<td>等等</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For for ... to ... after too and enough, see page 45.
questions

From the American TV serial 'Soap'

In questions, we normally put an auxiliary verb before the subject. If there is no other auxiliary, we use do.

Have you seen Ann? (NOT You have seen Ann?)
Why are those men laughing? (NOT Why those men are laughing?)
When can I pay? (NOT When I can pay?)
What does 'gaunt' mean? (NOT What means 'gaunt'?)

We only put an auxiliary verb before the subject, not the whole verb.
Is your father coming tonight? (NOT Is coming your father tonight?)
Where are the President and his family staying? (NOT Where are staying ...?)

We do not use do with other auxiliaries or with be.
Can you tell me the time? (NOT Do you can ...?)
Are you tired?

After do, we use the infinitive without to.
What does she want? (NOT What does she wants?)
Did you go out last night? (NOT Did you went ...? OR Did you to go ...?)

1 Which is the correct caption for the cartoon?

1. Was the train very crowded, dear?
2. The train was very crowded, dear?
3. Was very crowded the train, dear?
2 Read the text, and then write questions for the answers. Example:

Two. → How many children have Joe and Pam got?

In a small village in North Yorkshire, there's a big old farmhouse where three families live together: Alice and George and their three children, Joe and Pam and their two children, and Sue and her baby daughter. The adults divide up the work between them. George does the cooking, Joe and Sue do most of the housework. Pam looks after the shopping and does the repairs, and Alice takes care of the garden. Alice, George and Sue go out to work; Joe works at home designing computer systems, and Pam, who is a painter, looks after the baby during the day. Two of the children go to school in the village, but the three oldest ones go by bus to the secondary school in the nearest town, ten miles away.

The three families get on well, and enjoy their way of life. There are a few difficulties, of course. Their biggest worry at the moment is money – one of the cars needs replacing, and the roof needs some expensive repairs. But this isn’t too serious – the bank has agreed to a loan, which they expect to be able to pay back in three years. And they all say they would much rather go on living in their old farmhouse than move to a luxury flat in a big city.

1 In North Yorkshire.
2 In a big old farmhouse.
3 Three.
4 Sue has.
5 The cooking.
6 The housework.
7 The garden.
8 At home.
9 Computer systems.
10 She's a painter.
11 Two of them.
12 By bus.
13 In the nearest town.
14 Ten miles.

We do not use do when the subject is a question word like who or what.

Who opened the window? (NOT Who did open ...?)
What happened to your arm? (NOT What did happen ...?)
Which costs more? (NOT Which does cost more?)

But we use do if the question word is the object.

Who do you believe – him or me?
What did you have for supper?
What does 'catalyst' mean?

3 Look at the text again, and write questions for these answers.

1 George does.
2 Joe and Sue.
3 Pam does them.
4 Alice.
5 Money.
6 One of the cars.
7 The roof.
2 Read the text, and then write questions for the answers. Example:

Two. → How many children have Joe and Pam got?

In a small village in North Yorkshire, there's a big old farmhouse where three families live together: Alice and George and their three children, Joe and Pam and their two children, and Sue and her baby daughter. The adults divide up the work between them. George does the cooking, Joe and Sue do most of the housework, Pam looks after the shopping and does the repairs, and Alice takes care of the garden. Alice, George and Sue go out to work: Joe works at home designing computer systems, and Pam, who is a painter, looks after the baby during the day. Two of the children go to school in the village, but the three oldest ones go by bus to the secondary school in the nearest town, ten miles away.

The three families get on well, and enjoy their way of life. There are a few difficulties, of course. Their biggest worry at the moment is money - one of the cars needs replacing, and the roof needs some expensive repairs. But this isn't too serious - the bank has agreed to a loan, which they expect to be able to pay back in three years. And they all say they would much rather go on living in their old farmhouse than move to a luxury flat in a big city.

1  In North Yorkshire. 8  At home.
2  In a big old farmhouse. 9  Computer systems.
3  Three. 10  She's a painter.
4  Sue has. 11  Two of them.
5  The cooking. 12  By bus.
6  The housework. 13  In the nearest town.
7  The garden. 14  Ten miles.

We do not use do when the subject is a question word like who or what.

Who opened the window? (NOT Who did open ...?)
What happened to your arm? (NOT What did happen ...?)
Which costs more? (NOT Which does cost more?)

But we use do if the question word is the object.

Who do you believe - him or me?
What did you have for supper?
What does 'catalyst' mean?

3 Look at the text again, and write questions for these answers.

1  George does.
2  Joe and Sue.
3  Pam does them.
4  Alice.
5  Money.
6  One of the cars.
7  The roof.
what ... like, what time, what sort etc

Note the difference between how? and what ... like?
We use how? to ask about things that change – e.g. moods, health, work.
We use what ... like? to ask about things that don't change – e.g. people's character and appearance. Compare:

'How's Joe?' 'He's very well.'
'What's Joe like?' 'Tall, good-looking, a bit shy.'

'How does she seem today?' 'Much happier.'
'What does your sister look like?' 'Short, dark and cheerful-looking.'

1 Make questions with how or what ... like.

1 ('your flat?') 'Small but very comfortable.'
2 ('your mother?') 'Fine, thanks.'
3 ('work going?') 'Not very well at the moment.'
4 ('business?') 'Terrible.'
5 ('Anne's boyfriend?') 'Not very nice.'
6 ('School?') 'Much better now.'

Other common expressions beginning with what: what time, what sort of,
what colour, what size, what make. Note the way they are used in
sentences.

What time does the film start? (NOT USUALLY At what time ...)
What sort of music do you like?
What size are your shoes?  What size shoes do you wear?
What colour are her eyes?  What colour eyes has she got?
What make is your car?     What make of car did you get?

Ever can be used with a question word to express surprise.

Who ever gave you that necklace?  What ever does she see in him?

2 Complete the questions with a suitable expression.

1 ____ jeans do you wear?  7 ____ food do you like?
2 ____ is her hair?        8 ____ are your gloves?
3 ____ books do you read?  9 ____ bike is the best?
4 ____ is your TV?         10 ____ did you find that coat?
5 ____ is the concert?     11 ____ told you you could sing?
6 ____ does the train leave? 12 ____ are you going to do?
negative structures

To make negative verb forms, we put not after an auxiliary verb or be. If there is no other auxiliary, we use do.

*We have not forgotten. It wasn’t raining. She can’t swim.*

That isn’t right. I don’t like the soup. (NOT I like not the soup.)

Do is followed by the infinitive without to.

I didn’t think. (NOT I didn’t to think / thinking / thought.)

Do is not used with other auxiliary verbs or (normally) with be.

You mustn’t worry. (NOT You don’t must-worry.)

Tea isn’t ready.

Do is not used with infinitives or -ing forms.

It’s important not to worry. (NOT ... to don’t worry.)

It’s nice sitting here and not working.

1 Correct these sentences by making them negative.

1 Marx discovered America. Marx didn’t discover America.
2 Austrians speak Japanese.
3 Roses are green.
4 Cats can fly.
5 Shakespeare was French.
6 Fridges run on petrol.
7 The sun goes round the earth.
8 Telescopes make things smaller.
9 There are seventeen players in a rugby team.
10 Bananas grow in Scotland.

We do not use do with other negative words like never or hardly.

He never works. (NOT He does never work.)

It hardly matters.

‘Leave it, Terry, I slept with him, but it didn’t mean anything.’
negative questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTRAICTED (INFORMAL)</th>
<th>UNCONTRICTED (VERY FORMAL)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Isn't it ready yet?</td>
<td>Is it not ready yet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why haven't you written to Ann?</td>
<td>Why have you not written to Ann?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can't she swim?</td>
<td>Can she not swim?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the different position of n't/not in contracted and uncontracted structures.

1 Write informal negative questions to ask somebody:

1 if she is not cold
2 why she is not eating
3 if she does not speak French
4 if the shops are not closed
5 if the postman has not come
6 if her mother is not at home

We often use negative questions to confirm that something has happened, is true, etc. The meaning is similar to 'It's true that .... isn't it?'

Didn't you go and see Helen yesterday? How is she?

We can use negative questions to make expressions of opinion less direct. Wouldn't it be better to switch the light on? (Less direct than It would be better ...)

2 Use negative questions to confirm the following ideas.

1 I think you went to Paris last week. \(\Rightarrow\) Didn't you go ....?
2 I think you speak German.
3 That looks like Pamela in the green dress.
4 I believe you studied at Cambridge.
5 Perhaps this is your coat.
6 I think your father is a doctor.
7 I thought Tony was going to come with us.
8 You'll be in Edinburgh next week, won't you?
9 I think you're making a mistake.
10 Perhaps it would be better to stop now.

Another use of negative questions is in polite invitations.

Won't you come in? \(\Rightarrow\) Wouldn't you like something to drink?

But we do not use negative questions to ask people to do things for us.
Can you help me? \(\Rightarrow\) You couldn't help me, could you?
But not Can't you help me? (This sounds like a criticism.)

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
We can also use negative questions to check that something has not happened, is not true, etc. The meaning is like ‘Is it true that ... not ...?’

\begin{align*}
\text{Don't you feel well?} & \quad \text{Oh dear. Can't they come this evening?} \\
\text{Negative questions can express surprise that something has not happened, is not happening, etc. This may sound critical.} \\
\text{Hasn't the postman come yet?} & \quad \text{Didn't she tell you she was married?} \\
\text{Can't you read?} & \quad \text{It says ‘closed’.} \\
\text{Don't you ever listen to what I say?} & \\
\end{align*}

\section*{3 Use negative questions to confirm the following ideas.}

1. It looks as if she can't swim. \(\rightarrow\) \text{Can't she swim?}
2. Is it true that she didn't pass the exam?
3. I believe you may not have paid for your ticket.
4. I think perhaps you didn't lock the door.
5. It seems as if you can't understand English. I said ‘No’.
6. I'm afraid you don't like my cooking.
7. Perhaps you didn't get the letter I sent.
8. So you didn't enjoy the film?
9. Is it true that you and John aren't going to get married?
10. It seems that you don't want any more potatoes.

\section*{In answers to negative questions, ‘Yes’ goes with or suggests an affirmative verb, and ‘No’ goes with or suggests a negative verb.}

\begin{align*}
\text{‘Don't you like it?’} & \quad \text{‘Yes (I do like it).’} \\
\text{‘Aren't you ready?’} & \quad \text{‘No (I'm not ready).’} \\
\end{align*}

\section*{4 Add Yes or No to the answers.}

1. ‘Aren't you ready?’ ‘Yes, I am.’
2. ‘Don't you like this?’ ‘I don't.’
3. ‘Can't you stop?’ ‘I can't.’
4. ‘Isn't this nice?’ ‘It is.’
5. ‘Haven't you paid?’ ‘I have.’
6. ‘Wasn't she at home?’ ‘She was.’
7. ‘Aren't you happy?’ ‘I'm not.’
8. ‘Didn't you get my letter?’ ‘I didn't.’

‘Haven't you brought any vegetables with it?’

For negative questions in exclamations, see page 221.
**not and no**

We use *not* to make a word, expression or clause negative.

*Not surprisingly,* we missed the train. (*NOT No surprisingly ...*)
The students went on strike, but *not* the teachers.
(*NOT ... *no* the teachers.*)
*I can see you tomorrow, but *not on Thursday.*
*I have *not received* his answer.*

We *don’t* usually put *not* with the *subject*. Instead, we use a structure with it.

*It wasn’t Bill who phoned, it was Pete.* (*NOT Not Bill phoned ...*)

We use *no* with a noun or -ing form to mean ‘*not any*’ or ‘*not a/an*’ (see page 35).

*No teachers* went on strike. (*= There weren’t any teachers on strike.*)
*I’ve got *no Thursdays* free this term. (*= ... *not any* Thursdays ...*)
*I telephoned, but there was *no answer.* (*= ... *not an* answer.*)

NO SMOKING

1. **Put in *not* or *no***.
   1. I like most vegetables, but ___ peppers.
   2. She was ___ able to understand him.
   3. They had ___ butter left in the shop.
   4. They repaired my watch, but ___ properly.
   5. We’ve got ___ time to talk now.
   6. I can come round, but ___ tonight.
   7. They did ___ want to help.
   8. ‘Do you smoke?’ ‘___ usually.’
   9. She’s a woman with ___ sense of humour.
   10. ‘Shall I put some music on?’ ‘OK, but ___ jazz.’

**NO-MAN’S LAND**
negatives: I don’t think etc

We usually use I don’t think + affirmative verb, not I think + negative verb.
The same is true with believe, suppose, imagine and similar verbs.

I don’t think you know Joe. (More usual than I think you don’t know Joe.)
I don’t believe she’s at home.
I don’t suppose you can lend me £5?

1 Change the sentences as in the example.

He’s not at home. (I think) ➞ I don’t think he’s at home.

1 You’re not right. (I think)
2 You haven’t met my sister. (I believe)
3 You don’t know where Ruth is. (I suppose)
4 We won’t arrive before midnight. (I imagine)
5 They don’t know what they’re doing. (I think)
6 I didn’t make myself clear. (I think)
7 You didn’t remember to bring my book back. (I suppose)
8 I haven’t got enough money. (I believe)

We use similar structures with seem, expect and want.

He doesn’t seem to like you. (Less formal than He seems not to like you.)
I don’t expect to be back before Monday. (Less formal than I expect not ...)
I never want to see you again. (More natural than I want never to see ...)

2 Change the sentences as shown.

1 I don’t think he’s well. (He doesn’t seem ...)
2 I probably won’t be home late. (I don’t expect ...)
3 I would hate to climb another mountain. (I never want ...)
4 It’s not raining, apparently. (It doesn’t seem ...)
5 I probably won’t pass the exam. (I don’t expect ...)
6 He is determined not to get married. (He never wants ...)

With hope, we make the following verb negative.

I hope it doesn’t rain. (NOT I don’t hope it rains.)
imperatives

We use **imperatives** to tell people what to do, advise them, encourage them etc.
Imperatives look the same as **infinitives without to**.
Negative imperatives begin with **do not**/**don’t**.

*Look in the mirror before you drive off.*  
*Try again.*  
*Have some more tea.*  
*Cheer up.*  
*Please do not lean out of the window.*  
*Don’t worry.*

We can use **do** to make **emphatic imperatives**.
*Do sit down!*  
*Do stop making that noise!*

1. **Read the text and put in the verbs from the box.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>add</th>
<th>bake</th>
<th>don’t use</th>
<th>mix</th>
<th>oil</th>
<th>put in</th>
<th>shape</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**POTATO PANCAKE**

| one pound of boiled potatoes | Mash the potatoes in butter. |
| two tomatoes | 1. any milk. Season. 2. the chopped onion, chopped tomato, flour, and a handful of chopped parsley. 3. well. Lightly 4. a flat baking dish and 5. the potatoes. 6. into a fairly thick circular cake. Brush lightly with melted butter and 7. in a hot oven until brown on top. |
| butter | tablespoon flour |
| seasoning | parsley |
| one small finely chopped onion |

*Bruce Beeby: Father in the Kitchen*

2. **Can you write a recipe (instructions for cooking something), or instructions for doing something else?**
Note the position of always and never: before imperatives.

Always try to tell the truth. (NOT Try always ...)  
Never do that again.

3 Put in always or never.
1 Add salt to potatoes when you cook them.
2 Check the tyres before you drive a car.
3 Cook chicken when it's frozen.
4 Wait more than fifteen minutes for somebody who's late.
5 Unplug electrical appliances before repairing them.
6 Count your change after buying something.
7 Put off till tomorrow what you can do today.
8 Say 'I will love you for ever'.
9 Pay bills the day you get them.
10 Apologise for things that are not your fault.

'Toast Training School'

In imperatives, do and don't can be used before be.

Do be quiet!  Don't be silly.

4 Make sentences beginning do be or don't be for the following situations. Use the words and expressions in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>angry</th>
<th>back by midnight</th>
<th>careful</th>
<th>frightened</th>
<th>greedy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jealous</td>
<td>on time</td>
<td>rude</td>
<td>stupid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 You are a parent; your child is eating too much.
2 Your child is going to cycle to school through heavy traffic.
3 You are just going to tell somebody that you have damaged their car.
4 Your fourteen-year-old child is going out to a party.
5 You are going into a room where a nervous old lady is alone in the dark.
6 Your ten-year-old child has just told you she is going to leave home.
7 You are arranging to meet somebody who is usually late.
8 Your child has just told you to shut up.
9 Your boyfriend/girlfriend is upset because you went out with somebody else.

5 Write some advice for people visiting your country. Do this together with other students if possible.
We can use let's (or let us – very formal) + infinitive without to to make suggestions or give orders to a group that includes the speaker.

Let's have a drink. Let's stay in this evening.

The normal negative is Let's not ...: Don’t let’s ... is informal; Let us not is very formal.

Let's not tell Granny what happened.

1 Write the suggestions, using Let's. Examples:

1. Let's go swimming.
2. Let's not go swimming.

Note also the common expressions let me see and let me think.

So what time will I get there? Let me see – suppose I start at half past six ...
What am I going to wear? Let me think – it's too cold for the black dress ...

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
exclamations

**Exclamations** with *how* and *what* are constructed differently.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HOW + ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>WHAT (+ ADJECTIVE) + NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How beautiful!</td>
<td>What a surprise!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How strange!</td>
<td>What strange people!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We do not drop articles after *What*.

*What a stupid idea!* (NOT *What stupid idea!*)

**DO IT YOURSELF**

1. Look at the examples, and write a rule to say where the subject and verb come in an exclamation. Check your answer in the key.

   *How beautiful she is!* (NOT *How she is beautiful!*)
   *How hard he works!* (NOT *How he works hard!*)
   *What a lot of languages your sister speaks!*

2. **Change the sentences into exclamations with *how* or *what*.**

   1. That's a strange picture.  
       *What a strange picture!*
   2. That's interesting.
   3. That's a nuisance.
   4. You've got big eyes, grandmother.  
       (*What big ...!*)
   5. That's disgusting.
   6. Those children are noisy.
   7. He cooks well.
   8. We were wrong.
   9. He talks a lot of nonsense.
   10. She wears funny clothes.
   11. She plays badly.
   12. I was a fool.

We can use **negative questions** (see page 214) as exclamations.

*Isn't she beautiful!*  
* Doesn't he work hard!  
* Wasn't it a surprise!*

3. **Change the sentences from Exercise 2 into exclamations with negative questions. Example:**

   *Isn't that a strange picture!*

   *How romantic! Breakfast in bed!*
there is

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THE MOST COMMON STRUCTURES WITH INTRODUCTORY THERE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>there is/are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there is/are going to be</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions: is there, are there etc
Contractions: there's (pronounced /ðeər/s, like the beginning of 'the zoo')

We use there is to say that something exists (or doesn’t exist) somewhere. It is is not used in this way.

Theres a hole in my sock. (NOT It’s a hole in my sock.)
There’s snow on the mountains.
There are two men at the door.
Once upon a time there were three little pigs.
There will be rain tonight.
There has never been anybody like you.

In an informal style we often use there’s before a plural noun.
There’s some grapes in the fridge.

1 Put in the correct form of there is(n’t).

1 ____ no water on the moon.
2 ____ no railways in the 18th century.
3 Once upon a time ____ a beautiful princess.
4 Tomorrow ____ snow.
5 ____ some soup, if you’re hungry.
6 ____ any potatoes?
7 ____ wars all through history.
8 ____ many tigers left in the wild.
9 ____ an accident – can I phone?
10 I’m afraid ____ time to see Granny.

2 Put in there’s or it’s.

1 ____ a cat in your bedroom.
2 ____ hard to understand him.
3 ____ cold tonight.
4 ____ ice on the roads.
5 ____ nice to see you.
6 ____ somebody on the phone for you.
7 ____ a problem with the TV.
8 ____ too late to go out.
9 ____ a funny smell in the kitchen.
10 ‘What’s that noise?’ ‘____ the wind.’

There is introduces indefinite subjects. Compare:

There’s a window open.
The window’s open. (NOT There’s the window open.)

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298-302.
More complicated structures:

- there may/can/must etc be
- there is certain/sure to be
- there is no need to...
- there seems/appears to be

there is likely to be
there is no sense/point/use in ...ing
there is something/anything/nothing
wrong / the matter with ...

Infinitive: there to be
-ing form: there being

Use in tags (see page 226): There will be enough, won't there?

There can also be used with auxiliary be.

There were children playing in the garden. (= Children were playing ...)

3 Put together the beginnings and ends.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>According to the forecast,</td>
<td>'He says there's nothing wrong with me.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can't see how to open the door.</td>
<td>'There seems to be something lying in the road.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm looking forward to the party.</td>
<td>any noise while I'm on the phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK, children, now I don't want there to be</td>
<td>but there may be some tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That must be Jeff.</td>
<td>if you've got a headache - you won't enjoy it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are too many people</td>
<td>it won't start.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There aren't any tickets now.</td>
<td>looking for too few jobs in this country.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There's no need to hurry.</td>
<td>There are sure to be some nice people there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There's no point in going out</td>
<td>There can't be two people who look like that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There's something the matter with the car -</td>
<td>There must be a keyhole somewhere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'What did the doctor say?'</td>
<td>there's likely to be more snow tonight. We've got plenty of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Why have we stopped?'</td>
<td>'George, is there a mountain near here?'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
dropping sentence-beginnings

In informal speech we often drop unstressed beginnings of sentences. This happens mainly with articles, possessives, personal pronouns, auxiliary verbs and be, demonstratives and introductory there is.

Car’s running badly. (= The car’s ...)
Must dash. (= I must dash.)
Won’t work. (= It won’t work.)
Be four pounds fifty. (= That’ll be ...)  

1 Put back the words that have been dropped and write the complete sentences.

1 Wife’s on holiday.
2 Couldn’t understand a word.
3 Seen Joe?
4 Careful what you say.
5 Nobody at home.
6 Don’t think so.
7 Train’s late again.
8 Know what I mean?
9 Got a pen?
10 Lost my glasses.

2 Make these sentences more informal by dropping words from the beginning.

1 I’ve changed my job.
2 She doesn’t know what she’s doing.
3 That’ll cost you £10.
4 Be careful of the flowers.
5 There’s no time to waste.
6 The bus is coming.
7 Do you speak English?
8 I haven’t been there.
9 He thinks he’s clever.
10 Have you got a light?

We only drop pronouns before stressed words.

Like your tie. Haven’t seen him. Can’t swim.
But not Have seen him. Can swim. (Affirmative auxiliaries are unstressed.)

We can drop auxiliary verbs before personal pronouns except I and it.

You coming? She want something? But not I hate? It raining?
dropping words after auxiliaries

In informal speech, we often use just an auxiliary verb instead of repeating a longer expression.

'Get up!' 'I am.' (= 'I am getting up.')
He said he'd write, but he hasn't. (= ... he hasn't written.)

If there is no auxiliary to repeat, we use do.
She said she would phone, and she did.

1 Make these conversations more natural by dropping unnecessary expressions after auxiliaries.

1 I can't see you today, but I can see you tomorrow.
2 I've bought one of those blouses, and Sue has bought one too.
3 'You wouldn't have won if I hadn't helped you.' 'Yes, I would have won.'
4 'That car needs cleaning.' 'It certainly does need cleaning.'
5 'You'd better phone Bill.' 'I have phoned Bill.'
6 'The photocopier isn't working.' 'Yes, it is working.'
7 She can't swim, but I can swim.
8 Phil doesn't want to go, and Celia doesn't want to go either.
9 She thinks I don't love her, but I do love her.

△ 2 Read the text. What words have been dropped?

'I came round because I really think the whole thing is too absurd.'
'So do I. I always did (1).'
'You can't have (2) half as much as I did (3). I mean really, when one comes to think of it, and after all these years.'
'Oh, I know. And I dare say if you hadn't (4), I should have (5) myself. I'm sure the last thing I want is to go on like this. Because, really, it's too absurd.'
'And if there's one thing I'm not, it's ready to take offence. I never have been (6), and I never shall be (7).'
'Very well, dear. Nobody wants to quarrel less than I do (8).'
'When a thing is over, let it be over, is what I always say. I don't want to say any more about anything at all. The only thing I must say is that when you say I said that everybody said that about your spoiling that child, it simply isn't what I said. That's all. And I don't want to say another thing about it.'
'Well, certainly I don't (9). There's only one thing I simply can't help saying ...'

Adapted from a piece by E M Delafield
question tags: basic rules

**Question tags** often follow sentences in speech and informal writing. They are used to check whether something is true, or to ask for agreement.

You haven't seen Joe, **have you?**  This tea isn't very nice, **is it?**

Negative tags are usually contracted. The contracted tag for *I am* is *aren't I?*  
*Nice day, **isn't it?**  I'm late, **aren't I?***

We most often put **negative tags after affirmative sentences**, and **non-negative tags after negative sentences**. We do not put tags after questions.

\[
\begin{array}{c c}
+ & - \\
- & +
\end{array}
\]

It's cold, **isn't it?**  It's not warm, **is it?**  **But not:** Is it cold, **isn't it?**

If the main sentence has an auxiliary verb or *be*, this is used in the tag. If *not, do* is used. **There can be used as a subject in tags.**

*She can swim, **can't she?**  You wouldn't like a puppy, **would you?***
*He gave you a cheque, **didn't he?**  There's a problem, **isn't there?***

1  These are sentences from real conversations. Put in the question tags.

1  I'm cooking tonight, ____?  
2  We're going to Mum's, then, ____?  
3  Your brothers are not being kind to you today, ____?  
4  I'm not quite myself, ____?  
5  They weren't ready, ____?  
6  She's not a baby now, ____?  
7  That's the law, ____?  
8  He's a lovely little boy, ____?  
9  That fireman can see them, ____?  
  Dave?  
10  It must be a year now, ____?  
11  It'll be all right, ____?  
12  They look like big candles, ____?  
13  They won't have bulbs, ____?  
14  There's a light out there, ____?  
15  Cathy's still got curly hair, ____?  
16  She doesn't look well, ____?  
17  They've been really horrible, ____?  
18  I was first really, ____?  

'**It's always poor you, isn't it. Albert?**'

---

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
question tags: advanced points

We use *they* to refer to *nobody, somebody* and *everybody* (and *no one* etc). We use *non-negative tags* after *never, no, nobody, hardly, scarcely, little.* We use *it* in question tags to refer to *nothing.*

Nobody phoned, did they?    It's hardly rained all summer, has it?
She never smiles, does she?  (NOT ... doesn't she?)
It's no good, is it?         Nothing can happen, can it?

1 Put in suitable tags.

1 Everybody's here, aren't ____?
2 You're never happy, ____?
3 There's no milk, ____?
4 Nothing matters, ____?
5 Nobody likes her, do ____?
6 She hardly spoke, ____?
7 Somebody's forgotten their coat, ____?
8 There's scarcely enough time, ____?
9 You never wrote, ____?

Informal questions/requests often use negative sentence + question tag. After imperatives, we can use *won't you?* to invite people to do things, and *will/would/can/can't/could you?* (informal) to *tell* or *ask* people to do things. After a *negative imperative* we use *will you?* After *Let's* we use *shall we?*

You can't lend me £5, can you?    Do sit down, won't you?
Give me a hand, will you?        Shut up, can't you?
Don't forget, will you?          Let's have a party, shall we?

2 Put together the sentences and tags.

| Do have some more tea          | Don't drive too fast       | Let's start again          |
| Pass me the newspaper         | You couldn't tell me the time |

| could you?          | shall we?           | will you?     | won't you? | would you? |

If a tag is a real question, it is pronounced with a rising intonation. If the tag only asks for agreement, it is pronounced with a falling intonation.

*The meeting's at four o'clock, isn't it?*    *Nice day, isn't it?*
short answers and attention signals

In conversation, we often give short answers using pronoun + auxiliary verb.

'Can he swim?' 'Yes, he can.'
'Has the rain stopped?' 'No, it hasn't.'
'Don't forget to phone.' 'I won't.'
'She likes cakes.' 'She certainly does.'

1 Write short answers for these sentences.
1 'Are you ready?' 6 'Have you seen Les?'
2 'Do you speak English?' 7 'Can you understand him?'
3 'It's too hot.' 8 'He plays well.'
4 'Don't be late.' 9 'She sounded tired.'
5 'Send me a postcard.' 10 'Say hello to Linda for me.'

Interrogative short answers using auxiliary verb + pronoun (like question tags) can express attention, interest or surprise.

'It was a terrible party.' 'Was it?' 'Yes, ...'
'We had a lovely holiday.' 'Did you?' 'Yes, we went ...'
'I've got a headache.' 'Have you, dear? I'll get you an aspirin.'
'John likes that girl next door.' 'Oh, does he?'
'I don’t understand.' 'Oh, don't you? I'm sorry.'

Negative replies to affirmative sentences can express emphatic agreement.

'It was a lovely concert.' 'Yes, wasn't it! I did enjoy it.'
'She's lost a lot of weight.' 'Yes, hasn't she?'

2 Rewrite this as a conversation, putting in interrogative short answers. Example:

'It was a lovely wedding.' 'Was it?' 'Yes. Though ...'

It was a lovely wedding. Though I didn’t think much of Maggie’s dress. That colour doesn’t suit her at all. Anyway, I don’t really go for church weddings. The service went on for ages. And I was sitting right at the back, so I couldn’t hear the vicar. The music was nice, though. They played that hymn about sheep. Lovely. I must say I didn’t enjoy the reception much. The food wasn’t very good. And the bride’s father made such a stupid speech. And I got one of my headaches. Champagne always gives me a headache. And I was sitting next to that Mrs Foster from down the road. I can’t stand that woman. She’s always criticising. Anyway, I must go. Nice to talk to you. It really was a lovely wedding.
I (don't) think so etc

We often use so in answers, instead of a that-clause. This is common after be afraid, hope, suppose, think.

'Did you lose?' I'm afraid so.'
'Do you think we'll have good weather?' 'Yes, I hope so.'
(Not 'Yes, I hope.')
'Are you ready?' 'I suppose so.' (unwilling agreement)
'Is Alex here?' 'I think so.' (Not 'I think it.' Or 'I think.')

1 Here are some exchanges taken from recorded conversations. See if you can guess which of the following expressions was used in each exchange: I'm afraid so, I hope so, I suppose so or I think so.

1 'Is it working?' 'Yes, ___.'
2 'Dead, aren't they?' '___.'
3 'Do we want it?' 'Not sure. ___.'
4 'Is that when she said it?' '___.'
5 'It should be warmer in April.' '___.'
6 'Did he know who you were?' 'Oh, yes. ___.'
7 'When is it? Tomorrow?' 'Yes, ___.'
8 'You're mean, aren't you?' '___.'
9 'It should be quite easy, though.' '___.'
10 'I could borrow one of your dresses, couldn't I?' '___.'

Negatives are: I'm afraid not, I hope not, I suppose not and (usually) I don't think so.

2 Complete the negative answers.

1 'Did you find out?' '(afraid).'
2 'Will you be home late?' 'No, (think).'
3 'We're not having lunch too early, are we?' '(hope).'
4 'It's not a good idea, is it?' 'No, (suppose).'
5 'Do they serve tea here?' '(afraid).'
6 'I think she's got a new boyfriend?' '(hope).'
7 'We won't be in time for the train.' '(suppose).'
8 'Is this where she lives?' '(think).'
so am I etc

So am I means ‘I am too’: so does he means ‘he does too’: and so on.
Neither/Nor am I means ‘I’m not either’, and so on.

She’s from Scotland, and so am I. I was tired, and so were the others.
I’ve lost their address. ‘So have I.’ I like dancing, and so does he.
I can’t swim, and neither can Bill. ‘She didn’t understand.’ ‘Nor did I.’

1 Complete the sentences with so am I etc or neither/nor am I etc.

1 He’s tall, and ____ his sister.
2 ‘I haven’t paid.’ ‘____ I.’
3 Penguins can’t fly, and ____ ostriches.
4 ‘I love this music.’ ‘____ I.’
5 ‘I lost my passport.’ ‘____ Nicola.’
6 I don’t like her, and ____ my friends.
7 The food was bad, and ____ the wine.
8 Sue won’t be there, and ____ her mother.
9 ‘Pete looks ill.’ ‘____ you.’
10 ‘I wasn’t surprised.’ ‘____ I.’

2 If possible, work with another student and find five or more things that you have got in common. Write sentences. Example:

She likes tennis, and so do I.

3 Look at the pictures, and make sentences about pairs of things using so is etc or neither/nor is etc. Examples:

The bike has got two wheels, and so has the motorbike.
The Sphinx is not alive, and neither is the pyramid.
it: preparatory subject and object

When the subject of a sentence is an infinitive or a clause, we generally use *it* as a preparatory subject, and put the infinitive or clause later.

*It’s nice to talk to you.* (More natural than *To talk to you is nice.*)

*It was surprising that she didn’t come back.*

Note also the structure *It looks as if/though...*

*It looks as if she’s going to win.*

*It looks as though we’ll miss the train.*

1 Rewrite these sentences with *It* ... to make them more natural.

1 To book early is important. *It is important to book early.*

2 To hear her talk like that annoys me.

3 To get from here to York takes four hours.

4 To get upset about small things is silly.

5 To get up in the morning is nice, but to stay in bed is nicer.

6 To watch him makes me tired.

7 To hear her complaining upsets me.

8 To say no to people is hard.

2 Put the sentences together using *It* ...

1 He wasn’t there. This surprised me.

*It surprised me that he wasn’t there.*

2 She’s got some money saved. This is a good thing.

3 He’s got long hair. This doesn’t bother me.

4 John never talked to her. This worried her.

5 She should be told immediately.

This is essential.

6 He didn’t remember my name.

This was strange.

7 He can’t come. This is a pity.

8 The children should get to bed early.

This is important.

9 Wolves attack people. This is not true.

10 She stole money. This shocked me.

"Can’t I plead with you, Helen? It isn’t my wish that our marriage should end like this."
3 Put the beginnings and ends together.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It doesn’t interest me</td>
<td>as if we’re going to have trouble with Ann again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It looks</td>
<td>how many unhappy marriages there are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It seems</td>
<td>if we have to ask her to leave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It will be a pity</td>
<td>that everybody should have a chance to speak.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s exciting</td>
<td>that he forgot to buy the tickets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s important</td>
<td>that we’ll be a little late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s probable</td>
<td>what you think.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s surprising</td>
<td>when a baby starts talking.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can also use it as a preparatory subject for an -ing form. This is especially common in the structures it’s worth ... and it’s no use ...

*It’s worth visiting* the Lake District. *It’s no use trying* to explain.

4 Write five or more sentences about places in your country, beginning *It’s (not) worth visiting ...*, *because ...*

We can also use it as a preparatory object.

*I find it difficult to talk to you.*

5 Put the beginnings and ends together.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He made it difficult</td>
<td>a problem to walk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His bad leg made it</td>
<td>that she hadn’t written.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I thought it strange</td>
<td>what he wanted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He made it clear</td>
<td>to hear her stories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I find it interesting</td>
<td>to like him.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When it is not necessary to change, it is necessary not to change.
*Lucius Cary*

It is impossible to enjoy idling thoroughly unless one has plenty of work to do.
*Jerome K Jerome*

Anybody who has ever struggled with poverty knows how extremely expensive it is to be poor.
*James Baldwin*

It’s easy to see the faults in people I know; it’s hardest to see the good, especially when the good isn’t there.
*Will Cuppy*

It was such a lovely day I thought it was a pity to get up.
*W Somerset Maugham*
emphasis with it, what etc

We can emphasise a part of a sentence by using the structure *It is/was ... that*. Compare:

The secretary sent Jake the photos yesterday.

*It was the secretary* that/who sent Jake the photos yesterday.

(not the boss)

*It was Jake* that the secretary sent the photos to yesterday. (not Bill)

*It was the photos* that the secretary sent Jake yesterday.

(not the drawings)

*It was yesterday* that the secretary sent Jake the photos. (not last week)

▲ 1 Change these sentences to emphasise each part in turn.

1 The baby put marmalade on Dad’s trousers this morning.
2 Maria gave her old bicycle to Pat last week.
3 Carl broke the kitchen window with a ladder today.
4 Mark met Cathy in Germany in 1992.

▲ 2 Change these sentences as shown.

1 I don’t want tea, I want coffee.
   *It’s not tea I want, it’s coffee.*
2 I don’t love you, I love Peter.
3 Carol isn’t the boss, Sandra is.
4 I don’t hate the music, I hate the words.
5 I didn’t lose my glasses, I lost my keys.
6 Bob isn’t getting married, Clive is.
7 I didn’t see Judy, I saw Jill.
8 He’s not studying maths, he’s studying physics.
9 Max isn’t crazy, you are.
10 You don’t need a nail, you need a screw.

Note the use of pronouns in this structure in formal and informal styles.

**FORMAL**

*It is I who am responsible.*

*It is you who are in the wrong.*

**INFORMAL**

*It’s me that’s responsible.*

*It’s you that’s in the wrong.*

‘It’s not the fighting I hate, it’s the washing-up!’
Another way of emphasising is to use a structure with **what**
( = ‘the thing(s) that’). Compare:

**The wind keeps me awake.**  **What keeps me awake is the wind.**
**I need a change.**  **A change is what I need.**

We can use **all (that)** (meaning ‘the only thing that’) in the same way as **what**.

**All I need is a home somewhere.**  **All I did was touch him.**

△ 3 **Change the sentences so as to emphasise the words in italics.**

1. He wants a motorbike.
   **What he wants is a motorbike.**
2. I need a drink.
3. I like her sense of humour.
4. I hate his jealousy.
5. Cycling keeps me fit.
6. The travelling makes the job interesting.
7. I only want five minutes' rest. (All I want is ...)
8. I found something very strange.
9. The weather stopped us.
10. I don’t understand why she stays with him.

4 **Complete these sentences.**

1. All I need is ____.
2. What I really like is ____.
3. What I really hate is ____.
4. What I want to know is ____.
conjunctions

Conjunctions join clauses into sentences.
Examples: but, because, while, if.

She was poor but she was honest.
I went to bed because I was tired.
Can you watch the kids while I’m out?
I’ll do it if I can.

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Six of these words cannot be used as conjunctions. (For example, they could not come just before the clause ... she went home.) Which six? Check your answers in the key.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>after</th>
<th>all</th>
<th>although</th>
<th>and</th>
<th>as</th>
<th>at</th>
<th>because</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>by</td>
<td>if</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>that</td>
<td>this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>under</td>
<td>unless</td>
<td>until</td>
<td>when</td>
<td>whether</td>
<td>with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

One conjunction is enough to join two clauses – we do not normally use two.

Although she was tired, she went to work.
She was tired, but she went to work.
But not: Although she was tired, but she went to work.

As you know, I work very hard.
You know that I work very hard.
But not: As you know, that I work very hard.

2 Put the beginnings and ends together.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Although he was very bad-tempered,</td>
<td>after you have a meal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always brush your teeth</td>
<td>and I’ll hit you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always wash your hands</td>
<td>before you have a meal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As Liz told you.</td>
<td>but everybody liked him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Because I knew her family.</td>
<td>he had lots of friends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Talk to me like that again</td>
<td>I did what I could for her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Don’t do that again</td>
<td>her mother left for Berlin last Friday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He had a terrible temper,</td>
<td>or I’ll hit you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liz explained to you</td>
<td>so I tried to help her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was sorry for her</td>
<td>that her mother went back home last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you do that again</td>
<td>unless you stop that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There’ll be trouble</td>
<td>you’ll be sorry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Conjunctions and clauses: position

Some conjunctions and their clauses can go either first or last in a sentence.

If you need help, come and see me.
Come and see me if you need help.

We often use a comma (,) when the conjunction and its clause are first in the sentence.

1 Write the sentences with the clauses in italics first, when this is possible.
   1 I'll come round to your place after I've finished work.
   2 Let's have a weekend in the country when the weather gets better.
   3 You ought to see Paula before you go back to Canada.
   4 I enjoyed the lecture, although I didn't understand everything.
   5 Your train leaves in half an hour, so you'd better hurry.
   6 We won't know what's happening until Sean phones.
   7 I'm going to buy some new jeans, as we're going out tonight.
   8 Somebody broke into the house while they were asleep.
   9 He hasn't looked at another woman since he met Julie.
  10 I'm quite sure that she's telling the truth.
  11 I'd like to know whether my photos are ready.
  12 He didn't understand the policeman because he was deaf.

Note the order of events with before and after.

He worked as a salesman before he got married.
Before he got married, he worked as a salesman.
(Both sentences say that he worked as a salesman first.)
She went to China after she finished school.
After she finished school, she went to China.
(Both sentences say that she finished school first.)

2 Underline or write down the verb for the thing that happened first.
   1 He did military service before he went to university.
   2 I phoned Sarah after I spoke to Bill.
   3 Before the rain stopped, he went out shopping.
   4 After she gave up her job at the bank, she left her husband.
   5 I felt really depressed before you turned up.
   6 Things were quite different after Susie left.
using conjunctions

Do you know how to use these conjunctions: so that (purpose or result), as long as / provided, while (contrast), until, as if/though?

Let's start now, so that we're sure to have enough time.
She spoke very quietly, so that nobody could hear a word.
You can go out as long as (or provided) you tell us where you're going.
The summers here are wet, while the winters are very dry.
I'll look after the kids until you get back.
I feel as if (or as though) I'm getting a cold.

In a formal style, whereas can be used in the same way as while.
Sound travels at 330 metres per second, whereas light travels at 300,000 kilometres per second.

1 Put in suitable conjunctions.

1 You can have my bike ___ you bring it back tomorrow.
2 I'm staying here ___ I get my money back.
3 It was very dark in the passage. ___ I couldn't see where I was going.
4 Joe was short and dark, ___ his sister was the exact opposite.
5 You look ___ you've seen a ghost.
6 He won't get any money ___ he finishes the work properly.
7 It looks ___ it's going to rain.
8 You can cancel the ticket ___ you tell the airline 48 hours in advance.
9 I'm going to the bank now, ___ I'll have enough money for shopping.
10 ___ I think his novels are good, his poetry isn't up to much.

2 Join the beginnings and ends with so that or as long as.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He went to Switzerland</td>
<td>he could learn French.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't mind you singing</td>
<td>it doesn't rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We moved the piano</td>
<td>that's OK with you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We took some blankets</td>
<td>there would be room for the Christmas tree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We'll come back this afternoon</td>
<td>we would be warm enough.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We'll play tennis</td>
<td>you do it quietly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298–302.
3 Rewrite these sentences, beginning While ...

1 It was sunny, but there was a cold wind.
   While it was sunny, there was a cold wind.
2 She's very clever, but she's got no common sense at all.
3 I know how you feel, but I think you're making a mistake.
4 The job's well paid, but it's deadly boring.
5 I'm interested in economics, but I wouldn't want to work in a bank.
6 The hotel was nice, but it was a long way from the beach.

4 Write sentences about the pictures, beginning He/She/It looks as if ...
Use expressions from the box to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>been painting</th>
<th>going swimming</th>
<th>going to rain</th>
<th>got a cold</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>had bad news</td>
<td>had good news</td>
<td>lost something</td>
<td>seen a ghost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  

Compare because and because of, and (al)though and in spite of.

She lost her job because she was ill.
She lost her job because of her illness.

Although/Though it was raining, we went out for a walk.
In spite of the rain, we went out for a walk.
conjunctions with -ing forms

Some conjunctions can introduce clauses made with -ing forms. This is common with after, before, when, while and since.

After talking to you I felt better.
Look in the mirror before driving off.

1 Put in a suitable conjunction.

1 I usually have a snack ___ going to bed.
2 He had a heart attack ___ watching a video.
3 ___ spending all that money on CDs I’d better not buy anything else.
4 Use damp string ___ tying up parcels; when it dries it shrinks and gets tight.
5 How many jobs have you had ___ leaving school?
6 We went for a walk ___ leaving for the airport.
7 Put this on ___ shaving and you’ll smell wonderful.
8 I haven’t heard anything from her ___ getting that letter last month.
9 I often listen to music ___ working.
10 Always wear goggles ___ working with metal.

2 Put the sentences together using conjunction + ...ing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Don’t go swimming</td>
<td>before (talk) to Eric.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have a rest every hour or so</td>
<td>before (go) on stage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He has been terribly depressed</td>
<td>he began to feel ill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I had a word with Janet</td>
<td>immediately after (eat).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I often solve problems in my head</td>
<td>since (fail) the exam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She always gets nervous</td>
<td>we haven’t even had time to unpack.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Since (come) back from America</td>
<td>when (drive) long distances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A few days after (return) from holiday</td>
<td>while (run).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A few conjunctions (e.g. until, when, if) can be used with past participles.

Leave in oven until cooked.
When questioned, he denied everything.
I can usually remember names and faces if given enough time.

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298-302.
-ing clauses without conjunctions

It is possible to have -ing and -ed clauses without conjunctions. These are usually rather formal, and are most common in written English.

*Having failed to persuade John, I tried his brother.*
( = As I had failed ...)

*Used economically, a tin will last for weeks.*
( = If it is used economically ...)

*Putting down my newspaper, I went over to the phone.*
*It rained for two weeks on end, completely ruining our holiday.*

△ 1 Rewrite the sentences, using -ing or -ed clauses without conjunctions.

1. As he had left school at twelve, he had no qualifications.
2. It tastes delicious if it is fried in butter and sprinkled with lemon juice.
3. She walked over to her desk and picked up a paper.
4. The water came into the houses, and flooded the downstairs rooms.
5. As I knew his tastes, I took him a large box of expensive chocolates.
6. He put on his coat and went out.
7. A lorry broke down in Bond Street, and caused a massive traffic jam.
8. As I didn’t want to frighten her, I phoned before I went round.
9. If it is sent first class, it should arrive tomorrow.
10. At 3 a.m. Simon came in, and woke everybody in the house.

△ 2 Complete the text with words from the box.

| dreaming | getting | sacrificing | staring | thinking | thrown |

Then they quarrelled, and Micky, _1_ his head was getting too hot for his tongue, went out to the dunes and stood in the wind _2_ at the sea. Why was he tied to this weak and fretful man? For three years since the end of the war he had looked after Charlie, _3_ him out of hospital and into a nursing home, then to houses in the country, _4_ a lot of his own desire to have a good time before he returned to Canada, in order to get his brother back to health. Micky’s money would not last for ever; soon he would have to go, and then what would happen?

But when he returned with cooler head, the problem carelessly _5_ off, he was kind to his brother. They sat in eased silence before the fire, the dog _6_ at their feet, and to Charlie there returned the calm of the world.

*V S Pritchett: The Two Brothers*
both ... and; neither ... nor

These expressions can join nouns, verbs or other kinds of expression.

She plays both tennis and badminton.
He both sings and dances.
That's neither interesting nor true.
Neither Sue nor Ann was there.
The place both depressed me and made me want to go home.

1 Join the sentences with both ... and or neither ... nor.
1 He repairs cars. He repairs motorbikes. (He repairs both ...)
2 He doesn’t speak English. He doesn’t speak French.
3 I don’t like her. I don’t dislike her.
5 Paul is on holiday. Sally is on holiday.
6 The secretary did not have the file. The accountant did not have the file.
7 The play was funny. The play was shocking.
8 He collects paintings. He collects jewellery.
9 You’re not right. You’re not wrong.
10 She didn’t look at me. She didn’t say anything.

2 Write sentences using both ... and or neither ... nor. Example:
Neither Julius Caesar nor Cinderella had a TV.

Queen Victoria  Dickens  Helen of Troy  Kennedy
Sitting Bull  Cinderella  Shakespeare  Julius Caesar

3 Make sentences about yourself and another person, using both ... and or neither ... nor.
leaving out *that*

We often *leave out* the conjunction *that* in an informal style. This happens mostly after *very common verbs and adjectives.*

*She knew (that) I was right. I’m glad (that) you’re better.*

1 **Put the beginnings and ends together.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Did you know</td>
<td>he didn’t say hello to you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He suggested</td>
<td>I phoned you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I believe</td>
<td>I wouldn’t forget your birthday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I expect</td>
<td>she wasn’t angry with me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I heard</td>
<td>there were mice in the cellar?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I thought</td>
<td>this is your coat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was surprised</td>
<td>we might like to go skiing with him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m glad</td>
<td>we’ve had this talk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s funny</td>
<td>you love me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tell me</td>
<td>you’d get lost.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Were you surprised</td>
<td>you’d got a new job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You knew</td>
<td>you’ve seen this already.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can also leave out *that,* in an informal style, after *so, such, now, provided.*

*Come in quietly so (that) she doesn’t hear you.*

2 **Put in the right conjunction, with *that* if the sentence is formal, and without *that* if it is informal.**

1 He may use the firm’s car ___ he pays for all petrol used.
2 I left the bedroom door open ___ I’d hear the phone.
3 ___ she’s sixteen she thinks she can do what she likes.
4 It was ___ a serious operation ___ she was not expected to live.
5 Closed-circuit television was installed ___ everybody would be able to watch the performance.
6 You can go out ___ you’re back in time to give me a hand with the cooking.
7 ___ the new managers have taken over we expect the company to become profitable in the very near future.
tenses after conjunctions

If the exact time is shown once in a sentence, this may be enough. So tenses are simplified after many conjunctions. For example, we often use present tenses instead of will ...

This discovery will mean that we spend less on food.
I will be delighted if he wins.

We use a present perfect (instead of a future perfect) to express completion.
I'll tell you when I've finished.

1 Complete these sentences using will once and a present tense once.

1 You (find) hamburgers wherever you (go).
2 When I (have) time, I (write) to her.
3 (you stay) here until the plane (take) off?
4 It (be) interesting to see whether he (recognise) you.
5 I (go) where you (go).
6 He (give) £5 to anybody who (find) his pen.
7 One day the government (ask) people what they (want).
8 You (find) all the shops (be) closed tomorrow.
9 Whether I (win) or not, I (have) a good time.
10 As soon as I (arrive) I (phone) you.

'I'll call you back in twenty minutes when the restaurant is crowded.'
After conjunctions, we often use **simple past tenses** instead of **would**.

*He would never do anything that made her unhappy.*
*It would be nice if she asked before she borrowed things.*

▲ 2 Complete these sentences, using **would** ... once in each.

1. In a perfect world, you *(be able)* to say exactly what you *(think)*.
2. I *(always try)* to help anybody who *(be)* in trouble, whether I *(know)* them or not.
3. He *(never do)* anything that *(go)* against his conscience.
4. It *(be)* nice if everybody *(have)* what they *(want)*.
5. I *(hit)* anybody who *(talk)* to me like that.
6. In your position, I *(tell)* the boss what I *(think)*.
7. I *(be)* happier if I *(can)* live where I *(like)*.
8. I knew he *(not give)* me what I *(ask)* for.
9. If we lived in London it *(mean)* that we *(spend)* less time travelling.

We sometimes use **simple tenses** instead of **perfect** or **progressive**.

*I hadn’t understood what she said.*
*He’s working. But at the same time as he works, he’s exercising.*

▲ 3 Complete these sentences.

1. I *(be)* sorry that I *(not help)* her when she *(need)* it. *(simple past twice, past perfect once)*
2. It *(be)* a good time while it *(last)*. *(simple past and present perfect)*
3. I *(usually like)* the people I *(work)* with. *(simple past and present perfect)*
4. For the previous thirty years, he *(do)* no more than he *(need)* to. *(simple past and past perfect)*
5. Usually when she *(talk)* to you she *(think)* about something else. *(simple present and present progressive)*

▲ 4 Complete these sentences in any way you like.

1. I would never ____ a person who ____.
2. It would be nice if ____.
3. In a perfect world, you would be able to ____ when ____.
4. I would be happier if ____ what ____.

'Nobody calls me stupid. Meet me outside when the big hand and the little hand are on the 12.'
indirect speech: why things change

1 Look at the text, and write down all the words and expressions that are different in Bill's and Peter's sentences.

BILL (on Saturday evening): 'I don't like this party. I want to go home now.'

PETER (on Sunday morning): 'Bill said that he didn't like the party, and he wanted to go home right away.'

DO IT YOURSELF

2 Which do you think is the best explanation for the differences? Check your answer in the key.

1 After verbs like said, you change tenses and pronouns in English.
2 The time, place and speakers are different.
3 If the main verb is past, the other verbs have to be past too.

3 Read the dialogue. Imagine that Bill talks to a friend the next day and tells him about the conversation, using indirect speech structures ('I said/told her that ...; so she asked if ...'). Write down ten or more words in the conversation that would have to be changed in Bill's report.

BILL: You're looking good today.
ANN: Oh, thanks, Bill. You are sweet.
BILL: OK. If you sit down I'll get you a drink.
ANN: There's nowhere to sit.
BILL: Yes, there is. Over there in the corner.
ANN: I don't want to sit there. It's too dark. I'll sit here.
BILL: You can't. These seats are taken.
ANN: No, they aren't.
BILL: Really, Ann. Why do you always have to argue? They're taken.
ANN: Excuse me. Are these seats taken?
JIE: Well, this one is. but the other one's free.
ANN: OK. I'll sit here, then. Thanks.
JIE: You're welcome. What's your name?
BILL: Hey, what about me?
ANN: Ann. What's yours?
JIE: I'm Joe Parsons. Can I get you a drink?
ANN: That's very kind. Can I have a bitter lemon?
BILL: I'm getting her a drink.
JIE: No, you're not, mate. I am.
BILL: I don't believe this. Ann, what are you playing at?
ANN: Really, Bill, I don't know what's wrong with you today. I'll see you around, OK?
indirect speech: ‘here’ and ‘now’

Some words may be changed in indirect speech, because the original speaker’s ‘here’ and ‘now’ are not the same as the reporter’s.

**DO IT YOURSELF**

1 The following sentence was said in England in November 1994: ‘I’ve been in this part of the world since March this year.’ Does the first or second ‘this’ have to be changed if the sentence is reported:
   a in England a week later? c in Holland a week later?
   b in England a year later? d in Holland a year later?

   Check your answer in the key.

2 Match the direct and indirect speech expressions. Example:

   *here – there*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT SPEECH:</th>
<th>here</th>
<th>last week</th>
<th>next week</th>
<th>now</th>
<th>this</th>
<th>this morning</th>
<th>today</th>
<th>tomorrow</th>
<th>tonight</th>
<th>yesterday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDIRECT SPEECH:</th>
<th>that day</th>
<th>that morning</th>
<th>that night</th>
<th>that/the/last day</th>
<th>the day before</th>
<th>the next day</th>
<th>the next week</th>
<th>the week after</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>then / that day / right away</td>
<td>there</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Imagine these sentences were reported in another place a month later. Put in the ‘here’ and ‘now’ words.

1 ‘I’ll see you tomorrow.’ She said she’d see me the next day.
2 ‘I’ll phone you this evening.’ He said he’d phone ______.
3 ‘Do you like it here?’ She asked if I liked it ______.
4 ‘My uncle died last week.’ He told me his uncle had died ______.
5 ‘This meat tastes funny.’ She said ______ meat tasted funny.
6 ‘I’m leaving now.’ He told us he was leaving ______.
7 ‘I overslept this morning.’ She told him she’d overslept ______.
8 ‘The train leaves at 11.00 tonight.’ I was told the train left at 11.00 ______.
9 ‘Pete phoned me yesterday.’ He said Pete had phoned him ______.
10 ‘My brother’s arriving here today.’ She said her brother was arriving ______.
indirect speech: tenses

After reporting expressions like he said, I asked, she thought, tenses are usually different from those in the original words (because the reporter's time is different from the original speaker's time). Verbs become more past.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ORIGINAL WORDS</th>
<th>REPORTED WORDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(DIRECT SPEECH)</td>
<td>(INDIRECT SPEECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You looked nice.</td>
<td>I told her she looked nice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can't swim.</td>
<td>He pretended he couldn't swim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm learning French.</td>
<td>She said she was learning French.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has he forgotten?</td>
<td>I wondered if he had forgotten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John phoned.</td>
<td>She told me that John had phoned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will you marry me?</td>
<td>I asked him if he would marry me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(NOT ... if he will marry me.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Complete the table. Check your answers in the key.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT SPEECH</th>
<th>INDIRECT SPEECH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>simple present</td>
<td>past progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple past</td>
<td>would ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the reported sentences with the correct tenses.

1 'I'm tired.' She said she ____ tired.
2 'You play very well.' He told me I ____ very well.
3 'Can you help us?' They asked if I ____ help them.
4 'We're leaving.' They told us they ____.
5 'She hasn't brushed her hair.' I noticed that she ____ her hair.
6 'John's had an accident.' Pam rang to say that John ____ an accident.
7 'I left school at fifteen.' Her letter said that she ____ school at fifteen.
8 'She won't say anything.' I knew she ____ anything.
9 'Nobody will know.' I thought nobody ____.
10 'This letter has been opened.' I could see that the letter ____.
3 Put in the right tenses.

I had a really funny evening yesterday, Mary. I got talking to this boy in the pub, very nice-looking he was, and I could see he (1 fancy) me. He said he (2 never meet) anybody like me before, and he felt I (3 have) a very unusual kind of beauty. Oh, yes? I said. Then he asked me if I (4 want) a lift home, so I said no, I (5 be) hungry, so we went out for a curry.

I asked him what he (6 do) for a living, and he said he (7 do) some undercover work for the CIA at the moment. He said he (8 can not) give me his address because he (9 move) around all the time. So I asked him why he (10 think) I (11 want) his address. Then he asked if he (12 can) have my phone number. He said he (13 call) me today to fix for me to go to America with him. So I asked him why he (14 want) to take me to America, and he said he (15 think) he (16 fall) in love with me. I knew he (17 lie), but it was kind of fun. Anyway, I told him I (18 have) got a boyfriend already, but he said that (19 not matter). We (20 be) meant for each other, he said, and nobody (21 go) to stand in our way, because our lives (22 be) written in the stars.

Then he borrowed £20 from me to pay the bill because he said he (23 leave) his wallet at home, and he went off to the toilet, and I never saw him again.

---

Tenses don't change after present or future reporting verbs, because there is no important change of time.

He says he doesn't want to play any more. ('I don't want ...')
I'll tell her your idea is great.

Tenses do not usually change after present perfect reporting verbs, either.

The government has announced that taxes will be raised.
indirect speech: present situations

Situations that have not changed: if the original speaker was talking about a present or future situation that is still present or future when the words are reported, the tenses may not change after a past reporting verb.

DIRECT SPEECH
The earth is round.
'How old are you?' 'What?' Where does she work?
It will be windy tomorrow.

INDIRECT SPEECH
He proved that the earth is/was round.
'I asked how old you are/were.'
I've often wondered where she works/worked.
They said it will/would be windy tomorrow.

1 Imagine these sentences were reported soon after they were said: change them to indirect speech in two different ways.

1 What day is it? I asked what day it is. I asked what day it was.
2 What's the dark-haired child's name? (I asked)
3 I'm utterly fed up! (Are you deaf? I said)
4 It's raining. (I told you)
5 You'll get your money. (I said)
6 The weather is changing. (This article I was reading said)
7 The repairs will cost £5,000. (Al told me)
8 Is Jane coming to see us? (I asked)
9 You're going to the north. (Pat told me that)
10 You won't pass your exam. (I bet George £5 yesterday that)
11 He hasn't got much sense of humour. (See — I told you)
12 They're getting married next week. (Sue rang this morning, and she said)

We do not keep the original speaker's tenses if we do not agree with what he/she said, or if we want to show that the ideas do not come from us.

They were certain that the gods lived in the sky.
Did you hear that? She said she was fourteen!
He announced that profits were higher than forecast.
I didn't know she was ill.

'Ed Roxey! I didn't know you were dead!'
indirect speech: questions

**Indirect questions** normally have the subject before the verb.

*He wanted to know when I could start.* (NOT ... *when could I start.*)
*I asked where the president and his wife were staying.*

**Do is not used** in indirect questions, and question marks are not used.
*I wondered how they felt.* (NOT ... *how did they feel?*)

The same structure is used to report the answers to questions.
*I knew how they felt.*
*Nobody told me why I had to sign the paper.*

1  **Turn these into indirect questions, beginning I asked.**

1  What’s Peter’s address?
2  When’s the new manager coming?
3  How does she know my name?
4  Why are all the windows open?
5  How many books does he want?
6  Where do they keep the money?
7  What time is the meeting?
8  When does the last train leave?
9  How does the photocopier work?
10  How often does Ann go shopping?

**Yes/no questions** are reported with *if* or *whether*.

*The driver asked if/whether I wanted the town centre.*

We prefer *whether* before *or*, especially in a formal style.
*I enquired whether she was coming by road or by air.*

2  **Turn these into indirect questions, beginning I wondered.**

1  Do they like me?
2  Will I be ready in time?
3  Is there any food in the house?
4  Is service included or not?
5  Can I pay by cheque?
6  Does my hair look funny?
7  Has the postman been?
8  Do they speak English?
9  Am I doing the right thing?
10  Is the meeting on Tuesday or Wednesday?
indirect speech: infinitives

We use **infinitives** to report sentences about future actions – for example promises, agreements, orders, offers, advice, suggestions, requests.

He promised **to write**.  
She agreed **to wait** for me.  
I told Andrew **to be** careful.  
Ann has offered **to baby-sit** tonight.  
I advise you **to think** again.  
She asked us **not to be** late.

The structure **question word + infinitive** is common.  
He asked her **how to make** a white sauce.  
Don’t tell me **what to do**.

1 **Change the sentences as shown.**

1 I won’t tell anybody. *(He promised)*  
   He promised **not to tell** anybody.

2 I’ll cook supper. *(She offered)*  
   She offered **to cook** supper.

3 Leave early. *(He advised me)*  
   He advised me **to leave** early.

4 Please close the door. *(She asked me)*  
   She asked me **not to close** the door.

5 I’ll stop smoking. *(She promised)*  
   She promised **not to smoke**.

6 Why don’t I do the shopping? *(He offered)*  
   He offered **me to do** the shopping.

7 You ought to tell the police. *(She advised me)*  
   She advised me **to tell** the police.

8 Wait outside. *(I told her)*

9 OK, I’ll pay half. *(He agreed)*  
   He agreed **me to pay** half.

10 Park round the corner. *(She told me)*  
   She told me **not to park** there.

11 How do I find the house? *(I asked him)*  
   I asked him **to find** the house.

12 Phone me before nine. *(She told me when)*  
   She told me when **to phone** me.

13 Say you’re ill. *(I told him what)*

14 We’ll pay for the tickets. *(We offered)*  
   We offered **me to pay** for the tickets.

*I told him to choose his weapons and be here at six.*

This structure is **not** used after **suggest** or **say**.

**He suggested trying** somewhere else. *(NOT He suggested **to try** ...)*

The policeman **said I mustn’t park** there. *(NOT ... said me **not to park** ...)*
tell and say

*Tell* and *say* are similar, but there are *differences*. Look at the examples and try to see what they are.

I told the assistant that I wanted size 8. (NOT I told that I wanted size 8.)
I said that I wanted size 8.
I said to the assistant that I wanted size 8. (NOT I said the assistant that ...)
I said to her 'What are you doing?' (NOT I told her 'What are you doing?')
I said 'hello'. (NOT I told him hello.)
I told him to hurry up. (NOT I said him to hurry up.)

**DO IT YOURSELF**

1 *Choose the correct forms of the rules. Check them in the key.*

1 After (*say/tell*), we normally say *who* is spoken to. We do not put 'to' before the object.
2 After (*say/tell*), we don't have to say *who* is spoken to. If we do, we put 'to' before the object.
3 (*Say/Tell*) means 'inform' or 'instruct'. It can't introduce questions.
4 (*Say/Tell*) can't normally be used before an infinitive.

2 *Put in the correct forms of say or tell.*

1 I ___ that I wasn't ready.
2 ___ me what you need.
3 Have you ___ the doctor about it?
4 Did you ___ something to me?
5 He doesn't ___ me anything.
6 Mary ___ her mother she was going to the office.
7 Why didn't she ___ goodbye?
8 ___ him to be quiet.
9 Who ___ that?
10 ___ that you won't forget me.

‘I did say something, but that was yesterday.’

*Tell* can be used without a personal object in a few expressions like *tell a lie, tell the truth, tell a story, tell the time.*
indirect speech: special cases

**Past** tenses are changed to **past perfect** tenses after past reporting verbs, but only if this is necessary in order to make the time relations clear. Compare:

**DIRECT SPEECH**

I saw Penny a couple of days ago.

Dinosaurs were around for 250 million years.

**INDIRECT SPEECH**

In his letter, he said he'd seen Penny a couple of days before.

This guy on TV said dinosaurs were around for 250 million years.

---

**1 Change these to indirect speech.**

1. I saw him once before in London. *(I knew)*
2. Shakespeare didn’t speak French. *(The professor said)*
3. He died two years ago. *(When I got there, I found out)*
4. Three thousand years ago there were tigers in England. *(It said on this TV programme)*
5. Somebody threw a bomb at the Prime Minister. *(It said on this morning’s news)*
6. The ancient Romans suffered from lead poisoning. *(I read in a magazine)*

**Usually unchanged after past reporting verbs: past perfect, had better, would, could, should, ought, might, must.**

**DIRECT SPEECH**

I hadn't seen him before.
You'd better go.

**INDIRECT SPEECH**

She said she hadn't seen him before.
He said I'd better go.

---

**2 Change these to indirect speech.**

1. Would you like a drink? *(She asked me)*
2. I couldn't help it. *(I said)*
3. We should be home about six. *(They thought)*
4. It might rain. *(The forecast said)*
5. She must be joking. *(Everybody said)*
6. I hadn’t seen the notice. *(I explained)*

'I thought you’d like to know that the day after you died you won a $22.5 million lottery.'
revision of indirect speech

1 Change these sentences to indirect speech (reported some time later).

1 He's ill. *(She thought)*
2 I'll be back tomorrow. *(He said)*
3 I don't like this music. *(She said)*
4 Where's the bus station? *(She asked me)*
5 Have you finished? *(I asked him)*
6 Nobody loves me. *(I felt)*
7 Do you want tea or coffee? *(He asked her)*
8 I'll clean the flat. *(She offered)*
9 When is the car going to be ready? *(I asked)*
10 What am I doing here? *(I wondered)*
11 The earth is not flat. *(He proved)*
12 These figures can't be right. *(I knew)*
13 Her cat understands everything she says. *(She thought)*
14 What does the boss want? *(I asked)*
15 Did Mary phone back? *(I wondered)*
16 Did dinosaurs lay eggs? *(I wondered)*
17 You ought to see the doctor. *(He advised me)*
18 Would you like a drink? *(She asked him)*

2 Choose the correct forms of the cartoon captions.

'Don't ask me – I thought they *(are / were / would be)* yours.'

'Well, now, Swinnerton, no doubt you're wondering *(why did I send / why I sent / why I did send)* for you.'
**If: ordinary tense-use**

*If* can be used with the same tenses as most conjunctions.

*If* you didn’t do much maths at school, you’ll find economics difficult.

*If* that was Mary, why didn’t she stop and say hello?

Oil floats if you pour it on water.

An *if*-clause can come at the beginning or end of a sentence. When it comes first, it is often separated by a comma (,).

1 **Join the beginnings and ends, putting in if.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anybody asks you what you’re doing.</td>
<td>I’ll take it back to the shop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How can you make decisions</td>
<td>you’re not feeling up to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I buy three kilos.</td>
<td>say you’re with me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t get up till nine.</td>
<td>that’ll do for a few weeks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can’t fix the video,</td>
<td>I never get anything done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ll go with you</td>
<td>we can catch the early train.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The shops are easy to get to</td>
<td>you want to learn a musical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We don’t have to go out</td>
<td>instrument.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you’re ready before eight.</td>
<td>you don’t know what’s going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have to practise</td>
<td>on?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you like.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you park near the station.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the difference between *if* and *when.*

*If*: something may happen. *When*: something definitely happens.

2 **If or when?**

1 ___ I become President
2 ___ it gets dark
3 ___ the film finishes
4 ___ she passes her exam
5 ___ it doesn’t rain tomorrow
6 ___ I wake up tomorrow
7 ___ you change your mind
8 ___ his parents die
9 ___ the bus stops

10 ‘But are you absolutely sure you saw him take something, because ___ you’re wrong...’
In an if-clause, we normally use a present tense to talk about the future. (This happens after most conjunctions – see page 244.)

If I have enough time tomorrow, I’ll come and see you. (NOT If I will have ...)
I’ll give her your love if I see her. (NOT ... if I will see her.)
If it’s fine tomorrow, I’m going to paint the windows.

For cases when we use will after if, see page 137.

3 Choose the correct tenses (present or will ...).

1 If you (say) that again, I (scream).
2 I (be) surprised if she (manage) to sell that car.
3 If the boys (come) to supper, I (cook) chicken breasts.
4 I (need) some money if we (go) out tonight.
5 I (miss) you if we (move) to Wales.
6 If you (wash) up, I (dry).
7 Ann (be) sorry if Helen (not come).
8 If you (get) lonely, I hope you (phone) me – any time.
9 If you (look) in the top drawer, you (find) your passport.
10 It (be) funny if Norman (get) the job.

4 Complete these sentences any way you like.

1 I’ll be surprised if ____.
2 I’ll be very happy if ____.
3 I’ll be sorry if ____.

5 Here are a fortune-teller’s predictions for a race. Who does she think will win?

Jake will come first if Howard comes third.
If Howard comes third, Pete will come second.
Pete won’t come second if Jake comes first.
Howard will come first if Pete comes third.
Pete will not come third if Jake comes second.
If Jake comes third, Pete will come first.
Howard will come second if Jake comes third.

We sometimes use if ... then to emphasise that one thing depends on another. (Note that we do not use if ... so in this way.)

If she can’t come to us, then we’ll have to go and see her.
(NOT ... so we’ll have to go and see her.)
if: special tense-use

With if, we can use would and past tenses to ‘distance’ our language from reality, when we talk about present or future unreal situations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAIN CLAUSE: WOULD ... ('d)</th>
<th>IF- CLAUSE: PAST TENSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I would tell you her name</td>
<td>if I knew it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(NOT I will tell you her name)</td>
<td>(NOT if I would know it.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She'd be perfectly happy</td>
<td>if she had a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What would you do</td>
<td>if you lost your job?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After I and we, should is possible instead of would. (Would is more common.)
The if-clause can come first in the sentence.

**If I knew her name, I should tell you.**

This structure can make a suggestion sound less definite (and so more polite).

*It would be nice if you helped me a bit with the housework.*

*Would you mind if I came round about seven tomorrow?*

1 Put in the correct verb forms.

1. The kitchen (look) better if we (have) red curtains.
2. I (be) sorry if we (not see) her again.
3. It (be) a pity if Andy (not get) the job.
4. If I (know) his address, I (go) round and see him.
5. What (you do) if you (win) the lottery?
6. It (be) quicker if you (use) a computer.
7. If you (not be) so busy, I (show) you how to play.
8. If we (have) some eggs, I (make) you a cake.
9. If you really (love) me, you (buy) me those diamonds.
10. I’m sure Moira (help) you if you (ask) her.
11. If it (not be) so cold, I (tidy) up the garden.
12. If I (have) the keys, I (show) you the cellar.
13. If I (have) children like hers, I (send) them to boarding school.
14. Where (you go) if you (need) to buy a picture frame?
15. (you mind) if I (go) first?
16. If all of us (come), (you have) room in your car?
17. It (be) nice if you (spend) some time with the children.
18. I (not do) this if I (not have) to.
2 What would you do if...? Here are some people's answers. Can you write the sentences? Example:

1 If I spoke Chinese, I would go to China.

3 If you can work with other students, do drawings like the ones in Exercise 2. and see if they can write the sentences.

As well as would, we can use could (= 'would be able to') and might (= 'would perhaps').

I could lend you my car if you wanted.
He might change his mind if we talked to him.

4 Complete these sentences using could or might.
1 If it wasn't raining, we (play) tennis.
2 If she asked me politely, I (feel) like helping her.
3 If he wasn't so bad-tempered, I (go) out with him.
4 If I had more money, I (get) a small flat.
5 If you spoke more slowly, I (understand) you better.
6 If you cooked it in butter, it (taste) better.
if I go and if I went: the difference

The difference between, for example, if I go ... I will and if I went ... I would or between if I speak ... and if I spoke ..., is not a difference of time. They can both refer to the present or future. The past tense (and would) usually suggests that the situation is less probable, or less definite, or impossible, or imaginary. Compare:

If I become President, I'll ... (said by a candidate in an election)
If I became President, I'd ... (said by a schoolgirl)

If I win this race, I'll ... (said by the fastest runner)
If I won this race, I'd ... (said by the slowest runner)

Is it all right if I invite John to supper? (direct request)
Would it be all right if I invited John to supper? (polite request)

1 Choose the correct verb forms.

1 If she (comes/came) late again, she'll lose her job.
2 I'll let you know if I (find/found) out what's happening.
3 If we (live/lived) in a town, life would be easier.
4 I'm sure he wouldn't mind if we (arrive/arrived) early.
5 (We'll/We'd) phone you if we have time.
6 If I won the lottery, I (will/would) give you half the money.
7 It (will/would) be a pity if she married Fred.
8 If I'm free on Saturday, I (will/would) go to the mountains.
9 She (will/would) have a nervous breakdown if she goes on like this.
10 I know I'll feel better if I (stop/stopped) smoking.

2 Choose the most sensible verb form.

1 If I (live/lived) to be 70 ...
2 If I (live/lived) to be 150 ...
3 If I (am/were) better looking ...
4 If I (wake/woke) up early tomorrow ...
5 If Scotland (declares/declared) war on Switzerland ...
6 If we (have/had) the same government in five years' time ...
7 If everybody (gives/gave) ten per cent of their income to charity ...
8 If everybody (thinks/thought) like me ...
9 If there (is/was) nothing good on TV tonight ...
10 If my English (is/was) better next year ...
11 If the government (bans/banned) cars from city centres next year ...
12 If I (have/had) bad dreams tonight ...

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298-302.
if I were

After *if*, we often use *were* *instead of was*. In a formal style, *were* is considered more correct.

*If I were* rich, *I would spend all my time travelling.*

1 Put the beginnings and ends together, using *if ... were*. Example:

*If he were a better dancer, her feet wouldn’t hurt.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bc / a better dancer</td>
<td>her feet wouldn’t hurt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I / a rabbit</td>
<td>I wouldn’t be working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I / forty years younger</td>
<td>I’d be quite pretty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I / Moroccan</td>
<td>I’d give everybody ten weeks’ holiday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I / the manager</td>
<td>I’d go dancing all night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it / not so cold</td>
<td>I’d go for a walk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it / Sunday</td>
<td>I’d live in a hole.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my nose / shorter</td>
<td>I’d speak Arabic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people / more sensible</td>
<td>life in the office would be easier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she / better-tempered</td>
<td>there wouldn’t be any wars.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We often use the structure *I should(n’t) ... if I were you* to give advice.

*I shouldn’t worry if I were you.*
*If I were you, I’d get that car serviced.*

2 Write some sentences beginning *If I were you* ... to: other students / your teacher / your mother / your father / your child / the President / the Pope / ...

‘Look, I should sit down if I were you. Have you got a drink? Now it’s nothing to worry about, really it isn’t ...’
**if: unreal past situations**

With *if*, we use *would have ...* and *past perfect* tenses to ‘distance’ our language from reality, when we talk about *unreal situations* in the past.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAIN CLAUSE:</th>
<th>IF-CLAUSE:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>would have + past participle</em></td>
<td><em>past perfect tense</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I would have been</em> in bad trouble</td>
<td><em>if Jane hadn’t helped me.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>You would have passed</em> your exam</td>
<td><em>if you had worked</em> harder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not if you <em>would have worked</em> ... )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The *if*-clause can come first.

*If Jane hadn’t helped me, I would have been in bad trouble.*

1 **Put in the correct verb forms.**

1 If I *know* you were coming, I *invite* some friends in.
2 He *go* to university if his father *not be* ill.
3 If you *say* you weren’t hungry, I *not cook* such a big meal.
4 The team *win* if Jones *play* better.
5 If they *not cut* off the electricity, I *finish* my work.
6 If Bell *not invent* the telephone, somebody else *do* it.
7 If you *not spend* so much time making up, we *not be* late.
8 The burglars *not get* in if you *remember* to lock the door.
9 If he *not be* a film star, he *not become* President.
10 If she *have* more sense, she *sell* her car years ago.
11 If he *not spend* so much on his holiday, he *have* enough to pay for the house repairs.
12 You *not catch* cold if you *take* your coat.
13 You *win* if you *run* a bit faster.
14 We *get* better tickets if we *book* earlier.
15 It *be* better if you *ask* me for help.
16 ‘If Cleopatra’s nose *be* shorter, the whole history of the world *be* different.’ *(Pascal)*

Instead of *would have ...*, we can use *could have ...* (= *would have been able to*) and *might have ...* (= *would perhaps have ...*).

*If he’d run a bit faster, he could have won.*

*If I hadn’t been so tired, I might have realised* what was happening.
2 Write sentence chains with if to show how things could have been different. Example:

1 If he hadn't worked so hard, he wouldn't have passed his exams. If he hadn't passed his exams, he wouldn't have gone to university. If he hadn't gone to university, ...

1 He worked hard → passed exams → went to university → studied languages → learnt Chinese → went to China → went climbing in Tibet → tried to climb Everest → disappeared in a snowstorm

2 He bought a bicycle → went for ride in country → fell off → woke up in hospital → met beautiful nurse → wrote bestselling novel about her → got rich → married beautiful nurse and had three charming children → lived happily ever after  If he hadn't bought a bicycle, ...

3 Mary's mother went out that evening → Mary cooked for herself → got interested in cooking → opened very successful restaurant → had Prime Minister as customer → PM ordered mussels → mussels poisoned PM → PM died → Mary went to prison for life

3 If you can work with other students, make a sentence chain for them.

This structure is sometimes used to talk about present and future situations which are no longer possible because of the way things have turned out.

If my mother had been alive, she would have been eighty next year.

(or If my mother were alive, she would be ...)

If my mother hadn't knocked my father off his bicycle thirty years ago, I wouldn't have been here now. (or ... I wouldn't be here now.)

‘Just think, I'd have been an old man by now if I'd ever grown up.'
unless

Unless means ‘if not’, in the sense of ‘except if’.

Come tonight unless I phone.
(= ... if I don’t phone / ... except if I phone.)
I’ll take the job unless the pay is too low.

Note that after unless we use a present tense to talk about the future.

1 Join the beginnings and ends together, using unless instead of if not. Example:

I’ll be back tomorrow unless there’s a strike.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’ll be back tomorrow</td>
<td>if he doesn’t start working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He’ll get thrown out of school</td>
<td>if I don’t phone to say I can’t come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I always watch TV in the evenings</td>
<td>if I don’t go out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let’s have dinner out</td>
<td>if it doesn’t rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ll see you at ten</td>
<td>if the children don’t want it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ll tell you a good joke</td>
<td>if there isn’t a change of government.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Things will go on getting worse</td>
<td>if there isn’t a strike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We’re going to have a picnic</td>
<td>– if you’re not too tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can have the last sausage</td>
<td>if you don’t know the code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can’t open the door</td>
<td>– if you haven’t heard it before.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unless is only used to mean ‘except if’.

My wife will be upset if I don’t get back tomorrow.

(NOT My wife will be upset unless I get back tomorrow. ‘If not’ doesn’t mean ‘except if’ here.)

2 Which of these sentences can be rewritten with unless?

1 I’ll be surprised if he doesn’t have an accident soon.
2 It will be better if we don’t tell her anything.
3 You can have the car tonight if Harriet doesn’t need it.
4 I’ll tell you if I can’t come.
5 I’m going to dig the garden this afternoon if it doesn’t rain.
6 She’d look nicer if she didn’t wear so much make-up.
in case

We use *in case* to talk about *precautions* – things we do to be *ready for what might happen*. After *in case* we use a *present tense* to talk about the future.

*I've bought a chicken *in case* your mother *stays* to lunch.*
*I wrote down her address *in case* I forgot it.*

We can use *should ... after in case* – this gives the idea of 'by chance'.
*Should* is common in sentences about the past.
*I've bought a chicken *in case* your mother *should* stay to lunch.*
*I wrote down her address *in case* I *should* forget it.*

1 A woman is packing to go on holiday in Austria. Make sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SHE'S PACKING:</th>
<th>a German phrase book</th>
<th>a pack of cards</th>
<th>a racket</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a thick sweater</td>
<td>a swimsuit</td>
<td>aspirins</td>
<td>binoculars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her address book</td>
<td>some books</td>
<td>walking boots</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IN CASE:</th>
<th>she decides to send postcards</th>
<th>she has time to read</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>she meets people who play bridge</td>
<td>she wants to go walking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the hotel has a heated pool</td>
<td>the hotel staff don't speak English</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the sun gives her a headache</td>
<td>the weather is cold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there is a tennis court</td>
<td>she wants to go bird-watching</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**In case** is not the same as *if*. Compare:

*I'll buy a bottle of wine (now) *in case* Roger comes (later).*
*I'll buy a bottle of wine (later) *if* Roger comes (and if he doesn't come I won't).*

2 *If* or *in case*?

1 I'm taking my umbrella with me ____ it rains.
2 I'll open the umbrella ____ it rains.
3 People phone the fire brigade ____ their houses catch fire.
4 People insure their houses ____ they catch fire.
5 We have a burglar alarm ____ somebody tries to break in.
6 The burglar alarm will go off ____ somebody tries to break in.
7 I'll let you know ____ I need help.
8 I'll take the mobile phone ____ I need to phone you.
it's time, would rather: structures

Infinitives are possible after it's time and would rather
(= 'would prefer').
Would rather is followed by an infinitive without to.

It's time to buy a new car. It's time for him to go to bed.
She doesn't want to go out. She'd rather stay at home.

1 Put the expressions together to make conversations. Example:

'It's time to go out.' 'I'd rather stay at home.'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It's time to</th>
<th>I'd rather</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go out</td>
<td>stay at home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean the car</td>
<td>go on using the old one for a bit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook supper</td>
<td>have something cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get a new fridge</td>
<td>invite the Johnsons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get your hair cut</td>
<td>keep it long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go home</td>
<td>not clean it today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite the Harrises</td>
<td>go to Wales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan our trip to Scotland</td>
<td>see her next year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see the dentist</td>
<td>start next week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start work on the garden</td>
<td>stay here for a bit longer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'I'm afraid we've done all we can do. Now it's time to play golf.'
'I often say, Mrs Dent, I'd rather have your little Christopher in my class than all the bright, clever ones!'

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298-302.
In clauses after *it's time* and *would rather*, a past tense has a present or future meaning.

*It's time* *he went* to bed.  *It's time* you *washed* those trousers.

'Shall I open a window?' *I'd rather* *you didn't.*

Don't come today. *We'd rather* *you came* tomorrow.

2 **Write sentences using It's time you/he/etc.**

1 You ought to clean that car.
   *It's time you cleaned that car.*
2 She should get her hair cut.
3 We ought to have a holiday.
4 You need to cut the grass.
5 You should wash that sweater.
6 You ought to stop smoking.
7 He ought to grow up.
8 We ought to paint the kitchen.
9 He needs a new car.
10 That team hasn't won a match for ages.

3 **Rewrite the second sentence in each conversation, starting with I'd rather we.you/etc.**

1 'You'd better phone Judy.' 'No, you phone her.'
   *I'd rather you phoned her.*
2 'Let's talk things over.' 'No, let's talk tomorrow.'
3 'Shall I come at nine?' 'Ten would be better.'
4 'I'll phone Sue.' 'No, don't.'
5 'Can she work with you?' 'Why doesn't she work with Maggie?'
6 'I'll cook tomorrow.' 'Tonight would be better.'
7 'Ask that policeman.' 'You ask him.'
8 'Mark wants to go out.' 'I'd prefer him to stay in.'
9 'Can they use our sheets?' 'It would be more convenient if they brought their own.'
10 'The government wants to cut taxes.' 'It would be better if they did something about the homeless.'

4 **Write a sentence beginning It's time the government did something for/about ...**

5 **The government is planning to build ten new motorways. Write a sentence beginning I'd rather they spent the money on ...**
wish, if only: structures

*Wish* and *if only* can be used with *would* and *past tenses* (like *if* — see page 258). These structures express *regrets*, and wishes for *unlikely* or *impossible* things.

*If only* is more emphatic.

Past tenses are used to talk about the present.

\[
\text{I wish I was better looking.} \quad \text{I wish I spoke French.} \\
\text{Don’t you wish you could fly?} \quad \text{If only I knew more people!}
\]

*Were* can be used instead of *was*, especially in a formal style.

*He wishes he were better looking.*

1 **Write sentences beginning I wish ... or If only ...**

1. He smokes.
   \[\text{I wish he didn’t smoke.}\]
2. I don’t speak Russian.
3. I haven’t got a car.
4. I’m not hard-working.
5. I’m bad at sport.
6. I don’t like dancing.
7. It rains all the time.
8. She works on Sundays.
9. I can’t eat eggs.
10. The radio doesn’t work.

We use *would* ... to talk about things that we *would like people (not) to do*. This often expresses dissatisfaction or annoyance: it can sound critical.

\[
\text{I wish you would go home.} \quad \text{If only the postman would come!}
\]

We can use this structure to talk about things as well as people.

\[
\text{I wish this damned car would start.} \quad \text{If only it would stop raining!}
\]

2 **Write sentences beginning I wish ... would ...**

1. Somebody won’t stop talking.
   \[\text{I wish he would stop talking.}\]
2. It’s not snowing.
3. The phone keeps ringing.
4. The baby won’t stop crying.
5. The kettle won’t boil.
6. The traffic lights won’t go green.
7. Your mother hasn’t written.
8. Pat hasn’t found a job.
9. The exam results haven’t come.
10. Spring hasn’t come.

3 **Write some sentences beginning:**

1. I wish I had ...
2. If only I could ...
3. I wish I spoke ...
4. I wish I knew ...
5. If only I was ...
6. I wish I wasn’t ...
We use a past perfect tense to express regrets about the past.

I wish you hadn’t said that.
Now she wishes she had gone to university.
If only she hadn’t told the police, everything would be all right.

4 Put the beginnings and ends together, using I wish + past perfect.
Example:
I wish I’d been nicer to my sister when we were kids.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(be) nicer to my sister</td>
<td>a better school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(choose)</td>
<td>a different career.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(do) more travelling</td>
<td>harder at university.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(go) to</td>
<td>last night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(go) to bed earlier</td>
<td>my teeth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not get married)</td>
<td>the truth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not tell) him</td>
<td>when I had the chance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(save) money</td>
<td>when I was eighteen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(study)</td>
<td>when I was earning a good salary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(take better care of)</td>
<td>when we were kids.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I WISH I WAS EIGHTEEN AGAIN (1978) (wm) Sonny Throckmorton (P)George Burns.
I WISH I WERE ALADDIN (1935) (wm) Mack Gordon – Harry Revel (F)Film: Two For Tonight, by Bing Crosby. (P) Bing Crosby.
I WISH I WERE IN LOVE AGAIN (1937) (w) Lorenz Hart (m) Richard Rogers (IM) Musical: Babes In Arms, by Grace McDonald and Rolly Pickert. (R) 1948 Film: Words And Music, by Judy Garland and Mickey Rooney.
I WISH I WERE TWINS (SO I COULD LOVE YOU TWICE AS MUCH) (1934) (w) Frank Loesser – Eddie De Lange (m) Joseph Meyer (P) Fats Waller
I WISH IT WOULD RAIN DOWN (1990) (wm) Phil Collins (P) Phil Collins.

D and H Jacobs: Who wrote that song?
relative who, which and that

We often join sentences by putting who or which (‘relative pronouns’) in place of he, she, it or they. We use who for people and which for things.

I’ve got a friend. He collects stamps. –> I’ve got a friend who collects stamps.
(NOT ... who-he collects stamps.)

There’s a problem. It worries me. –> There’s a problem which worries me.

1 Join the sentences with who or which.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you know a shop?</td>
<td>He lives next door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I know somebody.</td>
<td>He stole my car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I want some plates.</td>
<td>He/She deals with exports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was at school with the man.</td>
<td>It isn’t working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’d like to speak to the person.</td>
<td>It needs to be eaten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She’s got friendly with a boy.</td>
<td>It sells good coffee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The police haven’t found the man.</td>
<td>They last for years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There’s some cheese in the fridge.</td>
<td>She could mend that chair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We’ve got some light bulbs.</td>
<td>They can go in the microwave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This is the switch.</td>
<td>He is driving that taxi.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We often use that instead of which, and instead of who in an informal style.

There’s a problem that you don’t understand.
I know some people that could help you. (informal)

2 Rewrite four or more of the sentences from Exercise 1 using that.

In place of him, her, it and them (objects), we can use who(m), which or that. Who is very informal as an object; whom is more formal.

Where’s that nurse? I saw her last time. –> Where’s that nurse who(m)/that I saw last time? (NOT ... who(m) I saw her last time.)

These are problems. You don’t have them. –> These are problems which/that you don’t have. (NOT ... which you don’t have them.)
3. Do you know the English words for nationalities and languages? Complete the sentences: use a dictionary to help you.

1. The people who live in ____ speak Greek.
2. The language that people speak in Hungary is called ____.
3. The language ____ people speak in China is called ____.
4. The people who live in ____ speak Italian.
5. The ____ live in ____ Turkish.
6. The language ____ Algeria is called Arabic.
7. The language ____ Scots Gaelic.
8. The people ____ Holland ____.
9. The language ____ Irish.
10. The people ____ Portugal ____.
11. ____ Welsh.
12. ____ Japan ____.

4. Write five more sentences like the ones in Exercise 3.

We normally use that, not which, after all, everything, nothing, the only ... and superlatives. We do not use what in these cases.

I've told you all that I know. (NOT ... all-what I know.)
The only thing that matters to me is your happiness.

5. Join the beginnings and ends.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All the poetry</td>
<td>that happened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At school I learnt nothing</td>
<td>that he wrote was destroyed in a fire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've told you everything</td>
<td>that she said made any difference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nothing</td>
<td>that was ever made.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's the best western film</td>
<td>that I could get.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The most useful thing</td>
<td>that was useful to me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This is the only hire car</td>
<td>that you can do is leave now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can have everything</td>
<td>that you want.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After words for time and place, we can use when and where as relatives.

I'll never forget the day when I first met you. (= ... the day on which ...)
Do you know a shop where I can find sandals? (= ... a shop at which ...)

leaving out **relative pronouns**

We can **leave out object pronouns who(m), which and that**.

*Where's that nurse I saw last time?*
*These are problems you don't have.*

**DO IT YOURSELF**

1. In **which three sentences do you feel the relative pronoun can be left out?**
   1. The job **that** he got wasn't very interesting.
   2. A woman **who(m)** my sister knows has just bought the house next door.
   3. The doctor **who** treated me didn't know what he was doing.
   4. I'm sorry for people **who** haven't got a sense of humour.
   5. Have you got anything **that** will clean this carpet?
   6. Have you got a typewriter **that** I can use?

**Which rule is correct? Check your answer in the key.**

We can leave out a relative pronoun:
1. when it refers to a person.
2. when it refers to a thing.
3. when it is the subject in its clause.
4. when it is the object in its clause.

**A 2. Is the relative pronoun the subject or object in these clauses?**

1. That's the woman who lives next door.
2. Our doctor is a person whom I really respect.
3. He had a simple idea which changed the world.
4. I've lost that nice ring which Bill gave me.
5. It's a book that everybody talks about and nobody reads.
6. Once there were three rabbits that lived near a river.
7. That's the man who I wanted to see.
8. An orphan is a child who hasn't got any parents.
9. He keeps telling you things which you already know.
10. They never thanked me for the money that I sent them.

**A 3. Look again at Exercise 2. Take the sentences in which the relative pronoun is the object, and rewrite them without who(m)/which/that.**
4 Make each pair of sentences into one sentence without using who(m)/which/that.

1 You asked me to get you a paper. Here’s the paper. (Here’s …)
2 You recommended a film. We went to see the film, but we didn’t think much of it. (We went …)
3 My sister bought a new car last month. The car has broken down four times already. (The car …)
4 You didn’t recognise an actor on television last night. The actor was Kiefer Sutherland. (The actor …)
5 Jane had some friends at school. Only a very few of the friends went on to university. (Only …)
6 My father had an operation for his heart problem. The operation was only a partial success. (The operation …)
7 Mark wrote an essay while we were on holiday. The essay has won a prize in the school competition. (The essay …)
8 My daughter brings friends home. Some of the friends look as though they never wash. (Some of …)

‘It’s really very simple, Miss Everhart. Now you just move the cursor across the screen to the area of the world you wish to destroy.’

Women have their faults
Men have only two:
Everything they say,
Everything they do.

Everything I like is either illegal,
immoral or fattening.
Traditional

Traditional

For relative clauses ending in prepositions (e.g. That’s the girl I told you about), see page 290.
what = ‘the thing that’ etc

We can use what to mean ‘the thing(s) that’ or ‘the stuff that’.
What is like a noun + relative pronoun together.

What she said made me angry. I gave him what he needed.

We don’t use what after all, everything or nothing (see page 271).
Everything that I have is yours. (NOT Everything what ...)

1 Join the beginnings and ends using what. Examples:

I’ll pay for what I broke. What I need is a drink.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’ll pay for</td>
<td>happened to poor Harry?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I need</td>
<td>I broke.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you read about</td>
<td>I don’t eat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He just teaches you</td>
<td>I expected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I want to know</td>
<td>I meant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The dog can have</td>
<td>is a drink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The holiday wasn’t at all</td>
<td>made me very happy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They hadn’t got</td>
<td>she asked for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You misunderstood – that isn’t you said</td>
<td>is where’s my car gone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you said</td>
<td>you already know.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'T've already met the tall, dark man. What I'd like to know is, where is he now?'

For emphasising uses of what, see page 235.
relative whose

We can join sentences by putting whose in place of his, her or its. This structure is rather formal.

I saw a girl. Her beauty took my breath away. → I saw a girl whose beauty took my breath away.
He went to a meeting. He didn’t understand its purpose. → He went to a meeting whose purpose he didn’t understand.

1 Make sentences with whose.

1 A good builder is one whose houses don’t fall down.
2 A good parent is one whose ______.
3 A good gardener ______.
4 A good doctor ______.
5 A good writer ______.
6 A good teacher ______.
7 A good tourist guide ______.
8 A good cook ______.

2 In the Alpine village of Fernalm, everybody is related to everybody else. Can you sort out the four sentences, putting in whose where necessary, so as to make everything clear? Example:

Anton, whose brother Fritz ...

1 sister Anneliese also helps out in the sports shop
   • brother Fritz helps him run the sports shop
   • lives with Marika
2 girlfriend Heidrun is an instructor at the ski school
   • Anneliese has a younger brother Max
   • wife Paula works in the restaurant run by Anton’s other brother Toni
3 daughter Liesl runs the pizzeria
   • wife Monika works part-time for the baker down the road, Karsten
   • The person in charge of the ski school at the moment is Klaus
4 wife Christiane was national ice-dancing champion in her younger days
   • Monika also helps in the bar, the ‘Happy Skier’, which is run by Erwin
   • uncle Erich runs a hotel, in partnership with Klaus’s brother Paul
non-identifying relative clauses

Some relative clauses identify – they say which person or thing, or what kind of person or thing, you are talking about. Others do not identify.

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Look at the following pairs of sentences. Which relative clauses identify – the ones in the ‘a’ sentences or those in the ‘b’ sentences? Check your answers in the key.

1 a The woman who/that does my hair has just had a baby.
b Dorothy, who does my hair, has just had a baby.
2 a She married a man (that/who/whom) she met on a bus.
b She married a nice architect from Belfast, whom she met on a bus.
3 a Have you got a book that’s really easy to read?
b I lent him The Old Man and the Sea, which is really easy to read.
4 a What did you think of the wine (that) we drank last night?
b I poured him a glass of wine, which he drank at once.

DO IT YOURSELF

2 Look at Exercise 1 again and answer the questions. Check your answers in the key.

1 Without the relative clauses, which make more sense – the ‘a’ sentences or the ‘b’ sentences?
2 Non-identifying relative clauses (in the ‘b’ sentences) have commas (,). Why do you think this is?
3 In which kind of clause can we use that instead of who(m) or which?
4 In which kind of clause can we leave out a relative pronoun when it is the object?
5 Do you think non-identifying clauses are more common in a formal or an informal style?

3 Change who/whom/which to that, or leave it out, if possible.

1 This is Peter Taylor, who works with my sister.
2 People who don’t answer letters annoy me.
3 What happened to the oranges which I bought yesterday?
4 This room, which isn’t used any more, belonged to our eldest son.
5 My Uncle Sebastian, who has always been a bit of a traveller, has just gone off to Thailand.
6 We live in a village called Netherwold, which has 150 inhabitants.
7 I like a film which has a beginning, a middle and an end – in that order.
8 I’ve had a card from Sally, who used to live next door.

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 296-302.
9 Do you remember those people who we met in Corfu?
10 We had some good advice from Mr Blenkinsop, whom we consulted about investments.
11 She took twelve aspirins, which is six times the normal dose.
12 He published a book called *Asleep in the Bath*, which nobody ever read.

Note the use of *which* to refer to a whole clause. Compare:

> The dentist pulled out the teeth which/that were causing the trouble.
> ('Which/that' just refers to 'the teeth'.)
> The dentist had to pull out two of my teeth, which was a real pity.
> ('Which' refers to the whole clause before: 'The dentist ... teeth'.)

Note that *what* cannot be used in this way.

> He got the job, which surprised us all. (NOT ... *what* surprised us all.)

### ▲ 4 Put in *which* or *what*.

1 She cycles to work every day. ____ keeps her healthy.
2 I very much liked ____ you said at the meeting.
3 They gave me ____ I asked for.
4 The lights suddenly went out, ____ frightened Granny terribly.
5 This is ____ I need.
6 Everybody arrived late, ____ didn’t surprise me in the least.
7 The door was locked. ____ was a nuisance.
8 He wouldn’t tell me ____ I wanted to know.
9 She let me borrow one of her dresses, ____ was very kind of her.
10 We’re going to have to repair the roof, ____ will cost a fortune.

---

**September 9 1971**

GEOFFREY JACKSON, the 56-year-old British Ambassador to Uruguay, who has been held captive for eight months by the left-wing Tupamaros guerrillas, was released tonight.

---

**January 16 1979**

THE SHAH of Iran fled from his capital today, driven into exile by supporters of Ayatollah Khomenei, who has masterminded the downfall of the ‘Peacock Throne’ from his own exile in Paris.

---

**AUGUST 5 1950**

The women’s Channel swim record was broken today by an American woman, who cut an hour off the time set 24 years ago. Florence Chadwick had

---

**JANUARY 25 1971**

PRESIDENT MILTON OBOTE of Uganda, who has been attending the Commonwealth conference in Singapore, has been overthrown by his army commander, General Idi Amin, who accused Obote of

---

**December 8 1980**

JOHN LENNON, who as one of the Beatles helped shape the music and philosophies of a generation, was shot dead late tonight outside the Dakota Building, his home in New York.
reduced *relative clauses*

We sometimes leave out *who/which/that + is/are/was/were.*

*Do you know that man standing near the door?*

( = ... *who is standing ...*)

*The man accused of the killing said that he was at the cinema at the time.*

( = *The man who was accused ...*)

*Letters posted before twelve noon will usually be delivered by the next day.*

▲ 1 Change the sentences as shown in the examples.

*Paper that is made from rice is sometimes used for stationery.*

*Paper made from rice is sometimes used for stationery.*

1 Who’s that good-looking man who is talking to Alison?
2 Luggage that is left unattended will be taken away by police.
3 Left-handed children who are forced to write with their right hands often develop psychological problems.
4 The nurse who is looking after my aunt is very kind to her.
5 All the rubbish that is floating in the sea is a real danger to health.
6 Ham which is made in the traditional way costs more, but tastes better.
7 Women tourists who are wearing trousers are not allowed in the temple.
8 James thought that the man who was with his girlfriend was her brother.
9 The man who was bitten by my neighbour’s dog was her husband’s boss.

▲ 2 Join the sentences without using *who/which/that.* Example:

*There was a man. The man was seen running from the burning building.*

*There was a man seen running from the burning building.*

1 I keep having a dream in which there’s a woman. The woman is standing with her back to me.
2 James says he heard a shot. The shot was fired in the street.
3 Are those your trousers? The trousers are hanging over the balcony.
4 They live in a beautiful old house. The house was built 300 years ago.
5 The Navajo are famous for beautiful jewellery. The jewellery is made of silver and turquoise.
6 Passengers are asked to keep behind the yellow line. The passengers are standing on Platform 2.
7 Pauline has a very strange old painting of a woman. The woman is holding a small dog.
relatives: revision

1 Put in which, what or that.

1 He spoke very fast, ____ made it hard to understand him.
2 Thanks, but that’s not ____ I wanted.
3 I’ll tell you something ____ will surprise you.
4 I did ____ I could.
5 I did everything ____ I could.
6 She kept falling over, ____ made everybody laugh.
7 He’s a university professor, ____ is hard to believe.
8 You can have anything ____ you want.
9 Her sense of humour – that’s ____ attracts people to her.
10 He said nothing ____ made sense.

2 (a) Put in nothing at all, or (b) if that is not possible, put in that, or (c) if that is not possible, put in who(m) or which.

1 This is Ann Hargreaves, ____ runs the bookshop.
2 Have you heard about the problems ____ Joe’s having at work?
3 Never buy yourself anything ____ eats.
4 I don’t like people ____ can’t laugh at themselves.
5 We took the M4 motorway, ____ goes straight to Bristol.
6 I’ll never forget the first film ____ I saw.
7 Harry Potter, ____ writes detective stories, lives in our street.
8 I think this is the best holiday ____ we’ve ever had.
9 I’m looking for something ____ will clean leather.
10 We planted some birch trees, ____ grow tall very quickly.

3 Put the quotations together.

'I’ll discuss it with you,' she said, in a voice
A politician is a statesman
Any man who hates dogs and babies
Anyone who has been to an English public school
Consultants are people who
No man can lose
Nothing that is worth knowing

borrow your watch and tell you what time it is,
then walk off with your watch.
Robert Townsend
can be taught. Oscar Wilde
can’t be all bad. I. Rosten on W C Fields
that could have been used to defrost her refrigerator. Rex Stout
what he never had. Izaak Walton
who approaches every question with an open mouth. Adlai Stevenson
will feel comparatively at home in prison.
Evelyn Waugh
reading relative clauses

Relative clauses can make sentences more difficult to read.

A 36-year-old teacher who was arrested in Cardiff after trying to set fire to a school is said to have seriously injured two policemen. The financial problems which some of the company's branches have been facing over the last eighteen months are mainly caused by increased foreign competition.

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Why do the relative clauses make the above sentences harder to read? Check your answer in the key.

1 They separate the subject from the object.
2 They separate the subject from the verb.
3 They separate the verb from the object.

When relative pronouns are left out, this can make reading difficult.

The woman Barbara was out shopping with that Tuesday afternoon was her stepmother. (= The woman that Barbara was out shopping with ...)

A 2 Make these sentences easier to read by adding who(m)/which/that.

1 The earrings he gave her for Christmas must have cost at least £500.
2 The fax he got that morning was addressed to someone else.
3 The sofa we bought last year is falling to pieces already.
4 The people he had hoped to introduce Lee to were not there.
5 The flat the terrorists hid the guns in was owned by an MP.
6 The song she could not remember the name of was Rambling Boy.

Relative clauses can put together nouns and verbs that do not belong together.

The hair of the young woman sitting next to me on the park bench was purple. (It was not the park bench that was purple.)
The picture I left in Helen's room needs cleaning.
( It's not the room that needs cleaning.)

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 298-302.
3 Read the sentences and answer the questions.

1. The rosebush Sue gave to my little sister is growing beautifully.
   *(Who or what is growing?)*

2. The two tall men we saw with Duncan and Jack were their nephews.
   *(Who are the uncles and who are the nephews?)*

3. The man my mother was working for before she met my father was very intelligent, but also very disorganised. *(Who was disorganised?)*

4. A woman who lives near my sister has just won the national lottery.
   *(Has my sister won the lottery?)*

5. The newspaper which first made contact with the kidnappers telephoned the police immediately. *(Who telephoned?)*

6. Police called to a house in Aston, Hampshire, after neighbours reported cries for help found 18-year-old J... E... stuck in a cat-flap after being locked out of his home. *(Who found him?)*

4 Here are the ends of some sentences. Find the beginnings in the box.

1. Spain taught me things about myself I had never suspected.
2. my wedding was bought in a little shop in Bath.
3. my parents’ home was the nicest place I’ve ever lived in.
4. the airport in Memphis was going to Italy to collect a tiger for a zoo.
5. my little cousin Pam had crazy plans for an expedition to the North Pole.

| A very ordinary-looking woman I got talking to at   |
| A man I met by chance on a business trip to        |
| Some Polish people I was introduced to by         |
| The dress my sister wore to                       |
| The little flat that I rented just after I left   |

5 Can you write some beginnings for these endings?

1. _____ my brother had rain coming through the roof.
2. _____ the green armchair is Emma’s boyfriend.
3. _____ me doesn’t work.

Reduced relative clauses (see page 278) can be hard to read. Some examples:

Most of the people arrested had been in trouble before.
   *(= ... the people who were arrested ...)*

Three quarters of those questioned wanted more money.
   *(= ... those who were questioned ...)*

Three children found sleeping in Abbey Park late last night were taken to a foster home by social workers.
   *(= ... children who were found ...)*

A lot of the buildings designed by architects don’t take young children.
whoever, no matter who etc

We can use whoever to mean 'it doesn't matter who', 'anybody who' or 'the person who'.

Whoever told you that was lying.
Whoever comes to the door, tell them I'm out.
I'm not opening the door, whoever you are.

Whatever, whichever, whenever, wherever and however are used in similar ways. Present tenses are used to talk about the future after these words.

Whatever you do, I'll always love you. (NOT Whatever you'll do ...)
Whichever of them you marry, you'll have problems.
I try to see Vicky whenever I go to London.
Wherever he goes, he'll find friends.
However much he eats, he never gets fat.

1 Put in whoever, whatever etc.

1 _____ you marry, make sure he can cook.
2 Keep calm, _____ happens.
3 You'll be very welcome, _____ day you come.
4 The people in Canada were friendly _____ we went.
5 You can stay with us _____ you like.
6 _____ many times you say that, I won't believe you.
7 I'll marry _____ I like.
8 _____ you explain it to her, she's still going to be angry.
9 It's certain to be a good game. _____ wins.
10 _____ I try to talk to her she goes out of the room.

'Well, wherever he is, he's just dug up two dozen snowdrops!'
2 Rewrite the following sentences using whoever, whatever etc.

Example:

I don't know who directed this film, but it's not much good.
Whoever directed this film, it's not much good.

1 Send it to the person who pays the bills.
2 The thing that is in that box is making a very funny noise.
3 People always want more, it doesn’t matter how rich they are.
4 It doesn’t matter how you travel, it’ll take you at least three days.
5 You can say what you like, I don’t think he’s the right man for you.
6 Use which room you like, but make sure you clean it up afterwards.
7 It doesn’t matter what problems you have, you can always come to me for advice.
8 The person who phoned just now was very polite.
9 Any time I see you I feel nervous.
10 It doesn’t matter what you do: I’ll love you.

We can use no matter who/what/when etc in the same way as whoever etc.

No matter who comes to the door, tell them I’m out.

3 Put in no matter who/what/etc.

1 ____ you do, I’ll always believe in you.
2 ____ he goes, he’ll find friends.
3 ____ hard he tries, he always gets everything wrong.
4 ____ you say, I know I’m right.
5 ____ we go away, Paul won’t be able to come with us.
6 ____ many times I tell them, they forget.

Whether ... or ... can be used to mean ‘It doesn’t matter whether ... or ...’

Whether we go by bus or train, it’ll take at least six hours.
I’m staying whether you like it or not.

4 Put the sentences together.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Whether he’s lying</th>
<th>or an expert, or cross-country, or dislike her, or later, or telling the truth.</th>
<th>it’s a wonderful story. she’s not going to be pleased. the equipment costs a lot. you have to admire her. you’ll learn something from the course.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Whether we tell her now</td>
<td></td>
<td>Adam is a known author, art historian, or a street artist. As her mother tried to dissuade her from believing in her, she continued.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whether you’re a beginner</td>
<td></td>
<td>Is it any wonder that she is already considered to be an expert in her field? She is an expert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whether you ski downhill</td>
<td></td>
<td>Whether you like her or hate her, this expert is always respected. She is an expert in skiing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whether you like her</td>
<td></td>
<td>As an expert, she has always been known for her skills and her knowledge of the equipment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
prepositions with verbs, nouns etc

DO IT YOURSELF

2 Look at the examples and complete the rule for the use of at, in and on to talk about time. Check your answers in the key.

in 1976 in June
in the morning at 4.15
at lunchtime on Sunday
on Monday afternoon
at Christmas at the weekend

Rule
___ + clock time
___ + part of a day
___ + part of a particular day
___ + particular day
___ + weekend, public holiday
___ + longer period

3 Only one of these expressions has a preposition. Which one?

1 I’ll see you ___ next Monday.
2 I’m not free ___ this Thursday.
3 Tell me ___ what time it starts.
4 The exam’s ___ my birthday.
5 Let’s meet ___ one weekend.
6 I train ___ every day.
7 She phoned ___ this evening.

4 Put in at, in, on or – .

1 ___ Easter
2 ___ Tuesday
3 ___ 1994
4 ___ the evening
5 ___ Friday evening
6 ___ May
7 ___ next Wednesday
8 I don’t know ___ what time
9 ___ supper time
10 ___ this Sunday
11 ___ that afternoon
12 ___ Sunday afternoon
at/in and to

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Look at the examples, and complete the rule with words from the box. Check your answers in the key.

I met her at a concert.  Let's go to a concert.
He's in London.  I sent it to London yesterday.

Rule
At and in are used for ______.  To is used for ______.

| distance | experience | intentions | movement |
| position | time        |            |          |

If we say what we do in a place before we say where we go, we use at/in with the place. Compare:

Let's go to Marcel's for coffee.
Let's go and have coffee at Marcel's. (NOT ... to Marcel's.)

2 Do you know which of these verbs can be followed by at + person?

ask  call  laugh  look  phone  point  shoot
smile  speak  talk  walk  wave  write

You can shout at or to somebody; you can throw something at or to somebody. Do you know the difference?

3 Put in the correct preposition.

1 I've spent the day ______ York.
2 Why don't you take Joe ______ the cinema?
3 Your key's ______ the reception desk.
4 We usually meet ______ the pub.
5 They're delivering the furniture ______ my flat on Tuesday.
6 What's the easiest way to get ______ Bristol?
7 Stop shouting ______ me.
8 Throw the keys down ______ me and I'll let myself in.
9 Let's throw snowballs ______ Mrs Anderson.
10 Can you shout ______ Paul and tell him it's supper time?
11 When you smile ______ me like that I'll do anything for you.
12 Promise you'll write ______ me every day.
13 I went ______ Canada to see my father.
14 I went to see my father ______ Canada.
by and until

**DO IT YOURSELF**

1 Look at the examples, and put together the best explanations of how to use by and until. Check your answers in the key.

'Can you repair my watch if I leave it until Saturday?'
'No, but we can do it by next Tuesday.'
You can have the car until this evening.
But you must bring it back by six o'clock at the latest.

| By is used | 1 to say that a situation will continue up to a certain moment. |
| Until is used | 2 to say that something will happen around a certain time. |
| | 3 to say that something will happen at or before a certain moment. |

In an informal style we often use till instead of until.

2 Complete the sentences with by or until.

1 'Can I stay ____ the weekend?'
2 'Yes, but you'll have to leave ____ Monday midday at the latest.'
3 This form must be returned ____ April 17.
4 We'll just have to wait ____ he's ready to see us.
5 The books have got to go back to the library ____ Tuesday.
6 Do you think you can finish the painting ____ Easter?
7 'Can I borrow your raincoat?' ‘____ when?’
8 You ought to use this meat ____ tomorrow.
9 There won't be any trees left ____ the year 2050.
10 She went on screaming ____ somebody came.

Before a verb, we can use by the time. (For until before a verb, see p. 238.)

*He'll be gone by the time we get home.*

'And returned by one o'clock. I go to lunch then.'
for and during

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Look at the examples. Which word tells you how long and which word tells you when? Check your answers in the key.

My father was in hospital for six weeks during the summer.
(NOT ... during six weeks ...) It rained during the night for two or three hours.

2 Put in for or during.

1 Drinks will be served ____ the interval.
2 I’ll come and see you ____ a few minutes ____ the afternoon.
3 They met ____ the war.
4 He said nothing ____ a long time.
5 I woke up several times ____ the night.
6 She studied in America ____ two years.

opposite and in front of

DO IT YOURSELF

1 Look at the picture. Which is opposite the house – the bus stop or the car? Which is in front of the house? Check your answers in the key.

2 Put in opposite or in front of.

1 There’s a supermarket ____ my house.
2 ____ me in the queue there was a very strange-looking woman.
3 I can’t see the TV if you stand ____ it.
4 The lifts are directly ____ the reception desk.
5 Somebody’s parked ____ my garage door, and I can’t get my car out.
6 She sat down ____ me and started talking to me.
between and among

**DO IT YOURSELF**

1 Look at the examples and complete the rules. Check these in the key.

> She was standing **between** Alice and Mary.
> Our house is **between** the woods, the river and the village.
> His house is hidden **among** the trees.
> We were in a little valley **between** high mountains.

**RULES**
We say ____ a group, crowd or mass of things that are not seen separately.
We say ____ two or more clearly separate people or things.
We say ____ things on two sides.

2 Look at the diagrams. Is X **between** or **among** the other things?

```
1   2
   X

3       4
   X
```

3 Put in **between** or **among**.

1 I saw something ____ the wheels of the car.
2 She was standing ____ a crowd of children.
3 We'll come and see you some time ____ Christmas and Easter.
4 I found the letter hidden away ____ some old photographs.
5 This is just one problem ____ many.
6 Switzerland lies ____ France, Germany, Austria and Italy.
7 I couldn't see Lily ____ the visitors.
8 The ball hit him directly ____ the eyes.
9 The lift got stuck ____ two floors of the hotel.
10 She stood there ____ piles of suitcases looking for a taxi.
prepositions at the end of questions

Prepositions often come at the end of questions.
With whom ...? For what ...? etc are unusual and very formal.
We usually prefer Who ... with? What ... for? etc.

1 Write questions for these answers, using 'Who ...?' or 'What ...?'
Example:
'I went with my sister.' 'Who did you go with?'
1 'I’m thinking about my exams.' 6 'She hit him with her shoe.'
2 'I bought it from Janice.' 7 'My father works for Shell Oil.'
3 'She sent it to the police.' 8 'I made it for you.'
4 'I’ll carry it in a paper bag.' 9 'The book’s about Egypt.'
5 'You can eat it with a spoon.' 10 'I was talking to Patrick.'

2 Write questions for these answers, using 'Who ...?' or 'What ...?'
Example:
'Soup.' (start) 'What are we starting with?'
1 'A bus.' (wait) 6 'A strange bird.' (look)
2 'The future.' (worried) 7 'My keys.' (look)
3 'Films.' (talking) 8 'Travel and music.' (interested)
4 'The manager.' (speak) 9 'My mother.' (write)
5 'Universal Export.' (work) 10 'Life.' (think)

3 Make questions with some of these words and expressions, using
'What ... you ...?' or 'Who ... you ...?'. Example:

What/Who are you looking at? OR ... looking for?

looking waiting listening play tennis country
letter get it have lunch buy that car in love
change your job studying English

Note the common structure Where ... to/from?

Where should I send it to?
'Where do you come from? / Where are you from?' 'Canada.'
prepositions in relative clauses

In relative clauses (after who, whom, which, that), verb + preposition combinations usually stay together. This means that prepositions can be separated from their relative pronoun objects.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>VERB + PREPOSITION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>something</td>
<td>(that) you can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the girl</td>
<td>(whom) I was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the music</td>
<td>(which) we listened to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prepositions can also go before their objects, but this is usually very formal.

- something with which you write
- the girl about whom I was talking
- the music to which she listened

1 Join the beginnings and ends to make sensible sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A cup is</td>
<td>something that a child plays with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A picture is</td>
<td>something that water comes out of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A tap is</td>
<td>something that you can look at.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A toy is</td>
<td>something that you can look through.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A vase is</td>
<td>something that you drink out of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A window is</td>
<td>something that you put flowers in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Put the words in order. Which description goes with which picture?

1 bite you with things that
2 in something you sleep that
3 on you that something put things
4 valuables in you that put something
5 teeth with you that thing a your clean
6 on a thing hang that clothes you
7 with liquid dishes you wash that
8 can a fire start with you that something
3 Make up similar descriptions for six or more of these things.

| a key   | a purse     | a chair | a fridge | soap | furniture polish | olive oil | a knife | a razor | a gun | a notebook | a cooker | money |

4 Make these expressions less formal.

1 the people with whom we went on holiday
   the people we ... OR the people that we ...
2 a man with whom I sometimes play chess
   a man I ... OR a man that I ...
3 somebody for whom I have great respect
4 the girl to whom I was writing
5 the problem about which I was worried
6 a car for which I paid too much

5 Look at the table, and then write some descriptions ending in prepositions. Examples:

John is the man that Bill plays chess with.
Sue is the woman Ron is married to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>PLAYS CHESS WITH</th>
<th>IS MARRIED TO</th>
<th>WORKS WITH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bill</td>
<td>John</td>
<td>Alice</td>
<td>Anne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ron</td>
<td>Anne</td>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>Mary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter</td>
<td>Alice</td>
<td>Anne</td>
<td>Sue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sally</td>
<td>Mary</td>
<td>John</td>
<td>Alice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'We’re planning a small dinner party. Do you have any vegetables no one’s heard of yet?’
prepositions in passive clauses

In passive structures, verb + preposition groups stay together. Compare:

ACTIVE: The doctors operated on her yesterday morning.
PASSEIVE: She was operated on yesterday morning.

1 Take words from each box to complete the sentences. More than one answer may be possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>heard</th>
<th>looked</th>
<th>operated</th>
<th>paid</th>
<th>played</th>
<th>sat</th>
<th>slept</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>spoken</td>
<td>talked</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>for</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 She was taken into hospital today, and she’s going to be ____ tomorrow.
2 I don’t like being ____ behind my back.
3 The new secretary’s working very badly. He’ll have to be ____.
4 I don’t think he came home last night. His bed hasn’t been ____.
5 That antique chair’s not really meant to be ____.
6 It’s not really our house yet. It hasn’t been ____.
7 He left for America in 1960, and he hasn’t been ____ since.
8 The cat loves being ____.
9 He’s so shy: it even upsets him to be ____.

2 Make three or more questions from the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Who was</th>
<th>America</th>
<th>Australia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the novel Anna Karenina</td>
<td>Hamlet</td>
<td>Happy Birthday to You</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>penicillin</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>television</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electricity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the film The Birds</td>
<td>the Eiffel Tower</td>
<td>the Taj Mahal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Mona Lisa (‘La Gioconda’)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>built</th>
<th>composed</th>
<th>directed</th>
<th>discovered</th>
<th>invented</th>
<th>painted</th>
<th>written</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>by?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 If you are in a class, write more questions like the ones in Exercise 2 and ask other students.
preposition after adjective + infinitive

**Prepositions come after infinitives** in structures like:

*She's easy to work with.*  
*He's interesting to talk to.*

1. **Change the sentences. Example:**

   It's easy to work with Jane.  ⇒  *Jane's easy to work with.*

1. It's nice to talk to her.
2. It's difficult to live with him.
3. It's impossible to argue with my brother.
4. It's not very pleasant to travel in those old trains.
5. It's not easy to drive on ice.
6. It was difficult to swim across the river.
7. It's hard to get to her village.
8. It's very easy to get on with him.
9. It's difficult to paint with water-colours.
10. It's interesting to work with her.

2. **Join beginnings, middles and ends to make six or more sentences.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>MIDDLES</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A broken cup is</td>
<td>boring</td>
<td>to listen to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A broken fork is</td>
<td>comfortable</td>
<td>to sit on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A cushion is</td>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>to eat with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A small hard chair is</td>
<td>hard</td>
<td>to talk about.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A warm bath is</td>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>to drink out of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baby animals are</td>
<td>nice</td>
<td>to listen to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classical music is</td>
<td>uncomfortable</td>
<td>to talk to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family problems can be</td>
<td></td>
<td>to lie in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lectures are often</td>
<td></td>
<td>to play with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People who travel a lot can be</td>
<td></td>
<td>to sit on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Using this structure, what can you say about the following?**

   - a very small spoon  
   - shoes that are too small  
   - a hard bed  
   - a noisy hotel room  
   - a broken pencil
numbers

A hundred, a thousand etc are less formal than one hundred etc. Compare:

I'll let you have it for a hundred pounds.
We are prepared to sell the item for a sum of one hundred pounds.

We use one hundred etc when we wish to sound precise.

It costs exactly one hundred dollars.

We use one, not a, just before another number or inside a larger number.
1,300: one thousand, three hundred (NOT a thousand, three hundred)
£1.70: one pound seventy
six thousand, one hundred and eleven (NOT six thousand, a hundred ...)

1 Write the figures in words.
1 We drove about 100 miles.
2 He wants £1,450 for the car.
3 'What's the population of your village?' 'Oh. 1,000. I suppose.'
4 3,144
5 $1.85
6 (on a cheque): Pay G S Hallam £1,000 only

Dozen, hundred, thousand and million have no -s after a number.

few or several.

three dozen bottles (NOT three dozens (of) bottles)
a few hundred times
six thousand miles
several million pounds

In other cases we use dozens (of), hundreds (of) etc.

We've got dozens of bottles.
He's done it hundreds of times.
She made millions in the property market.

2 Put in dozen(s) (of), hundred(s) (of), thousand(s) (of) or million(s) (of).
1 He had to sign his name five _____ times. (hundred)
2 We export 40 _____ tons a year. (million)
3 I just need to borrow a few _____ pounds. (hundred)
4 I've told you _____ times. (million)
5 _____ refugees are flooding into the country. (thousand)
6 Could I have two _____ eggs? (dozen)

For explanations of the words that we use to talk about grammar, see pages 296–302.
3  Do you know how to spell ordinal numbers? Write these in words.

1st    first  2nd    3rd    4th    5th    6th    7th    8th
9th    10th   12th   16th   20th   21st   30th
100th  1000th

We use ordinal numbers to say the names of Kings, Queens and popes.

Henry the Eighth  Elizabeth the Second  Plus the Twelfth

'I'm afraid you've got the wrong number. This is Louis XV.'

WRITING DATES:  30 March 1995; 10 June 1980
SAVING DATES:  the thirtieth of March / March the thirtieth, nineteen ninety-five
               the tenth of June / June the tenth, nineteen eighty

4  Change these from written to spoken or from spoken to written form.

1  the tenth of April, nineteen ninety-six
2  September the seventeenth, nineteen eleven
3  the sixteenth of June, nineteen seventy-nine
4  16 May 1970
5  12 March 1993
6  14 January 1986

Telephone numbers are usually said one number at a time.

3174522: three one seven four five two two (or ... double two)
20645: two oh (or zero) six four five

5  Write the following all in words:

1  your telephone number
2  your date of birth
3  the approximate population of your home village/town and your country
Contractions like she's, isn't represent the pronunciation of informal speech. They are common and correct in informal writing, but unusual in formal writing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE CONTRACTIONS:</th>
<th>NEGATIVE CONTRACTIONS:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRONOUN + 'm, 're, 's, 've, 'd, 'll</td>
<td>AUXILIARY VERB / BE + n't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am → I'm</td>
<td>are not → aren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are → we're</td>
<td>is not → isn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she is → she's</td>
<td>have not → haven't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he has → he's</td>
<td>has not → hasn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have → I've</td>
<td>bad not → badn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you had → you'd</td>
<td>do not → don't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you would → you'd</td>
<td>does not → doesn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they will → they'll</td>
<td>did not → didn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will not → won't</td>
<td>need not → needn't</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With be, two negative forms are common: you're not or you aren't, she's not or she isn't etc. With other verbs, the forms with n't are more common. Am not is contracted to aren't only in questions.

I'm late. aren't I? But I'm not ready. (Not I aren't ready.)

The contraction 's (= is or has) can be written after pronouns, nouns, question words, there and here.

It's late. Your father's gone home. How's everything?
There's the phone. Here's your money.

The contractions 're, 've, 'd and 'll are normally only written after pronouns.

1 Rewrite these sentences using contractions.

1 I am tired. 10 My car has broken down.
2 She is French. 11 You need not worry.
3 She has forgotten. 12 I cannot swim.
4 They have finished. 13 The door will not close.
5 I thought you had left. 14 It does not matter.
6 We will tell you tomorrow. 15 I have not forgotten.
7 I wish he would stop. 16 I am not sorry.
8 How is your mother? 17 Why are you not in bed?
9 Nobody is perfect. 18 Do you not like this?
Affirmative contractions are not usually stressed. When an affirmative auxiliary verb is stressed (for example at the end of a sentence) we don't use a contraction. Compare:

'You're late.' 'Yes, we are.' (NOT 'Yes, we're.')
'He's forgotten.' 'I think he has.' (NOT 'I think he's.')

Negative contractions can be stressed, and are possible in any position.
'it isn't true.' 'No, it isn't.'

2 Rewrite the sentences only if contractions are possible.
1 Can you tell me where she is staying?
2 'Remember to take your medicine.' 'Yes, I will.'
3 Do you know where she is?
4 'Have you paid?' 'No, I have not.'
5 'It is not true.'
6 'On the contrary, it is true.'
7 'Would you like another cup?' 'Yes, I would.'
8 I do not believe they are fresh.
9 Telephone if you cannot come.
10 'Can you help me?' 'No, I cannot just at the moment.'

3 Complete the poem by putting in the contracted forms of the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cannot</th>
<th>he has</th>
<th>he would</th>
<th>I will</th>
<th>that is</th>
<th>there is</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we have</td>
<td>you have</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mother, _1_ a strange man
Waiting at the door
With a familiar sort of face
You feel _2_ seen before.

Says his name is Jesus
Can we spare a couple of bob*
Says _3_ been made redundant
And now _4_ find a job.

Yes I think he is a foreigner
Egyptian or a Jew
Oh aye, and that reminds me _5_ like some water too.

Well shall I give him what he wants
Or send him on his way?
OK _6_ give him 5p
Say _7_ all _8_ got today.

From Roger McGough: Three Rusty Nails

* a couple of bob (shillings): a little money
grammar: useful words

It will be easier to use this book if you know the words in the boxes. If you don’t know them, we suggest you read the explanations and do the exercises.

Nouns are mostly names of things. e.g. cat, idea, money, oil, reason, strength.

Singular nouns: cat, idea, reason; plural nouns: cats, ideas, reasons.

Countable nouns (e.g. cat) can be singular or plural: uncountable nouns (e.g. oil, happiness) are only singular, and cannot come after a/an.

Adjectives describe things, e.g. old, big, strange, ready, famous, impossible.

Comparative adjectives: older, more famous.
Superlative adjectives: oldest, most famous.

Determiners go before (adjectives and) nouns. They include articles (a, the), possessives (e.g. my, your), demonstratives (e.g. this, that) and quantifiers (e.g. some, any, few, much, several, enough).

1 Look at the expressions in the box and write down:

1 all the nouns, and say whether they are uncountable, singular countable or plural

2 all the adjectives, and say whether they are ordinary, comparative or superlative

3 all the determiners, and say whether they are articles, possessives, demonstratives or quantifiers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a few small potatoes</th>
<th>some cold soup</th>
<th>this stupid suggestion</th>
<th>my best suit</th>
<th>a more interesting book</th>
<th>the cheapest petrol</th>
<th>his older brother</th>
<th>those high buildings</th>
<th>our worst problem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>many younger people</td>
<td>these new rules</td>
<td>no dry wood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pronouns replace nouns. They include personal pronouns (e.g. I, she, us, you), possessive pronouns (e.g. mine, yours), reflexive pronouns (e.g. myself, oneself) and relative pronouns (e.g. who, whose, which, that).

2 Write down (a) three more personal pronouns; (b) three more possessive pronouns; (c) three more reflexive pronouns.

Verbs mostly refer to actions, events or situations, e.g. run, turn, stop, seem.

The auxiliary verbs be, have and do are used with other verbs to make tenses, questions, negatives and passives.

Modal auxiliary verbs are a small group of verbs (can, may, must etc – see page 106) which add meanings like possibility or obligation.

Tenses are forms of verbs which show time relations. There are future, present and past tenses. These can be simple (e.g. will work, works, worked), progressive (e.g. will be working, is working, was working) or perfect (e.g. will have worked, has worked, had worked).

3 Read these sentences and write down the verbs.

She lost her temper. It never rains there. Open the door.
This fish tastes funny. Our team won. I got a letter from Dave.

4 Look at these verbs, and say whether they are future, present or past and whether they are simple, progressive or perfect. Which are the auxiliary verbs?

1 will rain
2 is working
3 had forgotten
4 sits
5 came
6 will be seeing
7 was running
8 will have finished
9 has stopped
10 did not answer
conditional -ing form infinitive perfect infinitive
past participle imperative active passive

**Conditionals:** forms made with would, e.g. *I would like a drink.*

- **-ing forms:** smoking, waiting etc

- **Infinitives:** *I want to go; We must stop* etc

- **Perfect infinitives:** *She must have arrived* etc

- **Past participles:** stolen, gone etc

- **Imperatives:** Please *sit down; Go away* etc

- **Active verbs:** Anne *invited George; We make cars* etc

- **Passive verbs:** George *was invited by Anne; Cars are made in our factory* etc

5 Find a conditional, an -ing form, an infinitive, a perfect infinitive, a past participle, an imperative and an active and passive verb in this text. And write them down.

I smoke too much, and I would certainly stop smoking if I could, but when my friends talk about it I just say: ‘Shut up and leave me alone’. I don’t actually think I’ll stop unless I’m ordered to by a doctor. I suppose I should never have started.

6 Find the prepositions and adverbs and write them down. What sort of word is *out* in *walked out?* Can you write down five more prepositions and five more adverbs?

Rob usually sits at the back with Ann, but yesterday he suddenly decided to sit at the front by Karen for a change. Ann got terribly upset and started shouting at Rob as loud as she could, so then Rob got upset and walked out in a temper.
subject  object  direct/indirect  complement

The subject usually comes before the verb, and most often says who or what does something. e.g. My father drives fast cars: She sings well.

The (direct) object usually comes after the verb: it often says who or what something happens to. e.g. My father drives fast cars: I broke a cup.

Some verbs have two objects: the indirect object says who something is given to, done for etc. e.g. She sent the manager a dozen roses.

7 Write down the subjects, direct objects and indirect objects from these sentences.

1 Jake writes songs. 4 What sort of books do you like?
2 I gave Monica my address. 5 Write me a postcard when you have time.
3 Can you tell me the time?

After be, seem and some other verbs, we can describe the subject with a noun or adjective complement. e.g. He's a doctor: She seems nervous.

8 What are the complements in these sentences?

1 You're pretty. 3 Are you a student?
2 He looks tired. 4 When I saw him I felt sorry.

sentence  clause  main/subordinate clause  relative clause
indirect speech  conjunction  tag  affirmative
interrogative  negative

A sentence begins with a capital letter and ends with a full stop, a question mark or an exclamation mark.

Some sentences have more than one clause (e.g. I'll phone when I get home).

Subordinate clauses are introduced by conjunctions (e.g. when I get home).

Some conjunctions: if, when, because, while, after, although.

Main clauses (e.g. I'll phone) do not need conjunctions.

Affirmative verbs/sentences make statements (e.g. You're late).

Interrogative verbs/sentences ask questions (e.g. Am I late?).

Negative verbs/sentences are made with not (e.g. I'm not late).
9 Write down the conjunctions and subordinate clauses from these sentences. Which sentences have interrogative main clauses? Which have affirmative main clauses? Which have negative main clauses?

1 She talks all the time while I'm trying to work.
2 I don't mind if you stay out late.
3 Did you tell Alice where you were staying?
4 When I get back I'll explain everything.
5 Before you went out, did you switch the lights off?
6 Although it was snowing, it wasn't very cold.

Relative clauses are introduced by relative pronouns. e.g. This is the switch which turns on the heating.

In indirect speech, we use subordinate clauses to report things that are said or thought. e.g. She said that I was wrong: I wondered if they were lost.

Tags are short auxiliary + pronoun expressions that are added to sentences. e.g. It's getting warmer, isn't it?

consonant vowel (un)contracted stress(ed) intonation expression formal informal emphatic

Consonants: b, c, f, g, h etc. Vowels: a, e, i, o, u.

Uncontracted forms: I will, is not etc. Contractions Contracted forms: I'll, isn't etc.

Stress: pronouncing one part of a word or one word more strongly than others. In better, we stress bett; in return, we stress turn; in It's late, we stress late.

Intonation: the 'musical' movement of the voice up and down. Questions often end with a rising intonation.

Expression: a group of words that belong together. e.g. out of work: on Monday.

Informal language is used, for example, in friendly conversations: formal language, for example, in business letters. We've got a suggestion is informal. We have a suggestion is formal.

Emphatic: expressing something strongly. We had no money at all is more emphatic than We didn't have any money.
Answers to exercises

1. (a and an) 1 an  2 a  3 an  4 a  5 a  6 an  7 a  8 a  9 a  10 an
   11 an  12 a  13 a  14 an  15 a  16 a  17 an  18 a

1. (a/an and one) 1 One  2 a  3 an  4 one/an  5 a  6 one  7 a  8 a  9 one

1. 2 is a doctor  3 is a teacher  4 is a scientist  5 is a musician
   6 is a painter / an artist  7 is a photographer  8 is a secretary  9 is a builder
   10 is a hairdresser  11 is an electrician  12 is a butcher  13 is a mechanic
   14 is a cook  15 is a gardener  16 is a (lorry/truck) driver

2. A curtain is a thing that you put across a window.
   A dictionary is a thing used for finding the meanings of words.
   A dentist is a person who helps people to keep their teeth healthy.
   A lawyer is a person who helps people with legal problems.
   A mechanic is a person who services and repairs cars.
   A tap is a thing that water comes out of.
   A teacher is a person who helps people to learn things.
   A telephone is a thing used for talking to people who are far away.

20. (Examples of possible answers)
   1's got a long nose / a small mouth.  7's got a short beard / a round face.
   2's got a round face / a nice smile.  8's got a big mouth / a loud voice.
   3's got a long neck / a small beard.  9's got a big moustache / a long nose.
   4's got an oval face / a long nose.  10's got a small mouth / an oval face.
   5's got a small nose / a big mouth.  11's got a small moustache / a nice smile.
   6's got a long beard / a bad temper.  12's got a long beard / a square face.

21. 1 the  2 the  3 a  4 a  5 the; the  6 the; the  7 the; the  8 a; a; the; the
   9 the  10 the

22-23. 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

23. 1 the wheel  2 the novel  3 the computer  4 the violin  5 the ballpoint pen
   6 the fax machine  7 the whale  8 the X-ray machine

24-25. 1 to town; on foot / by bus / by car  2 at work; to bed  3 to school
   4 at Christmas / at Easter / in summer; at home  5 in the evening; at night
   6 at university; in hospital

2. 'He's from Texas.'

3. (Examples of possible answers)
   B. We met the King at dinner in Oxford Prison.
   C. Paul went home by car.
   D. Anna goes to college in Sydney by bus.
   E. All of us met at Boston Airport.
   F. It's easy to get to Oxford station on foot.
   G. Anna flew to the Hague from Ottawa Airport.
   H. All of us went to Oxford Town Hall on foot.
   I. Anna flew a plane from Stirling to Lake Huron.
   J. I saw Paul at dinner in Stirling yesterday.
   K. The King has just come home from Sydney.
   L. Can you go by train from the Alps to the North Sea?
M All of us are going to try and climb Everest.
N I travel from home to work by bike.
O It's easy to get from Ottawa to Boston by train.
P The King was in prison in Cardiff.

29-27
1 a: a: the 2 a: the 3 :: 4 a: the 5 an: a 6 an: the 7 ::
8 :: a 9 :: a 10 :: 11 :: the 12 13 :: a 14 a: the
15 a: the 16 :: a 17 the: the 18 a: a 19 a: the 20 a: a 21 a: an: the
22 a: an 23 ::

2 1 :: a (B) 2 the (D) 3 :: :: :: (C) 4 the: a: an: :: a (A)

29-29
1 DIY This belongs to me. This is my coat. This is mine.
This belongs to you. This is your money. This is yours.
This belongs to him. This is his car. This is his.
This belongs to her. This is her office. This is hers.
This belongs to us. This is our house. This is ours.
This belongs to them. This is their dog. This is theirs.
Who does this belong to? Whose bike is this? Whose is this bike?

2 1 yours: hers 2 Whose: ours 3 your: Its 4 his: her 5 their: 6 our: theirs
7 my: mine

3 2 that unemployed brother of hers 8 a beautiful cousin of hers
3 another good friend of mine 9 this wonderful news of yours
4 a brilliant idea of mine 10 that lazy son of ours
5 these stupid plans of his 11 those impossible children of theirs
6 those old books of yours 12 these silly cats of ours
7 some distant relations of his

4 1 his jacket raincoat 2 her foot mouth 3 its foot tail mouth 4 their coats
5 my raincoat jacket 6 your mouth

5 'No, he’s not ours!...'

30
2 DIY With this/these: happening now; just about to start; here; near
With that/those: finished; said before; over there; distant; unwanted

3 1 this 2 that 3 these 4 that 5 those 6 this 7 this 8 that 9 that
10 That 11 that 12 that 13 this: that
4 this

31
1 1 which 2 What 3 Which 4 Which (or What) 5 What 6 Which 7 What
8 Which 9 Which 10 Which 11 What

32-33
1 1 refuses 2 doubt 3 hardly 4 never 5 seldom 6 without
2 1 any: some 2 some 3 anything 4 any 5 some 6 somebody
3 1 anybody 2 some 3 some 4 any 5 anything 6 somebody 7 any
4 1 any 2 something 3 anything 4 something anything 5 some
6 something 7 any 8 any 9 any 10 some: some 11 anything 12 any
13 some any 14 anything 15 anyone someone 16 any 17 any 18 some
5 "... anywhere with anybody at any time ..."

34
1 1 any 2 3 some 4 :: 5 6 some 7 8 some 9 some 10 11 12 any 13 some 14 ::
2 some children
35 1 no  2 Nobody  3 No  4 none  5 No  6 None  7 no  8 nobody  9 None  10 no; no; no
2 (Examples of possible answers)
   2 Nobody in my family speaks French.  7 There’s nothing good on at the cinema.
   3 Nobody speaks seventy-six languages.  8 I had no money.
   4 There’s nothing to eat at home.  9 I had nothing to say.
   5 I’m afraid I’ve got no coffee.  10 None of them.
   6 There’s nobody at home just now.

36 1 Any  1 No  3 anything  4 nothing  5 can’t hear  6 any  7 nobody  8 anybody
2 (Examples of possible answers)
   1 any garage; any supermarket; any post office; any sports shop; any bookshop
   2 any English teacher; any lawyer; any accountant; any photographer; any farmer

37 1 A There’s no place for women in the church.
   B I suppose you’ve brought me here to tell me you haven’t got any money.
   C It’s your birthday? Cook anything you want for supper.
   D I’m sorry, he’s not seeing anybody/anyone today.

38 1 1 All  2 everything  3 everything  4 everything  5 all  6 everything  7 everything  8 everything  9 all
   2 1 All  2 everybody  3 All  4 all; everybody  5 everybody  6 all

39 1 a whole family  all the islands  the whole road system  the whole of South Africa
   all the children  the whole country  all the traffic  the whole of Asia  a whole week
   all the vegetables  the whole political party  all the students  all the luggage
   all the meat  all the MPs  a whole class

40–41 2 1 very much / so much  2 as many  3 too much  4 very much / so much
   5 very much / so much  6 as many / so many  7 so many / too many  8 as many
   3 1 little  2 little  3 few  4 few  5 little  6 little  7 few; few  8 few
   4 1 little  2 a little  3 Few  4 a few  5 a few  6 a little; a little  7 little  8 few
   1 It is not much use ...  3 Only a few teenagers ...
   7 Nadia didn’t drink much coffee or any alcohol / ... and she didn’t drink (any) alcohol.
   8 Unfortunately, he hadn’t got / didn’t have many friends.

42 1 1 the least; the fewest  2 Fewer (or Less); less  3 fewer (or less); less  4 less; less
   5 the least  6 the fewest
2 (Examples of possible answers)
   1 less confident  2 the least optimistic  3 less fluently  4 less prosperous
   5 less politely  6 the least dangerous

43 1 1 others  2 other  3 others  4 others  5 other  6 other  7 others  8 others
   9 other  10 other
2 more clothes  more friends  another child  another three pages / three more pages
   another hour another mile more sleep more job possibilities
   another few days / a few more days another hundred pounds more money
   more time more freedom more holidays another problem
   another twenty miles / twenty more miles

44–45 1 DIY  Enough normally comes after an adjective or adverb, and before a noun.
2 enough money; enough time  3 big enough  4 enough friends  5 old enough
6 enough champagne  7 hard enough  8 clever enough; enough confidence

3 (Examples of possible answers)
2 There were too many people for one car.  3 She was too busy.
4 It is too expensive.  5 There’s too much traffic.  6 I wrote too slowly.
7 There’s too much noise in here.  8 No, he’s talking/speaking too quickly.

4 (Examples of possible answers)
2 not enough people  3 not enough water  4 too much water
5 too much work  6 too many cats  7 not enough food  8 too much food

5 2 old enough to take  3 too quietly for me to bear
4 clean enough for people to swim in  5 well enough to decide
6 too muddy for them to see  7 too tired to understand  8 well enough to listen
9 too fast for the police to catch

1 1 of 2 of 3 – 4 – 5 – 6 of 7 of 8 – 9 of 10 of 11 – 12 –
13 – 14 –

2 1 Most people  2 Most of the people  3 most of the people  4 Most people
5 most people  6 Most of the people  7 most people  8 Most of the people

3 ... enough disorder; ... A little less noise ...

1 1 me  2 me  3 he; him  4 Me  5 me; him  6 he; her  7 him
8 me/him/her  9 me  10 her

2 1 Anne has (got) the same car as I have.  6 We’re not. We aren’t as old as them.
2 They have been here longer than we have.  7 He had a bigger meal than me.
3 I am much taller than he is.  8 I’m not as quick as her.
4 ‘He is going to Mexico.’ ‘So am I.’  9 ‘We’re from York.’ ‘Me too.’
4 10 ‘Who wants a drink?’ ‘Me.’
5 ‘Who said that?’ ‘She did.’

3 1 She  2 it  3 It’s  4 it/her  5 it  6 Who  7 It  8 it  9 who  10 it

1 1 herself  2 himself  3 itself  4 ourselves  5 him  6 yourself  7 herself; her
8 you/us/her/him  9 me

2 1 ourselves  2 herself  3 himself  4 themselves  5 myself  6 itself

3 1 each other  2 themselves  3 each other  4 yourselves  5 each other
6 ourselves

4 1 ourselves  2 him  3 each other  4 myself  5 her  6 me/him/her/us them
7 myself  8 each other  9 itself  10 themselves  11 yourself  12 you; them

52-53 (Examples of possible sentences)
1 One needs / You need a passport to get into the US.
2 One needs / You need a ticket to travel by train.
3 Can one/you fly directly from Gdansk to Prague?
4 One has / You have to be good at maths to be a physicist.
5 One needs / You need a warm climate to grow oranges.
6 One/You can’t get a driving licence until one is/you’re seventeen.
7 One/You can’t eat soup with a fork.
8 One has / You have to get up early to see animals in the forest.

2 1 They  2 they  3 they  4 They  5 You  6 you  7 your  8 you  9 you
10 they  11 you  12 them
3 1 they 2 their 3 their 4 they: them 5 them 6 her 7 theirs 8 they 9 them 10 her

1 2 red woollen one / big grey leather one 3 unsweetened 4 tall ones 5 new ones 6 long sunny one 7 Chinese 8 solid practical ones 9 sharp one 10 big grey leather one

2 1 One 2 one 3 Mine 4 some 5 one 6 any 7 hers 8 some

1 ‘... We love you because you’re ours, like the car.’  
‘You sold my what to who?’  
‘Could you tell me if my glasses are ready yet?’  
‘Have you seen a lady without me?’  
‘Yes, of course it’s important enough to disturb him.’  
‘Have you any “Do It Herself” books?’

1 uncountable: dust; flour; happiness; knowledge; love; milk; ment; music; oil; rain; snow  
countable: book; cup; flower; mountain; piano; river; song; table; wall

2 1 a glass 2 glass 3 wood 4 a wood 5 pity 6 a pity 7 Time 8 times 9 beers 10 Beer 11 experience 12 an experience 13 a chicken 14 chicken


2 a flash of lightning; a stroke of luck; a clap of thunder

3 ‘A word of advice, Arthur ...’  ‘... Our baggage has been sent ...’

1 DIY 1 By adding -s.  2 By changing -y to -ies.  3 By adding -s.  4 s, z, sh, ch, x 5 echoes, heroes, potatoes, tomatoes.

2 addresses boxes brushes computers desks faces guys lists losses messes patches peaches plays poppies replies toys trees videos witches worries

1 1 crisis – crises; means 2 aircraft; sheep 3 dozen; thousand 4 shelf; wolf 5 mouse; tooth 6 mathematics; news 7 police; scissors

1a school has 1b school have 2a club have 2b club has 3a staff do 3b staff does 4a class is 4b class are 5a orchestra are 5b orchestra is

2 ‘... Shall I tell them ...’

3 1 have 2 have 3 is 4 is 5 have; are 6 is 7 are 8 has 9 are 10 has 11 is 12 are 13 are 14 has 15 was 16 were 17 Is 18 have

1 (Examples of possible answers)  
Ann and Pat’s car our dog’s nose most people’s health Jonathan’s education those women’s legs Katie’s fear of heights Simon and Jill’s car doctors’ ideas

2 1 ✓ 2 Are you Al’s daughter?  3 ✓ 4 Here’s Barry’s address.  5 ✓ 6 ✓ 7 ✓ 8 ✓ 9 It’s a crazy idea of Alice’s.  10 Where is that brother of Carol’s?

1 1g; 2b; 3h; 4a; 5f; 6c; 7e; 8i; 9d; 10f

2 1 a music shop 2 a Birmingham man 3 a picture frame 4 mint tea 5 the station clock 6 a space rocket 7 a biscuit factory 8 soap powder

3 antique shop / bicycle shop bicycle race bus station cowboy film kitchen door grape juice road map newspaper publisher
1 a chocolate cake  3 a kitchen cupboard  4 a matchbox  5 toothpaste
7 the kitchen door  8 a wine bottle  9 a train timetable  11 garden chairs

1 a bus station  2 a toy shop  3 the teacher's office  4 computer disks
5 my mother's chair  6 car papers  7 Tom's plan  8 a telephone box
9 the dog's toy  10 a horse race  11 vegetable soup  12 China's history
13 a cowboy film  14 street lamps  15 the firm's office  16 a bath towel
17 that cat's tail  18 a teacher trainer  19 the paper's editor  20 a glass factory

2 '... Mother's Day card ...'

1 Angela's leg the highest branches of the trees the lock of my suitcase
your dog's leg the bank's branch in Paris the floor of your office
the leg of the table my family's name the town's atmosphere
our company's best sales manager the police force's main problem
next week's timetable last night's party today's news

2 1 Helen's story: the story of the French revolution
2 the bed of the stream: the patient's bed
3 a/the policy of full employment: the company's policy
4 my favourite author's style: the style of the 1930s
5 the place of language education: women's place
6 the ideas of modern physics: my son's ideas
7 the club's rules: the rules of football
8 the committee's views: a/the view of the lake
9 the cat's head: the head of the queue
10 the arm of the chair: John's arm

3 'Fear? He doesn't know the meaning of the word.'
'Let's go. I've got somebody else's car parked outside.'
'Right, Mr Wilson. I have here the results of your tests.'

1 calm  2 calmly/clearly/slowly/softly/unhappily  3 cheaply  4 beautifully
5 terrible  6 softly  7 cheap  8 slow  9 calmly  10 beautiful  11 soft
12 clear  13 terribly  14 slowly  15 unhappy  16 clearly

2 1 amazingly  2 sure  3 real  4 truly  5 gently  6 amazing  7 wonderfully
8 gentle  9 slightly  10 really  11 kindly  12 badly  13 wonderful; awful
14 cleverly  15 surprisingly  16 unbelievably

1 adjectives: cowardly; deadly; friendly; likely; lively; lonely; lovely; silly; ugly
both adjectives and adverbs: daily; weekly; monthly; yearly; early; fast; hard; late;
loud; well

2 2 daily/weekly/monthly/yearly/lively/lovely/silly
3 lively/lovely/silly/ugly/fast/loud
4 fast/loud
5 daily/weekly/monthly/yearly/early/late
6 cowardly/friendly/hard/lovely/silly
7 cowardly/friendly/hard/lively/lonely/lovely/silly/ugly
8 likely
9 lovely
10 friendly/lonely/lovely
11 early/late/late
12 hard
13 deadly
14 deadly/fast/hard/lively/lonely/lovely/silly
15 lonely/hard/lovely
16 yearly/daily/friendly/weekly/monthly/early/late/loud
1 hot breezy weather
3 untidy red hair
4 The man was young and bearded.
5 The sea was cold and rough.
6 The church was old and ugly.

2 the blind
3 the young
4 the poor
5 the rich
6 the living
7 the poor:
8 the rich:
9 the dead:
10 the living
11 the blind

1 a beautiful little Belgian city
2 a local jazz club
3 an excellent cold dinner
4 modern industrial buildings
5 a red silk evening dress
6 narrow colourless eyes
7 a flat gold frame
8 lovely old furniture

9 Swiss drawing ink
10 a short leather jacket
11 little brick squares
12 French ski boots
13 a blue woollen tie
14 grey cotton trousers
15 black nylon swimming trunks

1 (Examples of possible answers)
I am always in trouble.
My mother is never depressed.
Most people are usually friendly.

5 1 You are usually here ...
2 Her mum always cooks ...
3 We usually book ...
4 They probably think ...
5 You should always look ...
6 She is probably going to stay ...
7 Chocolate cakes are definitely the best.
8 I will probably be able ...
9 I have never had ...
10 We never saw sweets ...
11 I definitely remember ...
12 Do you usually read ...
13 I can usually manage ...
14 She has never done that before.
15 Something is definitely burning.
16 She has always been nervous.
17 I never feel cold ...
18 They were always against me.
19 We are definitely going to win.
20 February is usually the worst.
21 It is sometimes very difficult.
22 I always buy them ...
23 I have often tried ...
24 They are always fighting.
25 She often saw ...
26 You are probably right.

2 (Examples of possible answers)
I work every day, even on Sundays. Only my mother really understands me.
They do everything together. They even brush their teeth together.
Hello! It's only me! Even the cat thinks you're stupid.
She likes all animals, even rats. Only the clock broke the silence.
Only his wife knew that he was ill. Even his children hated him.
You can borrow it, but only for a few minutes.

1 I work best at night.
2 I paid the bill at once.
3 He always moves very slowly in the morning.
4 She speaks Japanese fluently.
5 I think we'd better open the parcel now.
6 She was crying quietly in her room.
7 We talked about it briefly at lunchtime.
8  I'm going to break the eggs carefully into the bowl.
9  Ann works at the village shop on Saturdays.
10 I can't explain my feelings clearly.
11 The team played brilliantly yesterday.
12 I always worked very hard at school.
13 She practises the piano here every evening.
14 I don't think she plays tennis very well.
15 He read every word slowly.
16 Put the butter in the fridge at once.

1 Are you still in the same job?
2 He's seventeen, but he's already married.
3 Has Susan arrived yet? (or ... already arrived?)
4 I've already finished!
5 9 a.m., and it's still dark!
6 4 p.m., and it's already dark!
7 Have you had breakfast yet? (or ... already had breakfast?)
8 Look - it's still raining.
9 Our old car still runs OK.
10 Is the rice cooked yet? (or ... already cooked?)
11 She's already gone to bed.
12 Is she still in that little flat?
13 Why are you still in bed? (or Why are you already ... ?)
14 I'm already bored with my new job.
15 It's not time to stop yet.
16 Have you written that letter yet? (or ... already written ... ?)

1 DIY To make the comparative and superlative of one-syllable adjectives ending in -e, you add -er, -est.
To make the comparative and superlative of other one-syllable adjectives, you add -er, -est.
To make the comparative and superlative of two-syllable adjectives ending in -y, you change y to i and add -er, -est.
To make the comparative and superlative of other two-syllable adjectives, you put more and most in front.
To make the comparative and superlative of longer adjectives, you put more and most in front.

2 DIY Before -er and -est, we double the last letter of adjectives that end in one vowel + one consonant.

3 more/most boring cheaper/cheapest finer/finest fuller/fullest funnier/funnierest more/most handsome harder/hardest more/most honest more/most interesting lazier/laziest lighter/lightest more/most nervous sadder/sadderest safer/safest siller/silliest sorrier/sorriest more/most stupid more/most uncomfortable more/most useful more/most violent wetter/wettest

1 (Examples of possible answers)
2 It was the best. 3 She lived farther/further away than the others.
4 The cold got worse. 5 The worst. 6 Her older/elder sister: his older/elder brother: her oldest/eldest sister. 7 Further tests. 8 The one that needs (the) least water.
9 The Blacks have more money than the Browns. The Browns have less money than the Blacks. 10 The park is farther/further away than the post office.

1 faster 2 more beautifully 3 (the) hardest 4 earlier 5 the most sensitively
6 more peacefully 7 the latest 8 the most fluently
3 1 more slowly 2 faster 3 earlier 4 harder
1 (Examples of possible answers)
The Great Pyramid is very much older than the Taj Mahal.
The Amazon is far longer than the Thames.
North America is a little larger than South America.
A dog is a bit bigger than a cat.
A computer is a lot faster than a typewriter.
Asia is even bigger than Africa.
A parrot sings no better than a cat.
Are you any more intelligent than your boss?

2 (Examples of possible answers)
1 Is this box stronger than that one? Is this box the strongest you’ve got?
2 Alistair is taller than anyone else in the class. Alistair is the tallest in the class.
3 The state of Alaska is bigger than the other states in the US. The state of Alaska is the biggest in the US.
4 This wine is more expensive than that one. This wine is the most expensive in the world.
5 Al’s party was better than Pat’s party. Al’s party was the best I’ve ever been to.

3 (Examples of possible answers)
Car Y is more expensive than car X.
Car Z is the most expensive of the three.
Car Y is more economical than car Z.
Car X is the most economical of all.
Car Y is safer than car X.
Car Z is the safest of the three.
Car X is the most comfortable of the three.
Car X is more comfortable than the other two cars.
Car X is much better off-road than car Y.
Car Z is the best of all off-road.
Car Z has more luggage space than car X.
Car Y has the most luggage space of the three.

4 (Examples of possible answers)
1 faster and faster
2 taller and taller
3 hotter and hotter
4 more and more difficult/complicated or harder and harder
5 fatter and fatter
6 more and more depressed/unhappy
7 more and more expensive
8 more and more expensive

5 (Examples of possible answers)
1 My mother’s driving is getting more and more dangerous ...
2 ... he’s getting better and better.
3 ... police officers are getting younger and younger.
4 My temper is getting worse and worse.
5 It’s getting harder and harder to find time ...
6 Professional tennis is getting more and more boring.
7 Restaurants are getting more and more expensive.
8 Her holidays are getting longer and longer.

6 (Examples of possible answers)
1 the faster ... the more ...
2 the longer ... the more ...
3 the older ... the darker ...
4 the more ... the angrier ...
5 the more ... the more ...
6 the less ...
7 the more ... the more ...
8 the warmer ... the more ...

7 (Examples of possible answers)
1 The more ice cream he eats, the fatter he gets; and the fatter he gets, the more ice cream he eats.
2 The more he reads, the more he forgets; and the more he forgets, the more he reads.
3 The more she ignores him, the more he loves her; and the more he loves her, the more she ignores him.
4 The more shoes she buys, the more shoes she wants; and the more shoes she wants, the more shoes she buys.
5 The more money we spend, the more friends we have; and the more friends we have, the more money we spend.
6 The more I sleep, the more tired I am; and the more tired I am, the more I sleep.
1 (Examples of possible answers)
2 in the Army  3 of the books I own  4 in the class  5 in Europe
6 in my family  7 of the four men  8 of the girls in her school  9 in the office
10 of the paintings in the gallery  11 in Rome  12 in the school

2 (Examples of possible answers)
1 Florence is the ...  2 Wolves are ...  3 I think Stoppard is the ...  4 Bill is the ...
5 The streets are ...  6 Working in the country is the ...  7 I feel

1 1 as, as  2 than  3 that  4 than  5 than  6 as  7 as  8 that  9 than 10 that 11 as 12 as

2 '... a better place than we found it!'

1 (Examples of possible answers)
Jake didn’t go to the same university as Susie.
Susie went to the same school as Jake.
Susie is not as tall as Jake.
Susie doesn’t weigh as much as Jake.
Jake does/has the same job as Susie.
Jake isn’t as old as Susie.
Susie was born in the same town as Jake.
Susie earns twice as much money as Jake.
Jake doesn’t work for the same firm as Susie.
Susie doesn’t have as many weeks’ holiday as Jake.
Jake lives in the same street as Susie.
Susie has the same number of children as Jake.
Jake speaks French as well as Susie, but he doesn’t speak German as well as her.
Jake doesn’t read as much as Susie.

2 as black as night  as cold as ice  as flat as a pancake  as good as gold
as green as grass  as hard as iron  as old as the hills  as pretty as a picture
as quiet as the grave  as red as a beetroot  as thin as a rake  as warm as toast
as white as a sheet

1 1 as  2 like  3 as  4 as  5 like  6 like  7 as  8 like  9 like  10 As

2 2 as a secretary / union representative  3 as an office  4 like a person
5 As you know  6 as a union representative  7 like cardboard  8 as he writes
9 like her mother  10 as a dessert

1 1 so  2 such  3 so  4 such  5 such  6 so  7 so  8 such

2 (Examples of possible answers)
1 It was such cold weather ...  5 Their house is so nice ...  2 The weather was so hot ...  6 And they've got such a beautiful garden!
3 It was such a boring book ...  7 He has such a pleasant voice ...  4 The film was so good  8 I don’t know why her voice is so loud.

3 (Examples of possible answers)
1 so dark  2 such bad  3 such a fast  4 so heavy  5 such a boring
6 so difficult/hard  7 such a nice  8 so tired  9 I wish I hadn’t got such a funny nose.

1 very fast  2 too fast  3 too hot  4 very hot
5 too tall  6 very tall  7 too expensive  8 very expensive
9 very small  10 too small  11 very slow  12 too slow

1 1 very much  2 very  3 very  4 very  5 very  6 very much  7 very
8 very much  9 very much  10 very much  11 very much  12 very
13 very much  14 very  15 very
1 is being 2 am 3 is being 4 are being 5 am 6 are being 7 was being 8 is

I do agree with you. I do need a job.
I do apologise for disturbing you. Peter did enjoy your party.
I do feel ill/tired. She does look ill/tired.
I do hate cooking / eggs and bacon. You do talk a lot.
I do like cooking / eggs and bacon. I do wonder if he's really happy.

'You don't love me.' 'I do love you.'
I may not be educated, but I do know something about life.
I'll be ready in a minute, but I do have to make a phone call.
I'm not sure she'll be there, but if you do see her give her my love.
It's a small house. Mind you, it does have a nice big kitchen.
My wife does the housework, but I do iron my own trousers.
Although she didn't say much, she did give me her phone number.
She doesn't really like sport. She does play a bit of tennis sometimes.
I made her go to the doctor's, and she did have a broken finger.
There's nobody at home. They did say eight o'clock, didn't they?

Scottish people don't speak Japanese, but they do speak English.
In England it doesn't snow a lot, but it does rain a lot.
Banks don't sell beer, but they do lend money.
Cats don't eat potatoes, but they do eat mice.
Napoleon didn't fight against China, but he did fight against England.

DIY 1 do 2 make 3 do 4 do
... to make decisions ...
2 doing 3 doing 4 making a photocopy 5 make his/the bed
6 made a mistake 7 make a cake 8 making a fire 9 do her hair
10 do 140 mph 11 done the washing up 12 to make a phone call

1 (You can) have a shower 2 ... have a swim 3 ... have dinner
4 ... have a game of cards 5 ... have a game of tennis 6 ... have a drink
7 ... have a rest 8 ... have tea 9 ... have a shave

(Examples of possible answers)
1 She's going to have a baby. 2 They're going to have a fight.
3 The patient is going to have an operation.
4 This person is going to have a nervous breakdown.
5 The person is going to have an accident.

1 I've got ... 2 Has your sister got ... / Does your sister have ...
3 I haven't got ... / I don't have ... 4 The school does not have ...
5 Did you have good teachers ... 6 She didn't have ...

(Examples of possible answers)
1 If you're bald, you haven't got any hair.
2 If you're penniless, you haven't got any money.
3 If you're childless, you haven't got any children.
4 If you're unemployed, you haven't got a job.
5 If you're toothless, you haven't got any teeth.
6 If you're lonely, you haven't got any friends.
7 If you're starving, you haven't got any food.
8 If you're an orphan, you haven't got any parents.
9 If you're unmarried, you haven't got a wife or husband.
3 1 Have you got; I've got; I've got; I haven't got  2 have you got  
3 have got; It's got  4 I've got  5 have you got; I've got  6 Have I got; you've got  
7 has got; he's got; he's got  
4 (Examples of possible answers)  
The man in the first advertisement has got a Porsche. 
The woman in the second advertisement has got brown hair / blue eyes / a good sense of humour. 
The woman in the third advertisement has got a nice smile / her own apartment. 
The man in the fourth advertisement has got a suntan / a nice home / a yacht. 

105 1 2 We have our knives sharpened ... 
3 ... to have the roof repaired ... 
4 ... have my jacket cleaned ... have my raincoat reproofed. 
5 ... have the car serviced ... have the oil changed. 
6 ... had her jewellery valued ... 
7 ... have your tennis racket re-string ... 
8 ... have the kitchen redecorated ... 
9 ... have some more electric sockets put in 

106-107 1 DIY 1 Infinitive without to. The exception is ought. 2 It doesn't have -s. 
3 They are made without do. 
2 1 play 2 to be 3 to do 4 go 5 finish 6 to get 7 make 8 pass 
3 1 Can I stay here?  2 Must you go?  3 Will be understand?  4 Shall we drive? 
5 Could she do it?  6 Would you like to? 
4 1 to be able to  2 been able to  3 been allowed to  4 to have to  5 had to 
6 be able to  7 have to  8 to have to  9 been able to 
6 be able to 

108-109 1 2 You must be crazy.  3 That can't be Janet ...  4 She must think I'm stupid. 
5 I must look silly ...  6 ... they must make a lot of money. 
7 He can't be a teacher ...  8 ... That must be an interesting job. 
9 You can't be serious. You must be joking.  10 He must have another woman ... 

2 (Examples of possible answers) 
2 He must be in Scotland.  6 It may/might be a cat. 
3 He may be Spanish.  7 This person may be an artist. 
4 She must be unhappy. / She can't be happy.  8 She must be married. 
5 She might be in love. / She must be happy.  9 It may be going to rain. 
10 What can it be? 

110-111 1 1 should  2 must  3 should  4 must  5 must  6 should  7 must  8 must 
9 should  10 should 
3 2 Should I move to London?  8 Should I go to the police? 
3 What should I call my/the baby?  9 Should I take a taxi? 
4 Where should I put my/this bicycle?  10 Should I take a holiday? 
5 When should I pay my tax bill?  11 How long should I wait? 
6 Should I invite my mother?  12 What should I do at the weekend? 
7 How should I cook this a/the/this crab? 

112 1 1 must  2 has to  3 must  4 must  5 has to  6 have (got) to  7 have (got) to 
8 must  9 must  10 have to 

113 1 1 must not  2 do not have to  3 must not  4 must not  5 do not have to 
6 must not  7 don't have to  8 don't have to  9 mustn't  10 don't have to
(Examples of possible answers)

In rugby football, you must not pass the ball forwards.
In tennis, you do not need to hit the ball before it bounces.
In tennis, you must not hit the ball after its second bounce.
In chess, you must not touch a piece if you aren’t going to move it.
In boxing, you must not hit your opponent below the belt.
In athletics, you must not start before the gun.
In hockey, you must not lift your stick above your shoulder.
In hockey, you do not need to hit the ball before it bounces.
In baseball, you must not throw the bat.
In football, you must not touch the ball with your hands.
In bridge, you must not look at other people’s cards.

1. can  2. will be able to  3. can  4. can  5. will be able to  6. could
7. will be able to  8. can  9. could  10. will be able to  11. can  12. can
13. will be able to  14. could  15. can

2. could  2. managed to  3. managed to  4. couldn’t  5. managed to
6. could; could  7. managed to  8. managed to  9. could  10. managed to

3. can smell  2. could see  3. can/could see  4. can hear  5. can taste
6. could feel; couldn’t see  7. can see  8. can hear

1. Could I use your phone?  7. Could I speak to Jane, if she’s there?
3. May I stop work early today?  8. Can I have a beer?
4. You can take my bike if you want to.  9. Can students use this library?
6. You can’t come into my room.

2. Can I take your coat?
2. Can/Could you start cooking supper now, please?
3. Can/Could you translate this for me?
4. I wonder if you could translate ... ? / Could you possibly translate ... ?
5. You could watch a video if ...
6. You can spend ... / Can you spend ... ? / Could you spend ... ?
7. I can feed the horses, ...
8. Could you possibly lend me £5? / I wonder if you could lend me £5.
9. Can/Could you tell me when it’s time to go?
10. Could you (possibly) tell me ... / I wonder if you could tell me ...

3. ‘Miss Ellis, could you come in here and pass me my coffee?’

I’ll wash up if you’ll dry.
I’m tired. I think I’ll go to bed now.
If you see Ann, would you tell her I got her letter?
She won’t tell us what’s wrong.
The cat won’t eat.
The phone’s ringing. I’ll answer it.
This video won’t play.
‘Who’s going to get the tickets?’ ‘I will.’
Will you deliver the furniture to this address, please?
Will you let me know when you’re ready to leave?
Will you stop shouting?
Would you put the meat in the oven at 5.30?
(Examples of possible answers)
1 I promise I'll write.
2 I promise I won't smoke.
3 I promise I'll go to church.
4 I promise I won't stay out late.
5 I promise I won't drink.
6 I promise I'll study hard.
7 I promise I'll go to lectures.
8 I promise I won't fight.
9 I promise I'll do exercises.
10 I promise I'll get up early.
11 I promise I'll wash my clothes.
12 I promise I'll think of you.

After you have bought something, you will find it somewhere else cheaper. If anything can go wrong, it will.
If there are two good TV shows, they will both be on at the same time.
If you explain so clearly that nobody can misunderstand, somebody will.
If you throw something away, you'll need it the next day.
No matter how much you do, you'll never do enough.
The one who snores will fall asleep first.
The other queue will always move faster.

(Examples of possible answers)
3 Shall we stay in this country or go abroad?
4 When shall we go?
5 How long shall we go for?
6 Shall we fly, go by train or drive?
7 Shall we stay in a hotel or camp?
8 Shall we stay in one place or travel around?
9 Shall we take Granny?
10 Shall we go with the Jacksons?
11 What shall we do with the dogs?

1 could/might have killed
3 would have phoned
4 could/might/would have gone
5 should have been
6 should/could have put
7 should/could have asked
8 should have taken
9 could/might have died
10 could/should have hit
11 might/should/could have told
12 might/should/could have washed

1 may have gone
2 should/may have finished
3 can't have forgotten
4 must have rained
5 must have been
6 may have been
7 can't have spent
8 may have found
9 must have had
10 may/must have gone

1 can't have
2 may not have
3 must have
4 had to
5 may not have/can't have
6 may not have

I can't sing.
I would like to be able to travel more.
He should work harder.

1 might
2 may/might
3 can't
4 may
5 may not
6 can't
7 must
8 should
9 have to
10 don't have to
11 can/will be able to
12 will be able to
13 managed to
14 could/was able to
15 can
16 will stop
17 may not
18 can't
19 had to do
20 must have left

'Can this be the same man ...?' 
'... you could live for another twenty minutes.'
'... I'll take them.'
'... it may not be a joke.'
'... he might be Prime Minister ...'
'... I wonder who it can be from.'

1 needn't laugh
2 needn't get
3 needn't write
4 needn't come
5 needn't worry
6 needn't think
7 needn't ring
8 needn't take
9 needn't phone/ring
10 needn't try
2 1 didn't need to water 2 needn't have cooked 3 needn't have done
4 needn't have bought 5 didn't need to fill up 6 needn't have worried
7 didn't need to go 8 didn't need to wait 9 needn't have studied

127
1 1 ... You'd better start ...
2 ... I'd better get ...
3 You'd better open ...
4 ... she'd better not forget ...
5 We'd better give ...
6 We'd better invite ...
7 I'd better do ...
8 You'd better not tell ...
9 ... You'd better have ...
10 You'd better not let ...

(Examples of possible answers)
1 You'd better see the doctor.
2 You'd better go to bed.
3 You'd better put a sweater on.
4 You'd better go for a walk.
5 You'd better take a day off.
6 You'd better tell me all about it.
7 You'd better learn some Chinese and Japanese.
8 You'd better take a sleeping pill.
9 You'd better start studying.
10 You'd better stop.
11 You'd better ring the police.

128
1 1 used to live 2 used to stand 3 used to look after 4 used to play
5 used to take 6 used to look at 7 used to go 8 used to buy 9 used to keep
10 used to have

(Examples of possible answers)
1 People used to travel by horse.
2 People used to cook with/ on wood fires.
3 People didn't use to live so long.
4 People used to fight with spears.
5 People used to hunt with bows and arrows.
6 People used to believe in ghosts and devils.
7 People didn't use to be able to vote.
8 People used to think the earth was flat.
9 People used to have bigger families.
10 Children used to work.

129
1 Aspirins are supposed to cure headaches. Catholics are supposed to go to church on Sundays.
You were supposed to come and see me yesterday.
It's supposed to have instructions with it, but I can't find them.
Wasn't my computer magazine supposed to come today?
What am I supposed to do with all this chicken salad?
You're not supposed to go into the shower with shoes on.
You're not supposed to smoke in food shops.
You're supposed to be good at geography – where the hell are we?
Think you're supposed to pay at the cash desk on the way out.

2 2 It's supposed to be a cat.
3 It's supposed to be a plane.
4 It's supposed to be a horse.
5 It's supposed to be a bus.
6 It's supposed to be a tiger.
7 It's supposed to be the sun.
8 It's supposed to be a flower.

130-131
1 Buy the cat food here. It'll be cheaper.
Don't give her your keys. She'll only lose them.
Get John to have a look at the TV. He'll fix it.
'He'll grow up one day.' 'I hope you're right.'
He'll need somebody to help him.
'How's June?' 'She'll be OK.'
I must get back to work, otherwise I'll get the sack.
If he doesn't stop drinking, he'll be dead in five years.
If we give a shout, she'll come and help.
If you put lemon in it, he'll drink it.
Knowing his luck, if he plays golf he'll get hit on the nose with a ball.
No good sending her a bill, is it? She'll just refuse to pay.
One day you'll be old, and then your kids will laugh at you.
She'll be fourteen on May 12th.
She'll forget about you.

2 3 will / will not get
4 will / will not be
5 will / will not be
6 will / will not disappear
7 will / will not be

8 Everybody / Not everybody will have ...
9 Everybody / Not everybody will have ...
10 will / will not be
11 will / will not eat

3 (Example of possible answer)
Tomorrow will be mainly dry, but there will be some rain in the north. There will be
strong winds from the south-west later in the day. It will be quite warm in the south,
but Scotland will be cold, and in the north of Scotland the rain will turn to snow during
the afternoon.

1 She is going to try to become a professional pianist.
But first, she is going to spend a year learning German.
Max is going to do maths and science for his final exams.
Then he is going to train as a pilot.
Jennifer's eight, and she doesn't know what she is going to do.
One day she says she is going to be a dancer.
And the next she says she is going to start her own business.
This summer, lan is going to stay with her aunt in America.
Max is going to spend the summer learning to fly.
Their parents are going to spend two weeks walking in Scotland.
Then they are going to decorate the house.

2 (Examples of possible answers)
1 She is going to have a baby.
2 He is going to swim / to dive into the water.
3 She is going to knock a cup off the table.
4 He is going to get on the bus.
5 She is going to open the letter.
6 They are going to have dinner.
7 He is going to have some wine.
8 The cat is going to catch the bird.
9 The mugger is going to attack somebody.
10 The pianist is going to play.

1 She's playing tennis on Sunday morning.
2 She's having lunch with James at 12.30 on Wednesday.
3 She's flying to Amsterdam on Thursday.
4 She's meeting Mrs Parsons in the Oxford office.
5 She's going to the meeting with Mrs Parsons by train.
6 She's going to a funeral on Wednesday morning.
7 She's meeting the accountants at 4 p.m. on Monday.
8 She's going to the theatre on Friday evening.
9 She's spending Saturday at the races.
10 Matthew is coming to see her on Sunday afternoon.

1 is going to cost 2 will cost 3 is going to have 4 will have 5 I'm playing
6 He'll win. 7 She'll tell 8 isn't going to stop 9 will have
10 She's getting married 11 It's going to rain 12 it will snow

1 does 2 arrives 3 will write 4 are going 5 go 6 will stop 7 do 8 are
9 have 10 doesn't 11 will come 12 do 13 am playing 14 does
15 will post

1 when: grow up 2 if: rains 3 when: am 4 if: passes 5 if: don't find
6 if: say 7 if: doesn't want 8 when: comes
2 1 get 2 am 3 will find 4 will keep 5 stops 6 bring 7 will take 8 will make 9 will be 10 get

(Examples of possible answers)
1 What time will you be getting up? 6 Will you be having lunch out?
2 What will you be wearing? 7 What time will you be coming back?
3 How will you be travelling to work? 8 Where will you be sleeping?
4 How soon will you be leaving? 9 How will you be paying?
5 Will you be taking the car? 10 When will you be going back home?

2 ... I'll be teaching you English literature...

1 I won't have finished the report by Monday, and it's needed for Monday morning. In a couple of years the children will have left home and we'll be able to get a smaller house. On our next wedding anniversary we will have been married for twenty-five years. When I get home tonight I will have been driving for fourteen hours non-stop. When I retire I will have been working for forty years.

(Examples of possible answers)
1 After ten days she will have written 100 pages; after a month she will have written 300 pages; after a year she will have written 3,650 pages; after ten years she will have written 36,500 pages.
2 She will have finished her first book in/after a month. A year from now she will have written twelve books.
3 She will have been writing for ten years.
4 She will have made £12 million.

(Examples of possible answers)
1 After arriving at Star City Airport, the president is to inspect a guard of honour. At 09.00, he is to have a working breakfast with President Jensen. From 11.00 to 13.00, he is to tour Star City and meet the mayor and civic leaders. At 13.00 he is to have lunch with Foreign Minister Svendsen and guests. At 14.00 he is to visit inner city schools; then he is to open a new eye hospital. At 16.00 he is to meet business leaders; then he is free until 20.00, when he is to attend a State Dinner as the guest of President and Mrs Jensen.

(Examples of possible answers)
You're to do your piano practice.
You're not to give chocolate to the cat.
You're to go to bed at nine o'clock.
You're to learn how to use the washing machine.
You're not to leave dirty socks on the floor.
You're not to leave empty crisp-packets lying around.
You're not to make hour-long phone calls.
You're to make your own bed.
You're not to open the door to strangers.
You're to write your Christmas thank-you letters.

Carola and I hardly noticed each other that first evening. Two weeks later we would be married.
He was to regret that conversation for many years to come.
I was going to ring you yesterday, but I forgot.
She was leaving in two hours, and she still hadn't started packing.
So this was the school where I would spend the next five years. I didn't like it.
The letter that was to change my life arrived one Friday morning.
1 DIY simple present: permanent; habit; always; usually
   present progressive: temporary; just around now; just at this moment; these days but not for very long

2 was going to say  2 was marrying  3 was going to be  4 were to lose
5 were to find  6 would return; would stand; would make

142-143
1 A woman is sitting in a railway carriage when she notices that the man opposite her is holding an orange in his hand and looking out of the window. Suddenly the man opens the window, throws out the orange and closes the window again. 'Excuse me,' the woman asks, 'but why did you do that?' The man takes another orange out of his bag and starts opening the window. 'Because we are going through the mountains. Oranges keep the elephants away.' 'But there are no elephants in these mountains.' says the woman. 'You see?' says the man. 'It works.'

3 The police station.

6 (Example of possible answer)
   You fill a saucepan with water and put it on the cooker. When it boils you put the egg in. You leave it for four and a half minutes and then you take it out.

145
1 (Examples of possible answers)
   Milk is getting much more expensive. Newspapers are getting more expensive. Haircuts are getting cheaper.

2 (Examples of possible answers)
   The world's population is growing.
   I'm getting older.
   My English is getting much better.
   Prices are going up.
   The days are getting shorter.
   Pollution is getting worse.
   Roads are getting busier.
   Trains are getting dirtier.
   Cars are getting faster and more comfortable.
   Aircraft travel is getting cheaper.
   People are destroying the world's forests.
   Wildlife is disappearing.
   The political situation is getting worse.
   Children are getting taller.
   Cities are getting dirtier.
   It is becoming more difficult to provide medical care for everybody.
   Teenagers are getting more violent.
   Unemployment is becoming very serious.
   Sprinters are getting faster.
   Men are living longer.
   Women are living longer too.
   Older people are becoming more isolated.
   People's holidays are getting longer.

3 '... How's your English getting on?' 'That funny noise is getting louder.'

147
1 DIY 1 By adding -s.  2 You add -s.  3 You change -y to -ies.  4 s, x, ch, sh
5 do, go

2 boxes; brushes; buys; completes; cries; defends; denies; destroys; excites; expects; fives; guesses; looks; prays; reaches; receives; rushes; spends; wants; watches.

3 1 does; teaches  2 happens  3 takes; washes  4 gets; sings  5 hates
6 starts; does  7 loves; hates  8 makes  9 comes; waits

148
1 1 belongs
2 believe/reallse/suppose
3 Do ... hate/like/love/prefer/remember/understand
4 owns
ANSWERS TO EXERCISES

5 hates/likes/needs/prefers/wants
6 need/want
7 believe/realise/suppose; like/love/need/remember/understand/want
8 forget/remember
9 believes/hates/likes/loves/needs/remembers/understands/wants; believe/hate/etc.
10 matter
11 prefer/want
12 remember
13 contains

2 am having 2 has 3 is appearing 4 appears 5 are you looking 6 looks 7 see 8 am seeing 9 think 10 are you thinking 11 am feeling/feel 12 feel

1 Dad is always teasing me about my clothes.
   He's always arguing or fighting.
   He's always giving people small presents.
   Her best friend is always dropping in to criticise the way she lives her life.
   I hate those cartoons where Tom is always chasing Jerry.
   Jamie is always having colds and chest problems.
   My wife's always buying new products.
   She's always criticising her family.
   She's always saying she wishes she was prettier.
   Someone is always giving a party in one of the houses.
   That old bitch is always making up stories about people.

2 DIY Criticism.

1 don't eat 2 is coming 3 goes 4 play 5's sitting 6 happens 7 drinks 8 She's wearing 9 are you looking 10 'm staying 11 usually stay 12 runs 13 are you doing 14 gets 15 fly

2 1d; 2c; 3f; 4e; 5i; 6a; 7b; 8g; 9i; 10h

3 1 think 2 know; mean 3 is always complaining 4 always start 5 is melting; take; break 6 am thinking 7 believe; is changing 8 don't see 9 are you looking 10 understand

1 (Examples of possible answers)
   1 The Foreign Minister is dead.
   2 Lucy has got a new baby.
   3 Your coat is torn.
   4 My leg is broken.
   5 He can't find his address book.
   6 Is tea ready?
   7 All the plates, knives etc are clean.
   8 She has a new job with the BBC.
   9 We still don't know where he is.
   10 It's quiet.
   11 I don't remember your name.
   12 She speaks French.

2 '... His temperature has gone down.'
   He's dead.

1 Polly and Simon have just got married.
2 The firm has lost £30 million this year.
3 United have won the cup again.
4 My poor old father has gone into hospital again.
5 Somebody has just crashed into our garden gate.
6 Lucy has had a baby girl.
7 A parachutist has just landed on the roof.
8 Some people have bought the house next door.
Ana Gomez, of Peru, has set a new record for the marathon. She covered the 42 km in just over 2 hours and 16 minutes. 

Novelist Maria Santiago has married actor Tony Delaney. They met while working on the screenplay for the film Sun in the Morning.

Peter has just offered me a new job! He said I was just the person he needed.

Police have found missing schoolgirl Karen Allen. She was at a friend’s house in Birmingham.

The World Cup team have arrived home. Five thousand fans were at the airport.

Three climbers have died in the Alps. They fell just before reaching the summit of Mont Blanc (4,807 m).

Two prisoners have escaped from Caernarvon high security prison. They stole dustmen’s uniforms and walked out through the main gate.

---

**finished time:** a long time ago; before I was born; in 1991; just after I got up; last year; when I was nine

**unfinished time:** in my life; lately; this year; today

1. haven’t seen 2. I’ve never seen 3. I’ve done 4. left 5. did you get

3. 1. were 2. haven’t read 3. Have you visited 4. lived 5. didn’t discover 6. knew 7. have discovered 8. gave 8. have you been 9. have never enjoyed 10. Did you hear

‘Oh yes! I’ve met ...’ ‘When did you last feed ...?’

---

1. Yes. 2. No. 3. No. 4. Yes. 5. Yes. 6. No.

2. ... She has had bad luck all her life.
3. I wanted to be a doctor until I was fifteen.
4. He has been unemployed ever since he left school.
5. How long have you lived in this town?
6. I didn’t work very hard when I was at university.
7. ... but he has been fine since then.
8. I have had trouble sleeping all this week.
9. I had trouble sleeping all last week.
10. I have learnt a lot in this job.
11. I did not learn much in that job.
12. My boyfriend and I have known each other for ages.
13. He lived in Durban for a year before he got married.
14. I spent three days in hospital last month.

3. 1. have played 2. has had 3. ran 4. have you drunk 5. came 6. wrote
7. has written 8. cooked; have cooked 9. have made 10. have just lost

5. I’ve spent ...

---

1. has been raining 2. have been learning 3. has been playing
4. have ... been living 5. has been walking 6. have been working
7. has been crying 8. has been playing 9. Have ... been waiting (cartoon B)
10. I’ve been waiting (cartoon A)

2. Aren’t you hungry?’ ‘No, I’ve been eating all day.’

‘Is it true that Philip’s been arrested?’ ‘Yes, he’s been stealing things from shops.’

‘Janet seems very cheerful.’ ‘She’s been skiing with Roger for the last week.’

‘She’s very dirty.’ ‘She’s been cleaning the cellar.’

‘Why are my books all over the floor?’ ‘Helen’s been looking at them.’

‘Why’s your hair wet?’ ‘I’ve been swimming.’

‘You all look very miserable.’ ‘Yes, we’ve been telling each other our life stories.’
'You look tired.' 'I've been gardening all afternoon.'
'You're very late.' 'I've been talking to Henry, and he just goes on and on.'
'Your hair's all white.' 'Yes. I've been painting the ceiling.'

3 (Examples of possible answers)
1 It's been raining.                                4 They've been running.
2 She's been playing tennis.                       5 She's been writing letters.
3 He's been playing the guitar.                   6 He's/They've been fighting.

160 1 has been standing 2 has stood 3 has been gardening; has planted
4 has gone 5 has been seeing 6 have you been waiting 7 have waited
8 has farmed 9 has only been farming 10 have been learning 11 have learnt
12 has done 13 have been doing 14 have cleaned 15 have been washing

161 1 DIY since + starting point: for + period. (We use since if we say when something started; we use for if we say how long it has lasted.)
3 1 for 2 since 3 for 4 for 5 since 6 for 7 for

4 1 Jake has been running / has run a small business for five years.
2 Andy has been living / has lived in Dublin for a year / since last year.
3 Helen has been playing / has played the piano for two years.
4 Rob has had a Mercedes for five years.
5 Jan has been living / has lived with Pete since 1994.
6 Sammy has been learning Turkish for four years.

162 1 has been (showing): got up                      4 has been; got
2 have been; lost                                    5 went; haven't heard
3 took up; has had                                   6 has been; had

2 (Examples of possible answers)
He looks much younger since he shaved off his beard.
It's nearly three years since he had a job.
It's only a week since I met her, but it seems like years.
It's too long since we last had a proper talk.
She's a lot happier since she stopped going out with Pete.
Things are better since we got our own flat.

163 1 DIY Rule 3 is true.

2 came 2 didn't like 3 've been lying 4 've never been 5 's been raining
6 didn't come 7 ('ve) paid 8 got 9 have left 10 's/has moved 11 died
12 's been 13 was 14 's gone 15 've been 16 for 17 's always been
18 's left 19 wasn't 20 haven't trusted 21 broke 22 said 23 was
24 hasn't been 25 have taken

164–165 1 was having; went 2 was lying 3 were all talking
4 was coming; was shopping 5 met; was travelling 6 was talking; walked; stole
7 came; stopped 8 looked; saw; were lying 9 woke; was pouring
10 broke; was playing 11 went; was; was crying 12 told; was having

2 (Examples of possible answers)
While she was watching TV the ceiling fell in.
While he was talking to a friend somebody stole his wallet.
He took her photo while she was playing tennis.

3 1 were throwing 2 were dancing 3 was/were not dancing 4 was grinning
5 was holding 6 came 7 ordered 8 asked

166–167 1 DIY Rule 3 gives the best explanation.
2 1 was sorry: had not been 6 had invited: had not invited
   2 came: had forgotten 7 found: had hidden
   3 had seen: knew 8 had never heard
   4 had not checked: broke 9 came: had been
   5 had lent 10 had already started: arrived

3 1 went 2 had not been 3 arrived 4 spent 5 had had 6 saw
   7 had shared 8 had lost 9 had not seen 10 called 11 looked 12 turned
   13 realised 14 had 15 saw 16 went 17 explained 18 had got
   19 was not 20 felt 21 had not passed 22 had said 23 had arrived
   24 had 25 thought 26 had 27 got 28 began 29 had happened

4 After he had tried on six pairs of shoes he decided he liked the first ones best.
   After Mary had done all the shopping she took a short walk round the park.
   When I had washed and dried the last plate Paul came in and offered to help.
   When Mark had looked through all the drawers in his room he started going through
   the cupboards downstairs.
   When he had finished eating lunch he went to the café in the square for a cup of coffee.

5 When/After I had written to my boyfriend, I watched television ...
   When/After everybody had had a chance to say what they thought, we ...
   When/After I had posted the letter I felt ...
   After she had stopped trying to lose weight she looked ...
   When/After he had bought presents for everyone in his family he bought ...

2 DIY Simple past perfect. diagram B. past perfect progressive: diagram C.

3 1 had been repairing 2 had been working 3 had been lying 4 had been driving

4 2 Kate, because she had been (doing some) gardening.
   3 Stephanie, because she had been playing tennis.
   4 John, because he had been practising (his) karate.
   5 Pam, because she had been (horse-)riding.
   6 Philip, because he had been painting (the ceiling in his room).
   7 Roger, because he had been swimming.

5 Mr Lucas said he had been watching TV, but actually he had been stealing cars.
   Mrs Allen said she had been talking on the phone, but actually she had been making a
   bomb.
   Mr Nash said he had been washing clothes, but actually he had been forging £5 notes.
   Alice said she had been playing cards, but actually she had been selling drugs.
   Pete said he had been studying chemistry, but actually he had been lightning.
   Aunt Jane said she had been writing letters, but actually she had been planning a bank
   robbery.
   Miss Fry said she had been washing her hair, but actually she had been out dancing
   with her sister’s boyfriend.
   Rob said he had been painting his flat, but actually he had been playing roulette.

1 1 ... I’ve seen this film 7 ... all the family has been together ...
   2 ... you’ve sung that song ... 8 ... I’ve eaten this year
   3 ... I’ve felt happy 9 ... the first thing you’ve said to me ...
   4 ... you’ve made ... 10 ... the first clothes I’ve bought
   5 ... I’ve ever seen her cry 6 ... you’ve drunk ...

   5 ... I’ve ever seen her cry 6 ... you’ve drunk ...

2 It was the first time he had worn uniform.
   It was the first time he had had to make his own bed.
   It was the first time he had cleaned his own boots.
   It was the first time he had fired a gun.
   It was the first time he had walked more than a mile.
1. How many days did you intend to stay?
2. I was hoping you could lend me £10.
3. I was wondering if you had two single rooms.
4. Were you looking for anything special?
5. Could you give me a hand?
6. I'm looking forward to seeing you again.
7. I was thinking I would borrow your bike ...
8. We could ask Peter to help us.
9. I was wondering if I could ask you a small favour.
10. I thought it would be a good idea to invite Simon.

1. has crashed; hit; had put 2. turned; went; had forgotten
3. have been doing; have cleaned 4. was lying; rang
5. started; had not been/gone 6. have been playing 7. got; was watching
8. haven’t seen 9. have you been learning 10. has changed; came
11. have you seen; ’ve seen 12. have never seen 13. got
14. have often wondered; got 15. Have you read 16. have just discovered
17. Did you hear 18. has been 19. was talking; started; broke 20. had done
21. has been standing 22. has stood 23. have spent; have been spending; got
24. was; studied 25. had finished; sat 26. met; had been working
27. have never learnt 28. Have you finished 29. lived; was 30. has had

2. 1. got 2. got 3. was 4. were 5. got 6. had already started 7. fell
8. were sitting 9. hit 10. turned 11. was sitting 12. waited/was waiting
13. was carrying 14. asked 15. told 16. disappeared 17. opened 18. saw
19. had approached 20. saw 21. took 22. shot 23. has seen
24. (have) fought 25. has/had been 26. were 27. began 28. was

3. A. Look, Mary. I must go; I started leaving my husband an hour ago.
B. How long have you had this fear of heights, Mr Winthrop?
C. You booked us a holiday abroad during the summer. Could you tell us, please, where we went?
D. I’ve found another bit of metal. Maureen.
E. Good Lord. Fenton. I had no idea you had died.
F. First time you’ve done this job. is it?
G. Perhaps I could help you choose. sir – what, exactly. have you done?
H. He has nothing to do. All his batteries have run down.

1. were left: simple past 2. were stranded: simple past
3. had been ... locked in: past perfect 4. were given: simple past

2. 1. is spoken 2. was built 3. will be opened 4. is being interviewed
5. was being followed 6. Have you been invited 7. had been stolen 8. are made
9. are asked 10. is being mended 11. was burnt down 12. has just been found

3. 1. Hamlet was written by Shakespeare.
2. She has been arrested for shoplifting.
3. Your car is being repaired now.
4. Spanish is spoken in Chile.
5. Has Peter been asked?
6. This ring was made by my mother.
7. This car is driven by electricity.
8. You will be told where to go.
9. She was knocked down by a drunken motorist.
10. Manchester were beaten 3–0 by Liverpool yesterday.
11. Paper was invented by the Chinese.
12. Hops are needed to make beer.
13. Stamps aren’t sold in bookshops.
14. Your application is still being considered by the directors.

4. ... you’re being replaced ...
1 DIY It would be difficult to rewrite the text sensibly with active verbs. The best rules are 2 and 3.

2 1b 2b 3a 4a 5b

3 1a: 2b: 3a: 4b: 5a: 6b: 7a: 8a: 9b

4 DIY 2 We were shocked that nobody was prepared to take him to hospital. 3 I was annoyed that Mary wanted to tell everybody what to do. 4 I wasn't pleased that George rang me up at three in the morning to tell me he was in love again. 5 I was confused by the fact that he looked completely different from the last time I had met him.

A passive can make it easier to move a very heavy subject to the end of a sentence.

180

1 2 We were brought papers to sign. 7 We are taught French by Mrs Lee. 3 Henry was given a clock ... 8 I have been lent a car for a week. 4 The children were read stories. 9 We were promised a full explanation. 5 I am owed £5,000. 10 I was told a lot of lies by the secretary. 6 I have been offered a new job.

2 1 had been told 2 had been given 3 was shown 4 was given 5 was given 6 had never been taught 7 was sent 8 was offered 9 was promised 10 wasn't being paid

181

1 (Examples of possible answers)
Bills are being prepared/paid. Coffee is being made/ordered/prepared/served. Drinks are being ordered/served. Food is being ordered/prepared/served. Luggage is being brought down.

Money is being changed/paid/taken. New guests are being welcomed. Reservations are being made/taken. Rooms are being cleaned/prepared. Tables are being laid.

2 (Examples of possible answers)
The houseboats have been turned into floating restaurants. A new car park has been built. New schools have been built. The opera house has been rebuilt. The old fire station has been turned into a theatre. A ring road has been built. The station has been modernised. Some streets have been widened. The town centre has been turned into a pedestrian precinct. A statue of you has been put up in the park. The Super Cinema has been turned into a supermarket. Your house has been turned into a museum.

182

1 It is thought that the government will fail. 2 Mr Evans was appointed secretary. 3 She was called a witch by the villagers. 4 It was believed that fresh air was bad for sick people. 5 There are said to be wolves in the mountains. 6 The man holding the hostages is thought to be heavily armed. 7 He is said to be in an agitated state. 8 She was considered strange (by everybody). 9 The rate of inflation is expected to rise. 10 He is said to be somewhere in Germany.
11 Harris was seen to leave the plane in Ontario.
12 She is thought to have died in a plane crash.
13 The earth was believed to be the centre of the universe.
14 There is thought to be oil under Windsor Castle.
15 I was made to give them details of my bank accounts.

183
1 Could you send the bill to me?
2 I've bought you a present.
3 Leave some potatoes for me.
4 I lent £5 to Bill yesterday.
5 Show your picture to Granny.

6 Read me the letter, will you?
7 She teaches French to adults.
8 I took Mrs Samuels the report.
9 Would you get a beer for me?
10 We owe the bank £20,000.

184-185
1 blow up – explode break up – disintegrate get up – rise give up – abandon go away – leave go into – enter look for – seek put off – postpone send back – return talk about – discuss think over – consider turn up – arrive

2 DIY Rules 1, 4 and 6 are correct.

3 1 We talked about it. 2 I put it off. 3 Could you look after them?
4 We broke it off. 5 Can you clean it up? 6 She put it on. 7 I'm looking for it.
8 I wrote it down. 9 I sent it back. 10 I stood on it.

4 1 away 2 on paper 3 not working 4 quieter 5 into pieces
6 to various people 7 further 8 higher 9 working 10 louder

186-187
1 DIY get + direct object: receive, obtain, fetch, buy ...
get + adjective: become
get + adverb particle/preposition: move, change position

2 get across – cross get better – improve get bigger – increase, grow
get off – alight from, leave (public transport) get on – board (public transport)
get out of – leave get over – recover from get smaller – decrease, shrink
get to – reach get up – rise (from bed)

3 1 getting better 2 got into 3 Get on; get off 4 Get out 5 get wet 6 get cold
7 get old 8 get really hungry 9 getting tired/sleepy 10 gets dark

4 "Shall we go swimming?" "OK, I'll just go and get changed."
"What time do the animals get fed?" 'Eight o'clock.'
Every time he goes walking in the country he gets lost.
His glasses got broken in the fight.
I was talking to her on the phone but we got cut off.
I'm going to get undressed and go to bed.
If you leave your bag there, it'll get stolen.
That child takes an hour to get dressed in the morning.
They're going to get married next April.

188
1 to be working 2 be repaired 3 to go 4 to have seen 5 be having
6 to listen 7 to be chosen 8 not to be 9 have told 10 to be interrupted

2 (Examples of possible answers)
2 She seems to be drinking.
3 She must be driving.
4 She may be playing tennis.
5 She could be washing.
6 She seems to be talking on the phone.
7 She could be brushing her hair.
8 She may be reading.
1 I'm glad to have met you.
2 I was sorry to have disturbed him.
3 I expect to have passed ...
4 You seem to have made ...
5 I'm happy to have had a chance ...
6 I was disappointed to have missed ...
7 She seems to have got lost.
8 She was pleased to have found ...

2 1 I would like to have seen his face when ...
2 He meant to have finished all his work ...
3 We were to have spent a week skiing.
4 You should eat enough.
5 I might go sailing ...
6 She expects to get married ...
7 I agreed to help her.
8 We must make ...
9 He seems to be ill.
10 You needn’t apologise.
11 They have decided to open ...
12 I promise to pay you ...
13 I didn’t manage to find ...
14 I would rather go ...
15 She refused to see ...
16 I've learnt to play chess.

1 (Examples of possible answers)
‘Ann really upset Granny.’ ‘I’m sure she didn’t mean to.’
‘Are you enjoying your new job?’ ‘Well, I’m starting to.’
‘Can I see you home?’ ‘If you’d like to.’
‘Can you mend this by Tuesday?’ ‘I’ll try to, but I can’t promise.’
‘Did you get my coat from the cleaner’s?’ ‘Sorry, I forgot to.’
‘Do you collect stamps?’ ‘No, but I used to.’
‘Do you think he knows what he’s doing?’ ‘He seems to.’
‘Do you want to come out with us tonight?’ ‘I’d like to, but I’m working late.’
‘Does she think she’ll win?’ ‘Yes, she expects to.’
‘How would you and Sue like to spend the weekend with us?’ ‘We’d love to.’
‘I think you ought to see the police about the people next door.’ ‘I intend to. They can’t go on keeping the whole street awake every night.’
‘Shall we go swimming?’ ‘I don’t really want to – it’s too cold.’
‘Should we book seats in advance?’ ‘We don’t need to – there’s always plenty of room.’
We’d like to move to a bigger house but we can’t afford to.

1 (Examples of possible answers)
2 You go to a bookshop to buy books.
3 ... to see a film.
4 ... to see a play.
5 ... to swim.
6 ... to exercise.
7 ... to learn to drive.
8 ... to catch a train.
9 ... to catch a plane.
10 ... to book a holiday.
11 ... to pray.
12 ... to watch a football match.
13 ... to get money.
14 ... to buy stamps.
15 ... to have a meal.
16 ... to buy food.
17 ... to get petrol.
18 ... to buy a newspaper.

1 1 surprised 2 surprising 3 tiring 4 tired 5 disappointing 6 disappointed
7 excited 8 exciting 9 shocked 10 shocking 11 confusing 12 confused
13 annoyed 14 annoying

2 The visitors are boring (and the host is bored).

3 A botanist is interested in plants.
A cook is interested in food.
A doctor is interested in medicine.
An explorer is interested in travel.
A fashion designer is interested in clothes.
A geographer is interested in places.
A historian is interested in the past.
A linguist is interested in languages.
A mathematician is interested in numbers.
A zoologist is interested in animals.
ANSWERS TO EXERCISES

194-195 1 Drinking 2 paying 3 hearing 4 lying 5 skiing; climbing 6 Learning
7 saying 8 Forgetting 9 Watching 10 Answering; typing
3 1 Do you mind me asking ...? 5 ... by Peter needing to see ...
2 I don’t appreciate you shouting ... 6 I was astonished at you expecting ...
3 I couldn’t understand Pat wanting ... 7 ... by Ann having to go ...
4 What’s the use of them asking ...? 8 She can’t stand me telling her ...

196 1 (Examples of possible answers)
Do you feel like helping me?
Do you have time to do anything else besides looking after the children?
He insisted on paying for everything.
He passed his exams in spite of not doing any work.
How about going out to a restaurant tonight?
I apologise for disturbing you.
I like walking as well as playing football.
I sometimes dream of having time to read all my books.
I’m fed up of/with selling things.
I’m not capable of understanding this – it’s too difficult.
I’m tired of answering that child’s questions.
She succeeded in convincing the police that she was not a burglar.
She talked about/of changing her job. but I don’t think she will.
She’s keen on cooking.
She’s very good at swimming and dancing.
Thank you for telling me the truth.
We’re excited about moving to Canada.
We’re thinking of seeing George next week.
Why don’t you come out with us instead of staying at home?
You can’t live without eating.

197 1 By playing loud music.
2 By robbing a bank.
3 By oiling it.
4 By looking in a dictionary.
5 By taking an aspirin.
6 By using an extinguisher.
7 By switching on the ignition.

2 (Examples of possible answers)
A paperclip is for holding papers together.
Soap is for washing.
A saucepan is for cooking.
A pen is for writing.
Money is for buying things.
A knife is for cutting things.
A bag is for carrying things.
A hairbrush is for brushing hair.

198 1 DIY 1A 2C 3B

1 Aren’t you used to walking this far?
Starting at half four’s no problem – I’m used to getting up early.
I look forward to receiving your comments.
I look forward to seeing you again in six months’ time.
I object to paying for it. It should be free.
I’ll never get used to sleeping on the floor.
I’m not looking forward to going back to school.
I’m not sure where to turn. I’m not used to coming this way.
If you’re used to having money, it’s hard to be without it.
Sean’s used to dealing with difficult kids.

199 1 DIY verb + infinitive: agree; dare; decide; expect; fail; happen; hope; manage; mean;
offer; prepare; pretend; promise; refuse; seem; wish
verb + -ing form: avoid; can’t help; deny; (can’t) face; fancy; feel like; finish; give up;
imagine; keep (on); mind; miss; postpone; practise; put off; risk; spend time;
(can’t) stand; suggest
2 1 liking 2 to stay 3 to hear 4 going 5 cooking 6 studying 7 smoking 8 being 9 to find 10 passing 11 seeing 12 to be 13 seeing 14 talking 15 to see 16 watching

200 1 1 You can go fishing 2 ... go riding 3 ... go sailing 4 ... go shopping 5 ... go skating 6 ... go swimming 7 ... go skiing

201 1 1 The shoes need cleaning. 2 The window needs mending. 3 The racket needs re-stringing. 4 The bed needs making.

202–203 1 (Examples of possible answers)
Her boss wants her to work harder.
Her daughter wants her to buy her a car.
Her husband wants her to cook supper.
Her mother wants her to leave her husband.

204–205 1 DIY Things people did: remember ...ing. Things people have/had to do: remember + infinitive.

2 DIY Change: go on + infinitive. Continuation: go on ...ing.

3 DIY Infinitive after object; -ing form if there is no object.

4 DIY Activity stops: -ing form. Reason for stopping: infinitive.

5 DIY Only infinitive after would like, would prefer etc.

6 DIY Both structures for things that are difficult: try ...ing for experiments.

7 DIY Action going on: object + -ing form. Completed action: object + infinitive without to.

8 1 meeting 2 to post 3 not visiting 4 to talk 5 learning 6 to make 7 visiting 8 watching / to watch 9 to spend 10 to come 11 reading 12 to repair / repairing 13 waiting 14 break 15 crawling 16 to get 17 working 18 to tell

206 1 DIY The five which cannot are fine, intelligent, lazy, unusual, well.
2 (Examples of possible answers)
I'm bad at getting up early.
I'm bored with seeing the same faces every day.
I'm capable of going for a long time without sleep.
I'm excited about seeing my family next weekend.
I'm fed up with (or of) studying.
I'm fond of dancing.
I'm good at repairing cars.
I'm guilty of breaking the speed limit.
I'm tired of listening to the children.

1 DIY Followed by infinitive: decision, need, plan, time, wish
Followed by preposition + ...ing: difficulty, hope, idea, thought

2 1 to go 2 in reading 3 of arriving 4 of leaving 5 to tell 6 to spend
7 of losing 8 to go 9 to meet

3 Has he got any hope of passing the exam?
He made a decision to start a new life.
Does your fear of flying stop you travelling?
Lucy has difficulty in keeping her temper.
She hated the thought of dying without seeing the world.
She was a fool to buy that car.
There's no need to get angry.
They have a plan to start a business.
Time to get up!

1 There's no need for the meeting to start before eight.
2 It's time for the postman to come.
3 It's unusual for him to be late.
4 I'm anxious for the children to go to a good school.
5 It's a bad idea for John to go to Australia.
6 It would be a mistake for Sue to change her job just now.
7 Is it possible for Paul to come to the meeting?
8 It's important for the car to have regular services.
9 It's normal for him to stay up late on Saturdays.
10 I'd be happy for you to take a holiday.

2 1 It's important for there to be public libraries.
2 It's vital for there to be a good public transport system.
3 It's important for there to be plenty of open spaces.
4 It's essential for there to be enough car parks.

3 (Examples of possible answers)
English is easy to understand. Boiled eggs are good to eat.
Chinese is hard to learn. Lobster is hard to eat.
Small children are interesting to watch. Some modern music is boring to listen to.
Silver is hard to clean.

1 Was the train very crowded, dear?
(Examples of possible answers)
1. Where is the small village?
2. Where do the three families live?
3. How many children have Alice and George got?
4. Who has got a baby daughter?
5. What does George do?
6. What do Joe and Sue do?
7. What does Alice take care of?
8. Where does Joe work?
9. What does Joe design?
10. What does Pam do? / What is Pam’s job?
11. How many of the children go to school in the village?
12. How do the other children go to school?
13. Where is the secondary school?
14. How far away is it?

(Examples of possible answers)
1. Who does the cooking?
2. Who does the housework?
3. Who does the repairs?
4. Who takes care of the garden?
5. What is their biggest worry?
6. What needs replacing?
7. What needs repairing?

1. ‘What’s your flat like?’
2. ‘How’s your mother?’
3. ‘How’s your work going?’
4. ‘How’s business?’
5. ‘What’s Anne’s boyfriend like?’
6. ‘How’s school?’

(Examples of possible answers)

1. Austrians don’t speak Japanese.
2. Roses aren’t green.
3. Cats can’t fly.
4. Shakespeare wasn’t French.
5. Fridge don’t run on petrol.
6. The sun doesn’t go round the earth.
7. Telescopes don’t make things smaller.
8. There aren’t seventeen players in a rugby team.

1. Aren’t you cold?
2. Why aren’t you eating?
3. Don’t you speak French?
4. Don’t you speak German?
5. Isn’t that Pamela ?
6. Didn’t you study ?
7. Wasn’t Tony going to come ... ?
8. Won’t you be in Edinburgh next week?
9. Aren’t you making a mistake?
10. Wouldn’t it be better to stop now?

1. Didn’t she pass the exam?
2. Haven’t you paid for your ticket?
3. Didn’t you lock the door?
4. Can’t you understand English ?
5. Don’t you like my cooking?
6. Didn’t you get the letter I sent?
7. Didn’t you enjoy the film?
8. Aren’t you and John going to get married?
9. Don’t you want any more potatoes?

1. No. I don’t. 2. No. I can’t. 3. Yes. it is. 4. Yes. I have. 5. Yes. she was. 6. No. I’m not. 7. No. I’m not. 8. No. I didn’t.

1. not 2. not 3. no 4. not 5. no 6. not 7. not 8. Not 9. no 10. not no

1. I don’t think you’re right.
2. I don’t believe you’ve met my sister.
3. I don’t suppose you know where Ruth is.
4. I don’t imagine we’ll arrive before midnight.
5. I don’t think they know what they’re doing.
6. I don’t think I made myself clear.
7. I don’t suppose you remembered to bring my book back.
8. I don’t believe I’ve got enough money.
2 1 He doesn’t seem to be well. 4 It doesn’t seem to be raining.
2 I don’t expect to be home late. 5 I don’t expect to pass the exam.
3 I never want to climb another mountain. 6 He never wants to get married.

218-219
1 1 Don’t use 2 Add 3 Mix 4 oil 5 put in 6 Shape 7 bake
3 1 Always add salt ... 6 Always count your change ...
2 Always check the tyres ...
3 Never cook chicken ...
4 Never wait more ...
5 Always unplug ...
6 Always talk about weather ...
7 Never/Always put off ...
8 Never/Always say ...
9 Always/Never pay ...
10 Never apologise ...

4 (Examples of possible answers)
1 Don’t be (so) greedy.
2 Do be careful.
3 Don’t be angry.
4 Do be back by midnight.
5 Don’t be frightened.
6 Don’t be (so) stupid.
7 Do be on time.
8 Don’t be (so) rude.
9 Don’t be (so) jealous.

220
1 (Examples of possible answers)
3 Let’s play tennis. 4 Let’s go for a walk. 5 Let’s not play cards.
6 Let’s play chess. 7 Let’s go to Paris. 8 Let’s go and see a film.
9 Let’s not go dancing. 10 Let’s go skiing. 11 Let’s do the washing up.
12 Let’s go to a restaurant.

221
1 DIY The subject and verb come at the end of the exclamation.

2 2 How interesting!
3 What a nuisance!
4 What big eyes you’ve got.
5 How disgusting!
6 How noisy those children are!
7 How well he cooks!
8 How wrong we were!
9 What a lot of nonsense he talks!
10 What funny clothes she wears!
11 How badly she plays!
12 What a fool I was!

3 2 Isn’t that interesting!
3 Isn’t that a nuisance!
4 Haven’t you got big eyes, grandmother!
5 Isn’t that disgusting!
6 Aren’t those children noisy!
7 Doesn’t he cook well!
8 Weren’t we wrong!
9 Doesn’t he talk a lot of nonsense!
10 Doesn’t she wear funny clothes!
11 Doesn’t she play badly!
12 Wasn’t I a fool!

222-223
1 1 There is 2 There were 3 there was 4 there will be 5 There’s
6 Are there 7 There have been 8 There are not 9 There’s been 10 there isn’t

2 1 There’s 2 It’s 3 It’s 4 There’s 5 It’s 6 There’s 7 There’s 8 It’s
9 There’s 10 It’s

3 According to the forecast, there’s likely to be more snow tonight.
I can’t see how to open the door. There must be a keyhole somewhere.
I’m looking forward to the party. There are sure to be some nice people there.
OK, children, now I don’t want there to be any noise while I’m on the phone.
That must be Jeff. There can’t be two people who look like that.
There are too many people looking for too few jobs in this country.
There aren’t any tickets now, but there may be some tomorrow.
There’s no need to hurry. We’ve got plenty of time.
There’s no point in going out if you’ve got a headache — you won’t enjoy it.
There’s something the matter with the car — it won’t start.
‘What did the doctor say?’ ‘He says there’s nothing wrong with me.’
‘Why have we stopped?’ ‘There seems to be something lying in the road.’
224
1 My wife’s on holiday.  2 I couldn’t ...  3 Have you seen Joe?  4 Be careful ...  5 There’s nobody ...  6 I don’t think so.  7 The train’s late again.  8 Do you know ... ?  9 Have you got ... ?  10 I’ve lost ...

2 Changed my job.  2 Doesn’t know ...  3 Cost you £10.  4 Careful of ...  5 No time ...  6 Bus is coming.  7 Speak English?  8 Haven’t been there.  9 Thinks he’s clever.  10 Got a light:

225
1 ... but I can tomorrow.  6 ... Yes, it is.  2 ... and Sue has too.  7 ... but I can.  3 ... Yes, I would (have).  8 ... and Celia doesn’t either.  4 ... It certainly does.  9 ... but I do.  5 ... I have.

2 (Examples of possible answers)
1 think the whole thing is too absurd / think so  5 come round  2 thought that, so  6 ready to take offence  3 think that so  7 ready to take offence  4 come round  8 want to quarrel  5 want to say another thing about it

226
1 aren’t I  2 aren’t we  3 are they  4 am I  5 were they  6 is she  7 isn’t it  8 isn’t he  9 can’t he  10 mustn’t it  11 won’t it  12 don’t they  13 will they  14 isn’t there  15 hasn’t she  16 does she  17 haven’t they  18 wasn’t I

227
1 they  2 are you  3 is there  4 does it  5 they  6 did she  7 haven’t they  8 is there  9 did you

2 Do have some more tea, won’t you?  Pass me the newspaper, could/will/ would you?  Let’s start again, shall we?  You couldn’t tell me the time, could you?

228
1 Yes, I am. / No, I’m not.  6 Yes. I have. / No, I haven’t.  2 Yes, I do. / No, I don’t.  7 No. I can’t. / Yes, I can.  3 It certainly is.  8 He certainly does.  4 I won’t.  9 Yes, she did.  5 I will.  10 I will.

2 (Example of possible answers)
‘It was a lovely wedding.’  ‘Was it?’  ‘Yes. Though I didn’t think much of Maggie’s dress.’  ‘Didn’t you?’  ‘No, that colour doesn’t suit her at all.’  ‘Doesn’t it?’  ‘No, it doesn’t. Anyway, I don’t really go for church weddings.’  ‘Don’t you?’  ‘No. And the service went on for ages.’  ‘Did it really?’  ‘Yes. And I was sitting right at the back, so I couldn’t hear the vicar.’  ‘Couldn’t you?’  ‘No. The music was nice, though.’  ‘Was it?’  ‘Yes. They played that hymn about sheep. Lovely. I must say I didn’t enjoy the reception much.’  ‘Didn’t you?’  ‘No. The food wasn’t very good.’
'Oh, dear. Wasn’t it?’
'No. And the bride’s father made such a stupid speech.’
'Did he, dear?’
'Yes. And I got one of my headaches.’
'Did you? I am sorry.’
'Yes. Champagne always gives me a headache.
'Does it?’
'Yes, it really does. And I was sitting next to that Mrs Foster from down the road. I can’t stand that woman.
‘Can’t you?’
‘No, she’s always criticising.’
‘Is she really?’
'Yes. Anyway, I must go.’
'Oh, must you?’
'Yes. Nice to talk to you. It really was a lovely wedding.

1 (These are the sentences that the people said, but other answers are possible.)
1 I think so  2 I'm afraid so  3 I suppose so  4 I think so  5 I hope so
6 I think so  7 I think so  8 I'm afraid so  9 I hope so  10 I suppose so

2 1 I'm afraid not  2 I don't think so  3 I hope not  4 I suppose not
5 I'm afraid not  6 I hope not  7 I suppose not  8 I don't think so

230-231
1 1 so is  2 Neither/Nor have  3 neither/nor can  4 So do  5 So did
6 neither/nor do  7 so was  8 neither/nor will  9 So do  10 Neither/Nor was

3 (Examples of possible answers)
The cat is black, and so is the handbag.
The car doesn’t cost much, and nor does the motorbike.
The car is green, and so is the frog.

232-233
1 2 It annoys me to hear her talk like that.
3 It takes four hours to get...
4 It’s silly to get upset...
5 It’s nice to get up in the morning, but it’s nicer to stay in bed.
6 It makes me tired to watch him.
7 It upsets me to hear her complaining.
8 It’s hard to say no to people.

2 2 It’s a good thing that she’s got some money saved.
3 It doesn’t bother me that he’s got long hair.
4 It worried her that John never talked to her.
5 It is essential that she should be told immediately.
6 It was strange that he didn’t remember my name.
7 It’s a pity that he can’t come.
8 It is important that the children should get to bed early.
9 It is not true that wolves attack people.
10 It shocked me that she stole money.

3 (Examples of possible answers)
It doesn’t interest me what you think.
It looks as if we’re going to have trouble with Ann again.
It seems that he forgot to buy the tickets.
It will be a pity if we have to ask her to leave.
It’s exciting when a baby starts talking.
It’s important that everybody should have a chance to speak.
It’s probable that we’ll be a little late.
It’s surprising how many unhappy marriages there are.
He made it difficult to like him. He made it clear what he wanted.
His bad leg made it a problem to walk. I find it interesting to hear her stories.
I thought it strange that she hadn't written.

1. It was the baby that/who put marmalade ...
   It was marmalade that the baby put ...
   It was Dad’s trousers that the baby put marmalade on ...
   It was this morning that the baby put ...
2. It was Maria that/who gave ...
   It was her old bicycle that Maria gave ...
   It was Pat that Maria gave her old bicycle to ...
   It was last week that Maria gave ...
3. It was Carl that/who broke ...
   It was the kitchen window that Carl broke ...
   It was a ladder that Carl broke the kitchen window with today.
   It was today that ...
4. It was Mark that/who met Cathy ...
   It was Cathy that Mark met ...
   It was in Germany that Mark met ...
   It was in 1992 that Mark met ...

2. It's not you I love, it's Peter.
3. It’s not Carol that’s/who’s the boss, it’s Sandra.
4. It’s not the music I hate, it’s the words.
5. It wasn’t my glasses I lost, it was my keys.
6. It isn’t Bob that’s/who’s getting married, it’s Clive.
7. It wasn’t Judy I saw, it was Jill.
8. It’s not maths he’s studying, it’s physics.
9. It’s not Max that’s who’s crazy, it’s you.
10. It’s not a nail you need, it’s a screw.

3. 2. What I need is a drink.
3. What I like is her sense of humour.
4. What I hate is his jealousy.
5. What keeps me fit is cycling.
6. What makes the job interesting is the travelling.
7. All I want is five minutes’ rest.
8. What I found was something very strange.
9. What stopped us was the weather.
10. What I don’t understand is why she stays with him.

1. DIY all; at; by; this; under; with
2. Although he was very bad-tempered, he had lots of friends.
   Always brush your teeth after you have a meal.
   Always wash your hands before you have a meal.
   As Liz told you, her mother left for Berlin last Friday.
   Because I knew her family, I did what I could for her.
   Talk to me like that again and I’ll hit you.
   Don’t do that again or I’ll hit you.
   He had a terrible temper, but everybody liked him.
   Liz explained to you that her mother went back home last week.
   I was sorry for her, so I tried to help her.
   If you do that again, you’ll be sorry.
   There’ll be trouble unless you stop that.
ANSWERS TO EXERCISES

237
1 1 After I've finished work, I'll come round to your place.
2 When the weather gets better, let's have a weekend in the country.
3 Before you go back to Canada, you ought to see Paula.
4 Although I didn't understand everything, I enjoyed the lecture.
5 Until Sean phones, we won't know what's happening.
6 As we're going out tonight, I'm going to buy some new jeans.
7 While they were asleep, somebody broke into the house.
8 Since he met Julie, he hasn't looked at another woman.
9 Because he was deaf, he didn't understand the policeman.

The order cannot be changed in 5, 10, or 11.

2 1 did  2 spoke  3 went  4 gave up  5 felt  6 left

238-239
1 1 as long as / provided  2 until  3 so that  4 while  5 as if / as though
6 until  7 as if / as though  8 as long as / provided  9 so that  10 While

2 He went to Switzerland so that he could learn French.
I don't mind you singing as long as you do it quietly.
We moved the piano so that there would be room for the Christmas tree.
We took some blankets so that we would be warm enough.
We'll come back this afternoon as long as that's OK with you.
We'll play tennis as long as it doesn't rain.

3 2 While she's very clever, she's got no common sense at all.
3 While I know how you feel, I think you're making a mistake.
4 While the job's well paid, it's deadly boring.
5 While I'm interested in economics, I wouldn't want to work in a bank.
6 While the hotel was nice, it was a long way from the beach.

4 1 She looks as if she's going swimming.  5 She looks as if she's had bad news.
2 He looks as if he's lost something.  6 He looks as if he's seen a ghost.
3 She looks as if she's been painting.  7 It looks as if it's going to rain.
4 He looks as if he's got a cold.  8 He looks as if he's had good news.

240
1 1 before  2 while  3 After  4 when  5 since  6 before  7 after  8 since
9 while  10 when/while

2 Don't go swimming immediately after eating.
Have a rest every hour or so when driving long distances.
He has been terribly depressed since failing the exam.
I had a word with Janet before talking to Eric.
I often solve problems in my head while running.
She always gets nervous before going on stage.
Since coming back from America we haven't even had time to unpack.
A few days after returning from holiday he began to feel ill.

241
1 1 Having left school at twelve, he had ...  7 A lorry broke down in High Street, causing a ...
2 It tastes delicious fried in butter ...  8 Not wanting to frighten her, I phoned ...
3 Walking over to her desk, she picked ...  9 Sent first class, it should ...
4 The water came into the houses, flooding the ...
5 Knowing his tastes, I took ...  10 At 3 a.m. Simon came in, waking everybody ...
6 Putting on his coat, he went out.

2 1 thinking  2 staring  3 getting  4 sacrificing  5 thrown  6 dreaming
242  
1 He repairs both cars and motorbikes.  
2 He speaks neither English nor French.  
3 I neither like nor dislike her.  
4 I both admire (him) and distrust him.  
5 Both Paul and Sally are on holiday.  
6 Neither the secretary nor the accountant had the file.  
7 The play was both funny and shocking.  
8 He collects both paintings and jewellery.  
9 You’re neither right nor wrong.  
10 She neither looked at me nor said anything.

243  
1 Did you know there were mice in the cellar?  
2 He suggested we might like to go skiing with him.  
3 I believe this is your coat.  
4 I expect you’ve seen this already.  
5 I heard you’d got a new job.  
6 I thought you’d get lost.  
7 I was surprised she wasn’t angry with me.  
8 I’m glad we’ve had this talk.  
9 It’s funny he didn’t say hello to you.  
10 Tell me you love me.  
11 Were you surprised I phoned you?  
12 You knew I wouldn’t forget your birthday.

244–245  
1 1 will find: go  2 have: will write  3 Will you stay: takes  4 will be: recognises  
5 will go: go  6 will give: finds  7 will ask: want  8 will find: are  
9 will have: will arrive  10 will phone: will

2 1 would be able: thought  
2 would always: was: knew  
3 would never do: went  
4 would be: had: wanted  
5 would hit: talked

3 1 was: had not helped: needed  
2 has been: lasted  
3 have usually liked: worked  
4 had done: needed  
5 talks: is thinking

246 DIY  
2 is the best explanation.

3 You’re: today: Oh, thanks; You are: OK; you (sit): I’ll (get) you: (There’s)  
Yes (there) is: there; I don’t (want): it’s: I’ll (sit) here; you can’t: these:  
are (taken): etc.

247 DIY  
1 a neither has to be changed  
2 b the second ‘this’ has to be changed  
3 c the first ‘this’ has to be changed  
4 d both have to be changed

2 last week — the week before next week — the next week/the week after  
now — then/that day/right away this — that/they/last this morning — that morning  
today — that day tomorrow — the next day tonight — that night  
yesterday — the day before

3 2 that evening  3 there  4 the week before  5 the  6 right away/then  
7 that morning  8 that night  9 the day before  10 that day

248–249  
1 DIY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT SPEECH</th>
<th>INDIRECT SPEECH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>simple present</td>
<td>simple past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present progressive</td>
<td>past progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>past perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple past</td>
<td>would ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 1 was 2 played 3 could 4 were leaving 5 hadn’t brushed 6 had had
7 had left 8 wouldn’t say 9 would know 10 had been opened

3 1 fancied 2 had never met 3 had 4 wanted 5 was 6 did 7 was doing
8 could not 9 moved / was moving 10 thought 11 wanted 12 could
13 would call 14 wanted 15 thought 16 was falling 17 was lying
18 had 19 didn’t matter 20 were 21 was going 22 were 23 had left

250 1 2 I asked what the dark-haired child’s name is/was.
3 Are you deaf? I said I’m/I was utterly fed up.
4 I told you it’s / it was raining.
5 I said you’ll / you’d get your money.
6 This article ... said the weather is / was changing.
7 Al told me the repairs will / would cost £5,000.
8 I asked if Jane is / was coming to see us.
9 Pat told me that you’re / you were going to the north.
10 I bet ... that you won’t / wouldn’t pass your exam.
11 See – I told you be hasn’t / hadn’t got much sense of humour.
12 Sue ... said they’re / they were getting married next week.

251 1 1 I asked what Peter’s address was.
2 ... when the new manager was coming.
3 ... how she knew my name.
4 ... why all the windows were open.
5 ... how many books he wanted.
6 ... where they kept the money.
7 ... what time the meeting was.
8 ... when the last train left.
9 ... how the photocopier worked.
10 ... how often Anna went shopping.

2 1 I wondered if they liked me.
2 ... if / whether I would be ready in time.
3 ... if / whether there was any food in the house.
4 ... whether / if service was included or not.
5 ... if / whether I could pay by cheque.
6 ... if / whether my hair looked funny.
7 ... if / whether the postman had been.
8 ... if / whether they spoke English.
9 ... if / whether I was doing the right thing.
10 ... whether / if the meeting was on
   Tuesday or Wednesday.

252 1 2 She offered to cook supper.
3 He advised me to leave early.
4 She asked me to close the door.
5 She promised to stop smoking.
6 He offered to do the shopping.
7 She advised me to tell the police.
8 I told her to wait outside.
9 He agreed to pay half.
10 She told me to park round the corner.
11 I asked him how to find the house.
12 She told me when to phone.
13 I told him what to say.
14 We offered to pay for the tickets.

253 1 DIY 1 After tell, we normally say who is spoken to. We do not put ‘to’ before the object.
2 After say, we don’t have to say who is spoken to. If we do, we put ‘to’ before the object.
3 Tell means ‘inform’ or ‘instruct’. It can’t introduce questions.
4 Say can’t normally be used before an infinitive.

2 1 said 2 Tell 3 told 4 say 5 tell 6 told 7 say 8 tell 9 said 10 Say

254 1 1 I knew (that) I had seen him once before in London.
2 The professor said (that) Shakespeare didn’t speak French.
3 When I got there, I found out (that) he had died two years before.
4 It said on this TV programme that three thousand years ago there were tigers in
   England.
5 It said on this morning’s news that somebody had thrown a bomb at the Prime
   Minister.
6 I read in a magazine that the ancient Romans suffered from lead poisoning.
2 1 She asked me if I would like a drink.
2 I said (that) I couldn’t help it.
3 They thought (that) they should be home about six.
4 The forecast said (that) it might rain.
5 Everybody said (that) she must be joking.
6 I explained that I hadn’t seen the notice.

2 1 She thought (that) he was ill.
2 He said (that) he would be back the next day.
3 She said (that) she didn’t like the music.
4 She asked me where the bus station was.
5 I asked him if/whether he had finished.
6 I felt (that) nobody loved me.
7 He asked her whether/if she wanted tea or coffee.
8 She offered to clean the flat.
9 I asked when the car was going to be ready.
10 I wondered what I was doing there.
11 He proved that the earth is/was not flat.
12 I knew (that) those figures couldn’t be right.
13 She thought (that) her cat understood everything she said.
14 I asked what the boss wanted.
15 I wondered if/whether Mary had phoned back.
16 I wondered if/whether dinosaurs laid eggs.
17 He advised me to see the doctor.
18 She asked him if/whether he would like a drink.

2 '... I thought they were yours.'
'... no doubt you’re wondering why I sent for you.'

256-257
1 If anybody asks you what you're doing, say you’re with me.
How can you make decisions if you don’t know what's going on?
If I buy three kilos, that'll do for a few weeks.
If I don’t get up till nine, I never get anything done.
If I can’t fix the video, I’ll take it back to the shop.
I'll go with you if you like.
The shops are easy to get to if you park near the station.
We don’t have to go out if you’re not feeling up to it.
If you’re ready before eight, we can catch the early train.
You have to practise if you want to learn a musical instrument.

2 1 if 2 when 3 when 4 if 5 if 6 when 7 if 8 when 9 when 10 if
3 1 say: will scream 2 will be: manages 3 come: will cook 4 will need: go
5 will miss; move 6 wash: will dry 7 will be: doesn’t come 8 get: will phone
9 look: will find 10 will be: gets

Pete.

258–259
1 1 would look: bad 10 would help: asked
2 would be: didn’t see 11 was/were not: would tidy
3 would be: didn’t get 12 had: would show
4 knew: would go 13 had: would send
5 would you do: won 14 would you go: needed
6 would be: used 15 Would you mind; went
7 were not; would show 16 came: would you have
8 had: would make 17 would be: spent
9 loved: would buy 18 would not do: did not have
2 (Examples of possible answers)
2 If I had a big house, I would invite lots of people.
3 If I had a yacht, I would go round the world.
4 If I had plenty of money, I would buy a horse.
5 If I didn’t have a job, I’d be happier.
6 If I had more time, I’d study biology.
4 1 could/might play  2 might feel  3 might go  4 could/might get
5 could/might understand  6 might taste
1 comes  2 find  3 lived  4 arrived  5 We’ll  6 would  7 would  8 will
9 will  10 stop
2 (The most probable answers)
1 live  2 lived  3 were  4 wake  5 declared  6 have  7 gave  8 thought
9 is  10 is  11 banned  12 have

281
1 If I were a rabbit, I’d live in a hole.
If I were forty years younger, I’d go dancing all night.
If I were Moroccan, I’d speak Arabic.
If I were the manager, I’d give everybody ten weeks’ holiday.
If it weren’t so cold, I’d go for a walk.
If it were Sunday, I wouldn’t be working.
If my nose were shorter, I’d be quite pretty.
If people were more sensible, there wouldn’t be any wars.
If she were better-tempered, life in the office would be easier.

283–284
1 had known: would have invited  9 hadn’t been: wouldn’t have become
2 would have gone: hadn’t been 10 had had: would have sold
3 had said: wouldn’t have cooked 11 hadn’t spent: would have had
4 would have won: had played 12 wouldn’t have caught: had taken
5 hadn’t cut: would have finished 13 would have won: had run
6 hadn’t invented: would have done 14 would have got: had booked
7 hadn’t spent: wouldn’t have been 15 would have been: had asked
8 wouldn’t have got: had remembered 16 had been: would have been
2 1 If he hadn’t worked so hard, he wouldn’t have passed his exams.
If he hadn’t passed his exams, he wouldn’t have gone to university.
If he hadn’t gone to university, he wouldn’t have studied languages.
If he hadn’t studied languages, he wouldn’t have learnt Chinese.
If he hadn’t learnt Chinese, he wouldn’t have gone to China.
If he hadn’t gone to China, he wouldn’t have gone climbing in Tibet.
If he hadn’t gone climbing in Tibet, he wouldn’t have tried to climb Everest.
If he hadn’t tried to climb Everest, he wouldn’t have disappeared ...
2 If he hadn’t bought a bicycle, he wouldn’t have gone for a ride in the country.
If he hadn’t gone for a ride in the country, he wouldn’t have fallen off.
If he hadn’t fallen off, he wouldn’t have woken up in hospital.
If he hadn’t woken up in hospital, he wouldn’t have met a beautiful nurse.
If he hadn’t met the beautiful nurse, he wouldn’t have written a bestselling novel about her.
If he hadn’t written the bestselling novel, he wouldn’t have got rich.
If he hadn’t got rich, he wouldn’t have married the nurse and had three charming children.
If he hadn’t married the nurse and had the three children, he wouldn’t have lived happily ever after.
3 If Mary's mother hadn't gone out that evening, Mary wouldn't have cooked for herself.
   If she hadn't cooked for herself, she wouldn't have got interested in cooking.
   If she hadn't got interested in cooking, she wouldn't have opened a very successful restaurant.
   If she hadn't opened the restaurant, she wouldn't have had the Prime Minister as a customer.
   If she hadn't had the PM as a customer, he wouldn't have ordered mussels.
   If he hadn't ordered mussels, the mussels wouldn't have poisoned him.
   If the mussels hadn't poisoned him, he wouldn't have died.
   If he hadn't died, Mary wouldn't have gone to prison for life.

264 1 He'll get thrown out of school unless he starts working.
     I always watch TV in the evenings unless I go out.
     Let's have dinner out - unless you're too tired.
     I'll see you at ten unless I phone to say I can't come.
     I'll tell you a good joke - unless you've heard it before.
     Things will go on getting worse unless there's a change of government.
     We're going to have a picnic unless it rains.
     You can have the last sausage unless the children want it.
     You can't open the door unless you know the code.

2 3 You can have the car tonight unless Harriet needs it.
   5 I'm going to dig the garden this afternoon unless it rains.

265 1 She's packing a German phrase book in case the hotel staff don't speak English.
     She's packing a pack of cards in case she meets people who play bridge.
     She's packing a racket in case there is a tennis court.
     She's packing a thick sweater in case the weather is cold.
     She's packing a swimsuit in case the hotel has a heated pool.
     She's packing aspirins in case the sun gives her a headache.
     She's packing binoculars in case she wants to go bird-watching.
     She's packing her address book in case she decides to send postcards.
     She's packing some books in case she has time to read.
     She's packing walking boots in case she wants to go walking.

2 1 in case  2 if  3 if  4 in case  5 in case  6 if  7 if  8 in case

266-267 1 'It's time to clean the car.' 'I'd rather not clean it today.'
     'It's time to cook supper.' 'I'd rather have something cold.'
     'It's time to get a new fridge.' 'I'd rather go on using the old one ...'
     'It's time to get your hair cut.' 'I'd rather keep it long.'
     'It's time to go home.' 'I'd rather stay here for a bit longer.'
     'It's time to invite the Harrises.' 'I'd rather invite the Johnsons.'
     'It's time to plan our trip to Scotland.' 'I'd rather go to Wales.'
     'It's time to see the dentist.' 'I'd rather see her next year.'
     'It's time to start work on the garden.' 'I'd rather start next week.'

2 2 It's time she got her hair cut.  6 It's time you stopped smoking.
   3 It's time we had a holiday.  7 It's time he grew up.
   4 It's time you cut the grass.  8 It's time we painted the kitchen.
   5 It's time you washed that sweater.  9 It's time he got/bought a new car.
   6 It's time you stopped smoking. 10 It's time that team won a match.

3 2 No, I'd rather we talked tomorrow.
   3 I'd rather you came at ten.
   4 I'd rather you didn't.
   5 I'd rather she worked with Maggie.
   6 I'd rather you cooked tonight.
   7 I'd rather you asked him.
   8 I'd rather he stayed in.
   9 I'd rather they brought their own.
   10 I'd rather they did something about the homeless.
1. I wish I spoke Russian.
2. I wish I had a car.
3. I wish I was/were hard-working.
4. I wish I was/were good at sport.
5. I wish I liked dancing.

6. I wish it would snow.
7. I wish the phone wouldn’t keep ringing.
8. I wish the baby would stop crying.
9. I wish the kettle would boil.

10. I wish I’d chosen a different career.
11. I wish I’d done more travelling when I had the chance.
12. I wish I’d gone to a better school.
13. I wish I’d gone to bed earlier last night.
14. I wish I hadn’t got married when I was eighteen.

(Examples of possible answers)

1 Do you know a shop which sells good coffee?
2 I know somebody who could mend that chair.
3 I want some plates which can go in the microwave.
4 I was at school with the man who is driving that taxi.
5 I’d like to speak to the person who deals with exports.
6 She’s got friendly with a boy who lives next door.
7 The police haven’t found the man who stole my car.
8 There’s some cheese in the fridge which needs to be eaten.
9 We’ve got some light bulbs which last for years.
10 This is the switch which isn’t working.

3 1 The people who live in Greece speak Greek.
2 The language that people speak in Hungary is called Hungarian.
3 The language that people speak in China is called Chinese.
4 The people who live in Italy speak Italian.
5 The people who live in Turkey speak Turkish.
6 The language that people speak in Algeria is called Arabic.
7 The language that (some) people speak in Scotland is called Scots Gaelic.
8 The people who live in Holland speak Dutch.
9 The language that (some) people speak in Ireland is called Irish.
10 The people who live in Portugal speak Portuguese.
11 The language that (some) people speak in Wales is called Welsh.
12 The language that people speak in Japan is called Japanese.

5 All the poetry that he wrote was destroyed in a fire.
At school I learnt nothing that was useful to me.
I’ve told you everything that happened.
Nothing that she said made any difference.
It’s the best western film that was ever made.
The most useful thing that you can do is leave now.
This is the only hire car that I could get.
You can have everything that you want.

DIY The relative pronoun can be left out in sentences 1, 2 and 6.
Rule 4 is correct.
3 2. Our doctor is a person I really respect.
4 I’ve lost that nice ring Bill gave me.
5 It’s a book everybody talks about and nobody reads.
7 That’s the man I wanted to see.
9 He keeps telling you things you already know.
10 They never thanked me for the money I sent them.

4 1 Here’s the paper you asked me to get you.
2 We went to see the film you recommended, but we didn’t think much of it.
3 The car my sister bought last month has broken down four times already.
4 The actor you didn’t recognise on television last night was Kiefer Sutherland.
5 Only a very few of the friends Jane had at school went on to university.
6 The operation my father had for his heart problem was only a partial success.
7 The essay Mark wrote while we were on holiday has won a prize in the school competition.
8 Some of the friends my daughter brings home look as though they never wash.

Did you read about what happened to poor Harry?
He just teaches you what you already know.
What I want to know is where’s my car gone?
The dog can have what I don’t eat.
The holiday wasn’t at all what I expected.
They hadn’t got what she asked for.
You misunderstood – that isn’t what I meant.
What you said made me very happy.

(Examples of possible answers)
1 A good parent is one whose children are happy.
3 A good gardener is one whose plants are healthy.
4 A good doctor is one whose patients get better.
5 A good writer is one whose books are successful.
6 A good teacher is one whose students learn things.
7 A good tourist guide is one whose tourists see interesting places.
8 A good cook is one whose food tastes nice.

2 1 Anton, whose brother Fritz helps him run the sports shop, lives with Marika, whose sister Anneliese also helps out in the sports shop.
2 Anneliese has a younger brother Max, whose wife Paula works in the restaurant run by Anton’s other brother Toni, whose girlfriend Heidrun is an instructor at the ski school.
3 The person in charge of the ski school at the moment is Klaus, whose wife Monika works part-time for the baker down the road. Karsten, whose daughter Liesl runs the pizzeria.
4 Monika also helps in the bar, the ‘Happy Skier’, which is run by Erwin, whose uncle Erich runs a hotel, in partnership with Klaus’s brother Paul, whose wife Christiane was national ice-dancing champion in her younger days.

DIY The ones in the ‘a’ sentences.

DIY 1 The ‘b’ sentences.
2 To show that they are not an essential part of the sentences – they can be separated.
3 Identifying clauses (the ones in the ‘a’ sentences).
4 Identifying clauses.
5 In a formal style.
3 1 No change possible.
2 People that don’t answer letters annoy me.
3 What happened to the oranges I bought yesterday?
4 No change possible.
5 No change possible.
6 No change possible.
7 I like a film that has ...
8 No change possible.
9 Do you remember those people we met in Corfu?
10 No change possible.
11 No change possible.
12 No change possible.

4 1 which 2 what 3 which 4 which 5 what 6 which 7 which 8 what 9 which 10 which

---

1 1 Who’s that good-looking man talking to Alison?
2 Luggage left unattended will be taken away by police.
3 Left-handed children forced to write with their right hands often develop psychological problems.
4 The nurse looking after my aunt is very kind to her.
5 All the rubbish floating in the sea is a real danger to health.
6 Ham made in the traditional way costs more, but tastes better.
7 Women tourists wearing trousers are not allowed in the temple.
8 James thought that the man with his girlfriend was her brother.
9 The man bitten by my neighbour’s dog was her husband’s boss.

2 1 I keep having a dream in which there’s a woman standing with her back to me.
2 James said he heard a shot fired in the street.
3 Are those your trousers hanging over the balcony?
4 They live in a beautiful old house built 300 years ago.
5 The Navajo are famous for beautiful jewellery made of silver and turquoise.
6 Passengers standing on Platform 2 are asked to keep behind the yellow line.
7 Pauline has a very strange old painting of a woman holding a small dog.

---

278 1 which 2 what 3 that 4 what 5 that 6 which 7 which 8 that 9 what 10 that

2 1 who 2 - 3 that 4 that (informal) or who 5 which 6 - 7 who 8 - 9 that 10 which

3 ‘I’ll discuss it with you,’ she said, in a voice that could have been used ...
A politician is a statesman who approaches every question ...
Any man who hates dogs and babies can’t be all bad.
Anyone who has been to an English public school will feel ...
Consultants are people who borrow your watch ...
No man can lose what he never had.
Nothing that is worth knowing can be taught.

---

279 DIY 2

2 1 The earrings which/that he gave her for Christmas ...
2 The fax which/that he got that morning ...
3 The sofa which/that we bought last year ...
4 The people whom/that he had hoped to introduce Lee to ...
5 The flat which/that the terrorists hid the guns in ...
6 The song which/that she could not remember the name of ...

3 1 The rosebush.
2 The tall men are the nephews: Duncan and Jack are the uncles.
3 The man my mother was working for.
4 No.
5 (People from) the newspaper.
6 Police.
4 1 A man I met ... 2 The dress ... 3 The little flat ... 4 A very ordinary-looking woman ... 5 Some Polish people ...

1 1 Whoever 2 whatever 3 whatever/whichever 4 wherever 5 whenever
6 However 7 whoever 8 However/Whenever 9 whoever 10 Whenever

2 1 Send it to whoever pays the bills.
2 Whatever is in that box is making ...
3 People always want more, however rich they are.
4 However you travel, it will take ...
5 Whatever you say, I don't think ...
6 Whichever room you use, make sure ...
7 Whatever problems you have, you can always come ...
8 Whoever phoned just now was very polite.
9 Whenever I see you I feel nervous.
10 Whatever you do, I'll love you.

3 1 No matter what 2 No matter where 3 No matter how 4 No matter what
5 No matter when 6 No matter how

4 Whether he's lying or telling the truth, it's a wonderful story.
Whether we tell her now or later, she's not going to be pleased.
Whether you're a beginner or an expert, you'll learn something ...
Whether you ski downhill or cross-country, the equipment costs a lot.
Whether you like her or dislike her, you have to admire her.

1 1 – 2 at 3 – 4 at 5 on 6 into 7 on 8 of 9 – 10 into 11 in
12 – 13 of 14 in 15 in 16 to 17 – 18 for 19 after 20 to 21 –
22 to 23 for 24 of 25 for 26 of 27 for 28 in 29 into 30 of
31 by 32 In 33 in 34 in 35 in 36 on

2 Diy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>at + clock time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in + part of a day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on + part of a particular day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on + particular day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at + weekend, public holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in + longer period</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 4 on

4 1 at 2 on 3 in 4 in 5 on 6 in 7 – 8 – (or at) 9 at 10 – 11 – 12 on

1 Diy At and in are used for position.
To is used for movement.

2 laugh; look; point; shoot; smile: wave
Shouting at and throwing at are aggressive.

3 1 in 2 to 3 at 4 at/in 5 to 6 to 7 at 8 to 9 at 10 to 11 at
12 to 13 to 14 in

1 Diy By is used: 3 to say that something will happen at or before a certain moment.
Until is used: 1 to say that a situation will continue up to a certain moment.

2 1 until 2 by 3 by 4 until 5 by 6 by 7 Until 8 by 9 by 10 until
ANSWERS TO EXERCISES

287 1 (for and during) DIY For tells you how long. During tells you when.
    1 during  2 for; during  3 during  4 for  5 during  6 for

1 (opposite and in front of) DIY The bus stop is opposite the house; the car is in front of the house.
    1 opposite  2 in front of  3 in front of  4 opposite  5 in front of  6 opposite

DIY We say among a group, crowd or mass of things that are not seen separately. We say between two or more clearly separate people or things. We say between things on two sides.
    1 between  2 between  3 between  4 among
    3 between  2 among  3 between  4 among  5 among  6 between
    7 among  8 between  9 between  10 among

289 1 'What are you thinking about?'  6 'What did she hit him with?'
2 'Who did you buy it from?'  7 'Who does your father work for?'
3 'Who did she send it to?'  8 'Who did you make it for?'
4 'What will you carry it in?'  9 'What’s the book about?'
5 'What can I eat it with?'  10 'Who were you talking to?'

2 (Examples of possible answers)
1 'What are you waiting for?'  6 'What are you looking at?'
2 'What are you worried about?'  7 'What are you looking for?'
3 'What were you talking about?'  8 'What are you interested in?'
4 'Who were you speaking to?'  9 'Who are you writing to?'
5 'Who do you work for?'  10 'What are you thinking about?'

3 (Examples of possible answers)
What is she waiting for?  Who did you have lunch with?
What were you listening to?  Who did you buy that car from?
Who do you usually play tennis with?  Who is Anne in love with?
What country do you come from?  What did you change your job for?
Who is that letter from?  What are you studying English for?
Who did you get it from?

290-291 1 A cup is something that you drink out of.
A picture is something that you can look at.
A tap is something that water comes out of.
A toy is something that a child plays with.
A vase is something that you put flowers in.
A window is something that you can look through.

2 1 things that you bite with (B)  6 a thing that you hang clothes on (D)
2 something that you sleep in (C)  7 liquid that you wash dishes with (H)
3 something that you put things on (E)  8 something that you can start a fire
4 something that you put valuables in (G)  with (A)
5 a thing that you clean your teeth with (F)

4 3 somebody (that) I have great respect for  5 the problem (that) I was worried about
4 the girl (that) I was writing to  6 a car (that) I paid too much for

5 John is the man (that) Bill plays chess with / Sally is married to.
Anne is the woman (that) Ron plays chess with / Peter is married to / Bill works with.
Alice is the woman (that) Peter plays chess with / Bill is married to / Sally works with.
Mary is the woman (that) Sally plays chess with / Ron works with.
Sue is the woman (that) Ron is married to / Peter works with.
Bill is the man (that) John plays chess with / Alice is married to / Anne works with.
Ron is the man (that) Anne plays chess with / Sue is married to / Mary works with.
Peter is the man (that) Alice plays chess with / Anne is married to / Sue works with.
Sally is the woman (that) Mary plays chess with / John is married to / Alice works with.

1 operated on  2 talked/spoken about  3 spoken/talked to  4 slept in
5 sat on/in  6 paid for  7 heard of/from  8 played with or spoken/talked to
9 looked at or spoken/talked to

2 (Examples of possible answers)
Who was America/Australia/penicillin/electricity discovered by?
Who was the novel Anna Karenina / Hamlet / Happy Birthday to You written by?
Who was radio/television invented by?
Who was the film The Birds directed by?
Who was the Eiffel Tower / the Taj Mahal built by?
Who was the Mona Lisa painted by?

1 She's nice to talk to.
2 He's difficult to live with.
3 My brother's impossible to argue with.
4 Those old trains aren't very pleasant to travel in.
5 Ice isn't easy to drive on.
6 The river was difficult to swim across.
7 Her village is hard to get to.
8 He's very easy to get on with.
9 Water-colours are difficult to paint with.
10 She's interesting to work with.

2 (Examples of possible answers)
A broken cup is hard to drink out of.
A broken fork is difficult to eat with.
A cushion is comfortable to sit on.
A small hard chair is uncomfortable to sit on.
A warm bath is nice to lie in.
Baby animals are nice to play with.
Classical music is interesting to listen to.
Family problems can be difficult to talk about.
Lectures are often hard to listen to.
People who travel a lot can be interesting to talk to.

3 (Examples of possible answers)
A very small spoon is hard to eat with.
Shoes that are too small are uncomfortable to walk in.
A hard bed is uncomfortable to lie on.
A noisy hotel room is difficult to sleep in.
A broken pencil is hard to write with.

294-295
1 a hundred  2 one thousand, four hundred and fifty pounds  3 a thousand
4 three thousand, one hundred and forty-four  5 one dollar (and) eighty-five (cents)
6 one thousand pounds
2 1 hundred  2 million  3 hundred  4 millions of  5 Thousands of  6 dozen
3 second; third; fourth; fifth; sixth; seventh; eighth; ninth; tenth; twelfth; sixteenth;
twentieth; twenty-first; thirtieth; hundredth; thousandth
4 1 10 April 1996
   2 17 September 1911
   3 16 June 1979
   4 the sixteenth of May / May the sixteenth, nineteen seventy
   5 the twelfth of March / March the twelfth, nineteen ninety-three
   6 the fourteenth of January / January the fourteenth, nineteen eighty-six
1 1 I'm tired. 10 My car's broken down.
2 She's French. 11 You needn't worry.
3 She's forgotten. 12 I can't swim.
4 They've finished. 13 The door won't close.
5 I thought you'd left. 14 It doesn't matter.
6 We'll tell you tomorrow. 15 I haven't forgotten.
7 I wish he'd stop. 16 I'm not sorry.
8 How's your mother? 17 Why aren't you in bed?
9 Nobody's perfect. 18 Don't you like this?

2 1 ... where she's staying. 8 ... I don't believe they're fresh.
4 ... No, I haven't. 9 ... if you can't come.
5 It isn't true. / It's not true. 10 ... No, I can't ...

**Contraction not possible in 2, 3, 6 and 7.**

3 1 there's 2 you've 3 he's 4 can't 5 he'd 6 I'll 7 that's 8 we've

4 1 future simple (aux. will) 6 future progressive (aux. will be)
2 present progressive (aux. is) 7 past progressive (aux. was)
3 past perfect (aux. had) 8 future perfect (aux. will have)
4 simple present 9 present perfect (aux. has)
5 simple past 10 simple past (aux. did)

5 **conditional** would ... stop 
   **-ing form** smoking 
   **infinitive** stop
   **perfect infinitive** have started 
   **past participle** ordered, started
   **imperative** shut (up), leave 
   **active verb** smoke, would ... stop, could, talk, say,
   **shut (up), leave, don't** ... think, 'll stop, suppose: should ... have started
   **passive verb** 'm ordered

6 **prepositions:** at, with, by, for, in
   **adverbs:** usually, yesterday, suddenly, terribly, loud
   Out is an adverb particle.

7 1 subject Jake 
   **direct object** songs
   2 subject I 
   **direct object** my address 
   **indirect object** Monica
   3 subject you 
   **direct object** the time 
   **indirect object** me
   4 subject you 
   **direct object** what sort of books
   **indirect object** me
   5 subject you 
   **direct object** a postcard, time 
   **indirect object** me

8 1 pretty 2 tired 3 a student 4 sorry

9 **conjunctions:** 1 while 2 if 3 where 4 when 5 before 6 although
   **subordinate clauses:** 1 while I'm trying ... 2 if you stay ... 3 where you were staying
   4 When I get back 5 Before you went out 6 Although it was snowing
   **interrogative main clauses:** 3, 5 
   **affirmative main clauses:** 1, 4
   **negative main clauses:** 2, 6
Index

(For explanations of the words that we use to talk
about grammar, see pages 298–302.)

a/an and one 17
a/an: the difference 17
a/an: uses 18–20
a. not a and no 35
a bit with comparatives 82
a couple of with plural verb 61
a few, few and (a) little 41
a group of with plural verb 61
a little with comparatives 82
a little, little and (a) few 41
a lot of, lots of and much/many 40
a lot with comparatives 82
a number of with plural verb 61
able: was able to and could 114
able: will be able to and can 114
able: would be able to and could 114
accommodation (uncountable) 57
active and passive 176–182
adjective + for ... to 208
adjective + infinitive or -ing form 206
adjectives and adverbs 68–70
adjectives: comparative and superlative 79–86
adjectives: order before nouns 73
adjectives with and 71
adjectives without nouns 72
adverb particles with verbs 184
adverbs and adjectives 68–70
adverbs: comparative and superlative 79–86
adverbs: position with the verb 74
advice (uncountable) 57
afraid: I'm afraid so etc 229
afraid with be 95
after: conjunction 236
after ...ing 240
after: order of clauses 237
after with past perfect 167
ago 154
all (of) 46
all and whole 39
all, everybody and everything 38
all: position 74
all that ... 271
allow + infinitive or -ing form 204
already with present perfect 154
already, yet and still 78
although 236
although and in spite of 239
always: is always happening 149
always: position 74
always: position with imperatives 219
among and between 288
an and a: the difference 17
and with adjectives 71
another and other 43
any (of) 46
any and no 36
any and some 32
any meaning 'it doesn't matter which' 36
any: not any and no 35
any or no article 34
any with comparatives 82
anybody, anyone, anything and somebody, someone, something 32
appear: not always used in progressive forms 148
appear: there appears to be 223
appear with adjective or adverb 69
aren't, don't etc (contractions) 296
articles 17–27
articles dropped after prepositions 24
articles: no article or some/any 34
articles with place names 25
as and like 90
as ... as 88
as: conjunction 236
as if 238
as long as 238
as me etc 48
as much/many 40
as. than and that 87
as though 238
as you like 191
ashamed with be 95
at church, school etc 24
at, in and on (time) 284
at, in and to (place) 285
attention signals 228
auxiliaries: short questions and answers with auxiliaries 226–231
baggage (uncountable) 57
be able and can 114
be: age, colour etc 95
be: do be 94
be: I am to ... 140
be: progressive forms 94
because 236
because and because of 239
before: conjunction 236
could in indirect speech 254
could in polite requests etc 171
could in structures with if 259
countable and uncountable nouns 56
couple: a couple of with plural verb 61
cowardly: adjective ending in -ly 70
daily: adjective or adverb 70
dates 295
dead: the dead 72
deadly: adjective ending in -ly 70
def: the deaf 72
definitely: position 74
difficult + infinitive 209
disabled: the disabled 72
distancing: past, progressive and future verb forms in polite requests etc 171
do and make 98
do be 94
do: emphatic auxiliary 94, 96, 218
do in negatives 213
do in questions 210
do not used in indirect questions 251
do not: need to, must not etc 113
don't, isn't etc (contractions) 296
double comparatives 84
does (s) 294
dropping relative pronouns 272
dropping sentence-beginnings 224
dropping that 243
dropping words after auxiliaries 224
during and for 287
Dutch: the Dutch 72
each (of) 46
each: position 74
each other and -selves 51
easy: adjective or adverb 70
Easter: at Easter 24
easy + infinitive 209
elder and older, eldest and oldest 80
ellipsis after auxiliaries 224
ellipsis at the beginning of a sentence 224
ellipsis: relative pronouns 272
ellipsis: that 243
emphasis with do 94, 96, 218
emphasis with it, what etc 234
English: a, an not used 56
English: the English 72
enough 44
enough (of) 46
ever: position 76
even: position with comparatives 82

can (ability): special problems 114
can and will be able to 114
can hear, feel etc 115
can, could and may: permission etc 116
can, must, may and might: how certain: 108
can: there can be 223
can't hear + infinitive or -ing form 205
can't have ...ed and may not have ...ed 122
car: by car 24
certain: there is certain to be 223
Christmas: at Christmas 24
church: at church etc 24
class with plural verb 60
cold with plural verb 60
cold with be 95
college: at college etc 24
comparatives and superlatives 79–86
comparatives and superlatives: the difference 84
comparison of adjectives and adverbs 79–86
compound verbs 184
conditional: see would
conditional structures: see if
conjunctions 236–245
contain: not used in progressive forms 148
continue + infinitive or -ing form 204
continuous: see progressive
contractions 296
could and was able to, managed to etc 114
could and would be able to 114
could, can and may: permission etc 116
could have ...ed etc 122
ever with present perfect 154
ever: who/what ever 212
every one of 46
everybody and all 38
everything and all 38
everything that ... 271
exclamations 221
expect: negative structures 217

family with plural verb 60
far with comparatives 82
farther and further: farthest and furthest 80
gest: adjective or adverb 70
feel + infinitive or -ing form 205
feel: not always used in progressive forms 148
feel with adjective 68
feel with can 115
few (of) 46
few: a few and (a) little 41
few: another few 43
fewer, fewest, less and least 42
first: this is the first etc with perfect tense 170
first, second etc 295
first: word-order with numbers 73
for and during 287
for and since 161, 162
for ...ing 197
for ... to after adjective/noun 208
forget + infinitive or -ing form 204
forget: not used in progressive forms 148
French: the French 72
friendly: adjective ending in -ly 70
furniture (uncountable) 57
further and farther, furthest and farthest 80
future 130–141
future continuous: see future progressive
future in the past 141
future perfect 139
future progressive 138
future verb forms in polite requests etc 170
generals without the 22
get: have got 102
get: structures and meanings 186
get used to ...ing 198
go ...ing 200
go on + infinitive or -ing form 204
going to: future auxiliary 132
going to: future in the past 141
good + infinitive 209
grammar: useful words 298
group: a group of with plural verb 61
had better 127
had better in indirect speech 254
had to ... and must have ...ed 122
handicapped: the handicapped 72
hard + infinitive 209
hard: adjective or adverb 70
hardly not used with do 213
hardly with any 32
have + infinitive or -ing form 204
have: not used in progressive forms 148
have 100–105
have: not always used in progressive forms 148
have (got) 102
have (got) to and must: obligation 112
have to: do not have to and must not 113
he and she used for animals 49
hear + infinitive or -ing form 205
hear with can 115
holiday: on holiday 24
home: at home etc 24
homeless: the homeless 72
hope: I hope so etc 229
hope: negative structures 217
hospital: in hospital etc 24
hot with be 95
how ...! 221
how and what ...like 212
how to ... 252
however 282
hundred(s) 294
hungry with be 95
I and me, he and him etc 48
I’d rather 266
I’m, you’ve, she’ll etc (contractions) 296
I should(n’t) ... if I were you 261
I wish: structures and tenses 268
if and when 256
if ...ed 240
if: followed by future 137
if I were you 261
if in indirect questions 251
if not and unless 264
if only 268
if: structures 256–263
if you like/want 191
imagine: negative structures 217
imperatives 218
impossible + infinitive 209
in, at and on (time) 284
in, at and to (place) 285
in or of after superlatives 86
in case 265
in front of and opposite 287
in spite of and although 239
indirect speech 246–255
infinitive 188–192, 199, 202–209
infinitive after adjective/noun + for ... 208
infinitive in indirect speech 252
infinitive of purpose 192
infinitive or -ing form after adjective 206
infinitive or -ing form after noun 207
infinitive or -ing form after verb 199, 204
information (uncountable) 57
-ing form 194–201, 204–207
-ing form after conjunction 240
-ing form or infinitive after adjective 206
-ing form or infinitive after noun 207
-ing form or infinitive after verb 199, 204
intend + infinitive or -ing form 204
interested and interesting etc 193
Irish: the Irish 72
irregular comparatives and superlatives 81
irregular plurals 59
isn't, don't etc (contractions) 296
isn't it etc 226–227
it after nothing etc 49
it: emphatic structures 234
it: preparatory subject/object 232
it used for countries 49
it used for identifying people 49
it was the first etc with perfect tense 170
it's time 266

just any in negative sentences 36
just now with simple past 154

kind of without article 19
know: not used in progressive forms 148
knowledge (uncountable) 57

last: word-order with numbers 73
later: adjective or adverb 70
laugh at 283
least 42
leaving out relative pronouns 272
leaving out that 243
leaving out words after auxiliaries 224
leaving out words at the beginning of a sentence 227
less (of) 46
less, least, fewer and fewest 42
let me see/think 220
let's 220
like + infinitive or -ing form 204
like and as 90

like: I'd like to, if you like etc 191
like: not used in progressive forms 148
like this 91
likely: adjective ending in -ly 70
likely: there is likely to be 223
little (of) 46
little, a little and (a) few 41
little with comparatives 82
lively: adjective ending in -ly 70
lonely: adjective ending in -ly 70
look at 285
look forward to ...ing 198
look: not always used in progressive forms 148
look with adjective or adverb 69
lot: a lot of, lots of and much many 40
lots with comparatives 82
loud: adjective or adverb 70
love + infinitive or -ing form 204
love: not used in progressive forms 148
lovely: adjective ending in -ly 70
luck (uncountable) 57
lucky with be 95
lunch: at lunch etc 24

majority: the majority of with plural verb 61
make and do 98
managed to and could 114
many of 46
many, much and a lot of 40
many: not used in progressive forms 148
matter: not used in progressive forms 148
matter: there is something the matter with ... 223
may, can and could: permission etc 116
may have ...ed etc 122
may, might, can and must: how certain? 108
may not have ...ed and can't have ...ed 122
may: there may be 223
me and I, he and him etc 48
me etc with -ing forms 195
meant to have ...ed 189
might have ...ed etc 122
might in indirect speech 254
might in polite requests etc 171
might in structures with if 259
might, may, can and must: how certain? 108
million(s) 294
mine, yours etc 28
modal auxiliary verbs 106–129
Monday: on Monday etc 24
monthly: adjective or adverb 70
more (of) 46
more and more 84
more and other 43
more used to make comparatives 79–81
most (of) 47
most used to make superlatives 79–81
much (of) 46
much, many and a lot (of) 40
much with comparatives 82
must and have (got) to: obligation 112
must, can, may and might: how certain? 108
must have ...ed and had to ... 122
must in indirect speech 254
must not, do not have to etc 113
must, should etc: obligation 110
must: there must be 223
my etc with -ing forms 195
my, your etc 28
myself, yourself etc 50

need 126
need not, must not etc 113
need ...ing 201
need: not used in progressive forms 148
need: there is no need to 223
negative questions 214
negative questions as exclamations 221
negative structures 213–217
neither am I etc 230
neither ... nor 242
never not used with do 213
never: position 74, 219
never with any 32
never with present perfect 154
nice + infinitive 209
night: at night 24
no and any 36
no and not 216
no and yes in answers to negative questions 215
no ...ing 195
no matter who/what etc 283
no meaning 'not a/any' 35
no with comparatives 82
nobody 35
non-progressive verbs 148
none of 35, 43
nor am I etc 230
not 216, 217
not a/any and no 35
not and not 216
not: I hope not etc 229
not so ... as 88
nothing 35
nothing that ... 271
noun + for ... to 208
noun + infinitive or -ing form 207
noun + noun 63–71
noun + noun and possessive's 65
noun + noun or structure with of 66
nouns dropped after adjectives 72
nouns: plurals 58–59
number: a number of with plural verb 61
numbers 294

object to ...ing 198
of after some, any and other determiners 46
of or in after superlatives 86
of: structures with of or noun + noun 66
often: position 74
often with present perfect 154
old: the old 72
older and elder, oldest and eldest 80
on, at and in (time) 284
on ...ing 197
one and a/an 17
one another 51
one meaning 'people in general' 52
one of ... with singular verb 61
one(s): a big one etc 54
only: if only 268
only: position 76
only: the only thing that ... 271
opposite and in front of 287
other(s) 43
ought in indirect speech 254
ought, should and must: obligation 110
own: my own etc 51
own: not used in progressive forms 148

participles: present and past participles 193
particles: verbs with particles 184
passive structures 176–182
passives: position of prepositions 292
past and present participles 193
past and progressive tenses in polite requests etc 171
past continuous: see past progressive
past perfect 166–169
past progressive 164
past simple: see simple past
past tenses instead of would ... after
conjunctions 245
people: most (of the) people 47
perfect infinitives 189
perfect tenses with this is the first ... etc 170
permit + infinitive or -ing form 204
personal pronouns: I and me etc 48
phrasal verbs 184
place names: articles 25
plane: by plane 24
plenty (of) 40
plural expression with singular verb 61
plural verb with singular noun 60
plurals of nouns: 58–59
point at 285
point: there is no point in ...ing 223
polite requests: past, progressive and future verb forms 171
poor: the poor 72
possessive’s 62
possessive’s and noun + noun 65
possessives 28
prefer + infinitive or -ing form 204
prefer: not used in progressive forms 148
prepositions: 284–293
prepositions: structures with preposition or noun + noun 64
prepositions: verbs with prepositions 184
prepositions with -ing forms 196–198
present and past participles 193
present and present perfect 156, 158
present continuous: see present progressive
present perfect and present 156, 158
present perfect and simple past 151–163
present perfect continuous: see present perfect progressive
present perfect progressive 158
present perfect progressive or simple 160
present progressive 142–150
present progressive and simple present 142
present progressive used for future 134
present progressive with always 149
present simple: see simple present
present tense stories etc 144
present tenses instead of will after conjunctions 244
prison: in prison etc 24
probably: position 74
progressive and past tenses in polite requests etc 170
progressive: verbs not used in progressive forms 148
pronouns: I and me etc 48
propose + infinitive or -ing form 204
provided 238
question tags 226–227
questions: 210–212, 214
questions in indirect speech 251
questions: negative questions 214
questions: position of prepositions 289
quite a 19
rather a 19
rather: would rather 266
ready + infinitive 209
realise: not used in progressive forms 148
recently with present perfect 154
reflexive pronouns 50
regret + infinitive or -ing form 204
relative clauses and pronouns 270–283
relative clauses: position of prepositions 290
remember + infinitive or -ing form 204
remember: not used in progressive forms 148
reported speech: see indirect speech
rich: the rich 72
right with be 95
’s 62
same: the same ... as 88
say and tell 253
school: at school etc 24
school with plural verb 60
Scottish: the Scottish 72
see + infinitive or -ing form 205
see with can 115
seem: negative structures 217
seem: not used in progressive forms 148
seem: there seems to be 223
self: myself etc 50
sense: there is no sense in ...ing 223
shall: future auxiliary 130
shall in questions 121
she used for cars, boats etc 49
shoot at 285
short answers 228
short forms (don’t, I’m etc) 296
should: I shouldn’t ... if I were you 261
should have ...ed etc 122
should in indirect speech 254
should, must etc: obligation 110
shout at/to 285
sick: the sick 72
silly: adjective ending in -ly 70
simple or progressive present perfect 160
simple past and present perfect 151–163
simple present 142–150
simple present and present progressive 142
simple present used for future 136
since and for 161, 162
singular noun with plural verb 60
singular verb with plural expression 61
sleepy with be 95
smell with adjective 68
smell with ran 115
smile at 285
so am I etc 230
so and such 91
so ... as 88
so: conjunction 236
so: I (don’t) think so etc 229
so much/many 40
so that 238
some (of) 46
some and any 32
some or no article 34
somebody, someone, something and anybody, anyone.
  anything 32
sort of without article 19
sound with adjective 68
Spanish: the Spanish 72
spelling: plurals 58–59
spelling: simple present 147
spring: in (the) spring etc 24
staff with plural verb 60
start + infinitive or -ing form 204
still, yet and already 78
stop + infinitive or -ing form 204
succeeded in ... and could 114
such a 19
such and so 91
suggest: structures 252
summer: in (the) summer etc 24
suppose: I suppose so etc 229
suppose: negative structures 217
suppose: not used in progressive forms 148
supposed to 129
sure: there is sure to be 223

taste with adjective 68
taste with ran 115
team with plural verb 60
tell and say 253
tenses after conjunctions 244
tenses in indirect speech 248, 254
tenses: see the names of the different tenses
tenses with if 256–263
terminology 298
than, as and that 87
than me etc 48
that: left out 243
that (relative pronoun) 270
that, than and as 87
that, this etc 30
the 21–25
the blind, the Dutch etc 72
the dropped in at school etc 24
the majority of with plural verb 61
the not used in generalisations 22
the same ... as 88
the ... the with comparatives 85
the used instead of my etc 29
the with place names 25
the with superlatives 86
the with whole and all 39
the with -ing forms 195
then after if 257
there is 222
these and those 30
they meaning ‘people in general’ 52
they: singular indefinite use, meaning ‘he or she’
etc 53
think: I (don’t) think so etc 229
think: negative structures 217
think: not always used in progressive forms 148
thirsty with be 95
this is the first ... etc with perfect tense 170
this, that etc 30
this, that etc with -ing forms 195
those and these 30
thousand(s) 294
throw ... at/to 285
till 286
time: it’s time 266
to, at and in (place) 285
to: infinitive with and without to 190
to ...ing 198
to used for whole infinitive 191
too and too much/many 44
too and very 92
too much/many 40
town: to town etc 24
travel (uncountable) 57
try + infinitive or -ing form 205
two-word verbs 184

ugly: adjective ending in -ly 70
uncountable and countable nouns 56
understand: not used in progressive forms 148
unemployed: the unemployed 72
university: at university etc 24
unless and if not 264
until + past participle 240
until and by 286
until (conjunction) 238
until ...ed 240
use: there is no use ...ing 223
used to + infinitive 128
used to: be/get used to ...ing 198
usually: position 74

verb + infinitive or -ing form 199, 204
verb + object + infinitive 202
verbs not used in progressive forms 148
verbs with prepositions and particles 184
verbs with two objects 183
verbs with two objects: passive 180
very and too 92
very much/many 40
very (much) with past participles 93

want: I don’t want to, if you want etc 191
want: negative structures 217
want: not used in progressive forms 148
want somebody to do something 202
warm with be 95
was able to and could 114
was to have ... ed 189
was/were to ... 141
watch + infinitive or -ing form 205
weather: a/an not used 56
weekly: adjective or adverb 70
well: adjective or adverb 70
Welsh: the Welsh 72
were after if 261
what ...? 221
what a ...! 19, 221
what and which 31
what colour/size/make 212
what ever 212
what ... like and how 212
what (relative) meaning ‘the thing(s) that’ 274
what sort of 217
what time 212
what to ... 252
what: emphatic structures 235
whatever 282
when and if 256
when ... ed 240
when: followed by future 137
when ... ing 240
when (relative) 271
when with past perfect 167
when you like/want 191
whenever 282
where (relative) 271
wherever 282
whether in indirect questions 251
whether ... or 283
which and what 31
which (relative pronoun) 270
whichever 282

while (contrast) 238
while ... ing 240
who and whom 49
who ever 212
who (relative pronoun) 270
whoever 282
whole and all 39
whose (relative) 275
why (not) ...? 190
will and would: typical behaviour 120
will be able to and can 114
will: future auxiliary 130
will in structures with if 137, 287
will not used after conjunctions 244
will: willingness, intentions, requests etc 118
wish: structures and tenses 268
without with any 32
word-order: adjectives before nouns 73
word-order: adverbs at the end of a sentence 77
word-order: adverbs with the verb 74–76
word-order: always and never with
imperatives 219
word-order: conjunctions and clauses 237
word order: enough 44
word-order: first and last with numbers 73
word-order in questions 210
word order: position of prepositions 289–293
work: at work etc 24
work (uncountable) 57
worse, worst 80, 81
would and will: typical behaviour 120
would: future in the past 141
would have ... ed etc 122
would in indirect speech 254
would in polite requests etc 171
would in structures with if 258–263
would like to have ... ed 189
would not used after conjunctions 244
would rather 266
wrong: there is something wrong with ... 223
wrong with be 95

yearly: adjective or adverb 70
yes and no in answers to negative questions 214
yet, still and already 78
yet with present perfect 154
you meaning ‘people in general’ 52
young: the young 72
How English Works makes grammar practice interesting. Rules are easy to understand and remember; exercises entertain as well as teach. Learners who want to use the book for self-study are guided in their learning, and teachers who want to use the book in class will find extra exercises for group work. If you are an intermediate or advanced learner, How English Works offers you:

- short clear grammar explanations and rules
- information about the grammar of speech as well as writing
- simple reliable examples in real English
- easier exercises to give you confidence
- more challenging exercises to make you think
- opportunities to work out some rules for yourself
- tests to show you what you need to study most
- an easy-to-read full-colour layout
- hundreds of illustrations

There are two editions of How English Works: one with answers and one without.


Oxford University Press